December 1994
Volume 39, Number 12
ISSN 0020-1324-RECACP

RESPIRATORY CARE

A MONTHLY SCIENCE JOURNAL
39TH YEAR—ESTABLISHED 1956

Call for
1995 OPEN FORUM Abstracts

- Editorials:
  - CPGs 1994: Where Are We? Where Have We Been? Where Are We Going?
  - Guideline for Prevention of Noscomial Pneumonia and Ventilator Circuits: Time for Change?
  - TB Control Guidelines Deserve Our Attention,Too
  - Aerosol Research: How Should We Skin This Cat?
- Comparison of Aerosol Delivery via Circulaire System vs Conventional Small Volume Nebulizer
- Predicting Aerosol Deposition during Neonatal Ventilation: Feasibility of Bench Testing
- Clinical Practice Guidelines:
  - Metabolic Measurement Using Indirect Calorimetry during Mechanical Ventilation
  - Transcutaneous Blood Gas Monitoring for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients
  - Capillary Blood Gas Sampling for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients
  - Body Plethysmography
- Guideline for Prevention of Noscomial Pneumonia

For Patients With Asthma

Twice-Daily

Serevent®

(salmeterol xinafoate)

Inhalation Aerosol

Morning and Evening Inhalation for Active Days and Restful Nights

SEREVENT is indicated for maintenance treatment of asthma and prevention of bronchospasm in patients 12 years of age and older with reversible obstructive airway disease, including patients with symptoms of nocturnal asthma, who require regular treatment with inhaled, short-acting β_2-agonists.

Dosing should be two puffs (42 µg) of SEREVENT Inhalation Aerosol, twice daily, morning and evening, approximately 12 hours apart.

***IMPORTANT:** SEREVENT should not be used to relieve acute asthma symptoms.*

The most common drug-related adverse events reported in clinical trials were headache (10%), tremor (3%), and cough (3%).[1]

Please consult Brief Summary of Prescribing Information on adjacent pages.

Serevent®
(salmeterol xinafoate)
Inhalation Aerosol

BRIEF SUMMARY

Bronchodilator Aerosol
For Oral Inhalation Only

The following is a brief summary only. Before prescribing, see complete prescribing information in Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol product labeling.

CONTRAINDICATIONS: Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol is contraindicated in patients with a history of hypersensitivity to any of the components.

WARNINGS: 1. Not for Use to Treat Acute Symptoms; Watch for Increased Need for Short-Acting Beta$_2$-Agonists: Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol should not be used to relieve acute asthma symptoms. If the patient's short-acting, inhaled beta$_2$-agonist becomes less effective, e.g., the patient needs more inhalations than usual, medical evaluation must be obtained immediately and increasing use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in this situation is inappropriate. Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should not be used more frequently than twice daily (morning and evening) at the recommended dose. When prescribing Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, patients must be provided with a short-acting, inhaled beta$_2$-agonist (e.g., albuterol) for treatment of symptoms that occur despite regular twice-daily (morning and evening) use of Serevent.

Asthma may deteriorate acutely over a period of hours or chronically over several days. In this setting, increased use of inhaled, short-acting beta$_2$-agonists is a marker of destabilization of asthma and requires re-evaluation of the patient and consideration of alternative treatment regimens, especially inhaled or systemic corticosteroids. If the patient uses four or more inhalations per day of a short-acting beta$_2$-agonist on a regular basis, or if more than one canister (200 inhalations per canister) is used in an 8-week period, then the patient should see the physician for re-evaluation of treatment.

2. Use With Short-Acting Beta$_2$-Agonists: When patients begin treatment with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, those who have been taking short-acting, inhaled beta$_2$-agonists on a regular daily basis should be advised to discontinue their regular daily-dosing regimen and should be clearly instructed to use short-acting, inhaled beta$_2$-agonists only for symptomatic relief if they develop asthma symptoms while taking Serevent Inhalation Aerosol (see PRECAUTIONS: Drug Interactions).

3. Serevent Inhalation Aerosol Is Not a Substitute for Oral or Inhaled Corticosteroids: Patients must be warned not to stop or reduce corticosteroid therapy without medical advice, even if they feel better when they are being treated with Serevent.

4. Do Not Exceed Recommended Dose: As with other beta-adrenergic aerosols, Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should not be used in excess. Fatalities have been reported in association with excessive use of inhaled sympathomimetic drugs. Large doses of inhaled or oral salmeterol (12 to 20 times the recommended dose) have been associated with clinically significant prolongation of the QT_C interval, which has the potential for producing ventricular arrhythmias.

5. Paradoxical Bronchospasm: As with other inhaled asthma medications, paradoxical bronchospasm (which can be life-threatening) has been reported following the use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol. If it occurs, treatment with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should be discontinued immediately and alternative therapy instituted.

6. Immediate Hypersensitivity Reactions: Immediate hypersensitivity reactions may occur after administration of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, as demonstrated by rare cases of urticaria, angioedema, rash, and bronchospasm.

PRECAUTIONS:

General: 1. Use with Spacer or Other Devices: The safety and effectiveness of Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol when used with a spacer or other devices have not been adequately studied.

2. Cardiovascular and Other Effects: No effect on the cardiovascular system is usually seen after the administration of inhaled salmeterol in recommended doses, but the cardiovascular and central nervous system effects seen with all sympathomimetic drugs (e.g., increased blood pressure, heart rate, excitement) can occur after use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol and may require discontinuation of the drug. Salmeterol, like all sympathomimetic amines, should be used with caution in patients with cardiovascular disorders, especially coronary insufficiency, cardiac arrhythmias, and hypertension; in patients with convulsive disorders or thyrotoxicosis; and in patients who are unusually responsive to sympathomimetic amines.

As has been described with other beta-adrenergic agonist bronchodilators, clinically significant changes in systolic and/or diastolic blood pressure, pulse rate, and electrocardiograms have been seen infrequently in individual patients in controlled clinical studies with salmeterol.

3. Metabolic Effects: Doses of the related beta$_2$-adrenoceptor agonist albuterol, when administered intravenously, have been reported to aggravate pre-existing diabetes mellitus and ketoacidosis. No effects on glucose have been seen with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol at recommended doses. Administration of beta$_2$-adrenoceptor agonists may cause a decrease in serum potassium, possibly through intracellular shunting, which has the potential to increase the likelihood of arrhythmias. The decrease is usually transient, not requiring supplementation.

Clinically significant changes in blood glucose and/or serum potassium were seen rarely during clinical studies with long-term administration of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol at recommended doses.

Information for Patients: See illustrated Patient's Instructions for Use. **SHAKE WELL BEFORE USING.** Patients should be given the following information:

1. Not for Use to Treat Acute Symptoms: Serevent Inhalation Aerosol is not meant to relieve acute asthmatic symptoms. Acute symptoms should be treated with an inhaled, short-acting bronchodilator that has been prescribed by a physician for symptom relief.

2. Do Not Exceed Recommended Dose: The bronchodilator action of salmeterol usually lasts for at least 12 hours. Therefore it should not be used more often than every 12 hours.

3. Use with Other Medications: While using Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, other inhaled medicines should be taken only as directed by the physician.

4. Use with Short-Acting, Inhaled Beta-Agonists: While using Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, medical attention should be sought immediately if the short-acting bronchodilator treatment becomes less effective for symptom relief, if more inhalations than usual are needed, or if more than the maximum number of inhalations of short-acting bronchodilator treatment prescribed for a 24-hour period are needed. If the patient uses four or more inhalations per day of a short-acting beta$_2$-agonist on a regular basis, or if more than one canister (200 inhalations per canister) is used in an 8-week period, then the patient should see the physician for re-evaluation of treatment.

Patients should be cautioned regarding potential adverse cardiovascular effects, such as palpitations or chest pain, related to the use of additional beta$_2$-agonist.

5. Use of Systemic or Inhaled Steroids: Serevent Inhalation Aerosol does not replace oral or inhaled corticosteroids; the dosage of these medicines should not be changed and they should not be stopped without consulting the physician, even if the patient feels better.

6. Use for Exercise-Induced Bronchospasm: When using Serevent Inhalation Aerosol to prevent exercise-induced bronchospasm, the dose should be administered at least 30 to 60 minutes before exercise.

Drug Interactions: ***Short-Acting Beta-Agonists:*** In the two 3-month, repetitive-dose clinical trials (n=184), the mean daily need for additional beta$_2$-agonist use was 1 to 1½ inhalations per day, but some patients used more. Eight percent of patients used at least eight inhalations per day at least on one occasion. Six percent used 9 to 12 inhalations at least once. There were 15 patients (8%) who averaged over four inhalations per day. Four of these used an average of 8 to 11 inhalations per day. In these 15 patients there was no observed increase in frequency of cardiovascular adverse events. The safety of concomitant use of more than eight inhalations per day of short-acting beta$_2$-agonists with Serevent® (salmeterol xinafoate) Inhalation Aerosol has not been established. In 15 patients who experienced worsening of asthma while receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol, nebulized albuterol (one dose in most) led to improvement in FEV_1 and no increase in occurrence of cardiovascular adverse events.

Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors and Tricyclic Antidepressants: Salmeterol should be administered with extreme caution to patients being treated with monoamine oxidase inhibitors or tricyclic antidepressants because the action of salmeterol on the vascular system may be potentiated by these agents.

Corticosteroids and Cromoglycate: In clinical trials, inhaled corticosteroids and/or inhaled cromolyn sodium did not alter the safety profile of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol when administered concurrently.

Methylxanthines: The concurrent use of intravenously or orally administered methylxanthines (e.g., aminophylline, theophylline) by patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol has not been completely evaluated. In one clinical trial, 87 patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol 42 mcg twice daily concurrently with a theophylline product had adverse event rates similar to those in 71 patients receiving Serevent Inhalation Aerosol without theophylline. Resting heart rates were slightly higher in the patients on theophylline but were little affected by Serevent Inhalation Aerosol therapy.

Carcinogenesis, Mutagenesis, Impairment of Fertility: In an 18-month oral carcinogenicity study in CD-mice, salmeterol xinafoate caused a dose-related increase in the incidence of smooth muscle hyperplasia, cystic glandular hyperplasia, and leiomyomas of the uterus and a dose-related increase in the incidence of cysts in the ovaries. A higher incidence of leiomyosarcomas was not statistically significant; tumor findings were observed at oral doses of 1.4 and 10 mg/kg, which gave 9 and 63 times, respectively, the human exposure based on rodent:human AUC comparisons.

Salmeterol caused a dose-related increase in the incidence of mesovarian leiomyomas and ovarian cysts in Sprague Dawley rats in a 24-month inhalation/oral carcinogenicity study. Tumors were observed in rats receiving doses of 0.68 and 2.58 mg/kg per day (about 55 and 215 times the recommended clinical dose [mg/m^2]). These findings in rodents are similar to those reported previously for other beta-adrenergic agonist drugs. The relevance of these findings to human use is unknown.

No significant effects occurred in mice at 0.2 mg/kg (1.3 times the recommended clinical dose based on comparisons of the AUCs) and in rats at 0.21 mg/kg (15 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m^2 basis).

Salmeterol xinafoate produced no detectable or reproducible increases in microbial and mammalian gene mutation *in vitro*. No blastogenic activity occurred *in vitro* in human lymphocytes or *in vivo* in a rat micronucleus test. No effects on fertility were identified in male and female rats treated orally with salmeterol xinafoate at doses up to 2 mg/kg orally (about 160 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m^2 basis).

Pregnancy: ***Teratogenic Effects: Pregnancy Category C:*** No significant effects of maternal exposure to oral salmeterol xinafoate occurred in the rat at doses up to the equivalent of about 160 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m^2 basis. Dutch rabbit fetuses exposed to salmeterol xinafoate *in utero* exhibited effects characteristically resulting from beta-adrenoceptor stimulation; these included precocious eyelid openings, cleft palate, sternebral fusion, limb and paw flexures, and delayed ossification of the frontal cranial bones. No significant effects occurred at 0.6 mg/kg given orally (12 times the recommended clinical dose based on comparison of the AUCs).

New Zealand White rabbits were less sensitive since only delayed ossification of the frontal bones was seen at 10 mg/kg given orally (approximately 1,600 times the recommended clinical dose on a mg/m^2 basis). Extensive use of other beta-agonists has provided no evidence that these class effects in animals are relevant to use in humans. There are no adequate and well-controlled studies with Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in pregnant women. Serevent Inhalation Aerosol should be used during pregnancy only if the potential benefit justifies the potential risk to the fetus.

Use in Labor and Delivery: There are no well-controlled human studies that have investigated effects of salmeterol on preterm labor or labor at term. Because of the potential for beta-agonist interference with uterine contractility, use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol during labor should be restricted to those patients in whom the benefits clearly outweigh the risks.

Nursing Mothers: Plasma levels of salmeterol after inhaled therapeutic doses are very low (85 to 200 pg/mL) in humans. In lactating rats dosed with radiolabeled salmeterol, levels of radioactivity were similar in plasma and milk. In rats, concentrations of salmeterol in plasma and milk were similar. The xinafoate moiety is also transferred to milk in rats at concentrations of about half the corresponding level in plasma. However, since there is no experience with use of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol by nursing mothers, a decision should be made whether to discontinue nursing or to discontinue the drug, taking into account the importance of the drug to the mother. Caution should be exercised when salmeterol xinafoate is administered to a nursing woman.

Pediatric Use: The safety and effectiveness of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in children younger than 12 years of age have not been established.

Geriatric Use: Of the total number of patients who received Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in all clinical studies, 241 were 65 years and older. Geriatric patients (65 years and older) with reversible obstructive airway disease were evaluated in four well-controlled studies of 3 weeks' to 3 months' duration. Two placebo-controlled, crossover studies evaluated twice-daily dosing with salmeterol for 21 to 28 days in 45 patients. An additional 75 geriatric patients were treated with salmeterol for 3 months in two large parallel-group, multicenter studies. These 120 patients experienced increases in AM and PM peak expiratory flow rate and decreases in diurnal variation in peak expiratory flow rate similar to responses seen in the total populations of the two latter studies. The adverse event type and frequency in geriatric patients were not different from those of the total populations studied.

No apparent differences in the efficacy and safety of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol were observed when geriatric patients were compared with younger patients in clinical trials. As with other beta$_2$-agonists, however, special caution should be observed when using Serevent Inhalation Aerosol in elderly patients who have concomitant cardiovascular disease that could be adversely affected by this class of drug. Based on available data, no adjustment of salmeterol dosage in geriatric patients is warranted.

ADVERSE REACTIONS: Adverse reactions to salmeterol are similar in nature to reactions to other selective beta$_2$-adrenoceptor agonists, i.e., tachycardia; palpitations; immediate hypersensitivity reactions, including urticaria, angioedema, rash, bronchospasm (see WARNINGS); headache; tremor; nervousness; and paradoxical bronchospasm (see WARNINGS).

Two multicenter, 12-week, controlled studies have evaluated twice-daily doses of Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol in patients 12 years of age and older with asthma. The following table reports the incidence of adverse events in these two studies.

Serevent® (salmeterol xinafoate) Inhalation Aerosol

Adverse Experience Incidence in Two Large 12-Week Clinical Trials*

Adverse Event Type	Percent of Patients		
	Placebo n=187	Serevent 42 mcg b.i.d. n=184	Albuterol 180 mcg q.i.d. n=185
Ear, nose, and throat			
Upper respiratory tract infection	13	14	16*
Nasopharyngitis	12	14	11
Disease of nasal cavity/sinus	4	6	1
Sinus headache	2	4	<1
Gastrointestinal			
Stomachache	0	4	0
Neurological			
Headache	23	28	27
Tremor	2	4	3
Respiratory			
Cough	6	7	3
Lower respiratory infection	2	4	2

* The only adverse experience classified as serious was one case of upper respiratory tract infection in a patient treated with albuterol.

The table above includes all events (whether considered drug related or nondrug related by the investigator) that occurred at a rate of over 3% in the Serevent® (salmeterol xinafoate) Inhalation Aerosol treatment group and were more common in the Serevent Inhalation Aerosol group than in the placebo group.

Pharyngitis, allergic rhinitis, dizziness/giddiness, and influenza occurred at 3% or more but were equally common on placebo. Other events occurring in the Serevent Inhalation Aerosol treatment group at a frequency of 1% to 3% were as follows:

Cardiovascular: Tachycardia, palpitations.
Ear, Nose, and Throat: Rhinitis, laryngitis.
Gastrointestinal: Nausea, viral gastroenteritis, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain.
Hypersensitivity: Urticaria.
Mouth and Teeth: Dental pain.
Musculoskeletal: Pain in joint, back pain, muscle cramp/contraction, myalgia/myositis, muscular soreness.
Neurological: Nervousness, malaise/fatigue.
Respiratory: Tracheitis/bronchitis.
Skin: Rash/skin eruption.
Urogenital: Dysmenorrhea.

In small dose-response studies, tremor, nervousness, and palpitations appeared to be dose related.

OVERDOSAGE: Overdosage with salmeterol may be expected to result in exaggeration of the pharmacologic adverse effects associated with beta-adrenoceptor agonists, including tachycardia and/or arrhythmia, tremor, headache, and muscle cramps. Overdosage with salmeterol can lead to clinically significant prolongation of the QT_C interval, which can produce ventricular arrhythmias. Other signs of overdosage may include hypokalemia and hyperglycemia.

In these cases, therapy with Serevent® Inhalation Aerosol and all beta-adrenergic–stimulant drugs should be stopped, supportive therapy provided, and judicious use of a beta-adrenergic blocking agent should be considered, bearing in mind the possibility that such agents can produce bronchospasm. Cardiac monitoring is recommended in cases of overdosage.

As with all sympathomimetic pressurized aerosol medications, cardiac arrest and even death may be associated with abuse of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

Rats and dogs survived the maximum practicable inhalation doses of salmeterol of 2.9 and 0.7 mg/kg, respectively. The maximum nonlethal oral doses in mice and rats were approximately 150 mg/kg and >1,000 mg/kg, respectively.

Dialysis is not appropriate treatment for overdosage of Serevent Inhalation Aerosol.

Allen & Hanburys
DIVISION OF GLAXO INC.
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709

September 1994
RL-137

Reference: *1. Data on file, Glaxo Inc.*

Allen & Hanburys
DIVISION OF GLAXO INC.
a world leader in respiratory care
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709

Glaxo Pharmaceuticals
DIVISION OF GLAXO INC

SER185R1 Printed in USA October 1994

Circle 118 on reader service card

ARDS

By Tony Dal Nogare, MD

ARDS was originally described in 1967 and has since undergone much scrutiny. This review of ARDS discusses the latest developments in risk factors and treatment. Also covers the 5 diagnostic criteria that must be present to make an accurate diagnosis of ARDS, including clinical, radiographic, and physiologic criteria.

Item VT31 — VHS (60 minutes)
$35 (nonmember $40).
Add $3.25 for shipping.

Call (214) 243-2272 or
Fax your order to (214) 484-6010

American Association for Respiratory Care
11030 Ables Ln., Dallas, TX
75229-4593

WITH THE INFORMATION SERVICE CARD, YOU CAN STOP SEARCHING AND START BUYING.

Get the facts on all the products and services advertised in this issue easily and quickly. The computerized Information Service Card does it all. Simply fill in your name and address, check the appropriate boxes, and mail or fax it.

RESPIRATORY CARE

A Monthly Science Journal. Established 1956. Official Journal of the American Association for Respiratory Care.

EDITORIAL OFFICE
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229
(214) 243-2272

EDITOR
Pat Brougher BA RRT

ASSOCIATE EDITOR
Kaye Weber MS RRT

ASSISTANT EDITOR
Donna Stephens BBA

MANAGING EDITOR
Ray Masferrer BA RRT

EDITORIAL BOARD
Dean Hess PhD RRT, Chairman
Thomas A Barnes EdD RRT
Richard D Branson RRT
Crystal L Dunlevy EdD RRT
Charles G Durbin Jr MD
Thomas D East PhD
Neil R MacIntyre MD
Shelley C Mishoe PhD RRT
Joseph L Rau PhD RRT
James K Stoller MD

CONSULTING EDITORS
Frank E Biondo BS RRT
Howard J Birenbaum MD
Robert L Chatburn RRT
Patricia Ann Doorley MS RRT
Donald R Elton MD
Robert R Fluck Jr MS RRT
Ronald B George MD
James M Hurst MD
Charles G Irvin PhD
MS Jastremski MD
Robert M Kacmarek PhD RRT
Hugh S Mathewson MD
Michael McPeck BS RRT
David J Pierson MD
John Shigeoka MD
Jack Wanger MBA RPFT RRT
Jeffrey J Ward MEd RRT

JOURNAL ASSOCIATES
Stephen M Ayres MD
Reuben M Cherniack MD
Donald F Egan MD
Gareth B Gish MS RRT
George Gregory MD
Ake Grenvik MD
H Frederick Helmholz Jr MD
John E Hodgkin MD
William F Miller MD
Thomas L Petty MD
Alan K Pierce MD
Henning Pontoppidan MD
John W Severinghaus MD
Barry A Shapiro MD

PRODUCTION STAFF
Linda Barcus Donna Knauf
Steve Bowden Denise Ditzenberger

CONTENTS

December 1994
Volume 39, Number 12

EDITORIALS

1146 CPGs 1994: Where Are We? Where Have We Been? Where Are We Going?
by Pat Brougher—Dallas, Texas

1149 Guideline for Prevention of Noscomial Pneumonia and Ventilator Circuits: Time for Change?
by Dean Hess—Boston, Massachusetts

1154 TB Control Guidelines Deserve Our Attention, Too
by Pat Brougher—Dallas, Texas

1155 Aerosol Research: How Should We Skin This Cat?
by Michael McPeck—Stony Brook, New York

ORIGINAL CONTRIBUTIONS

1157 Comparison of Aerosol Delivery via Circulaire System vs Conventional Small Volume Nebulizer
by John W Mason, Warren C Miller, and Sherry Small—Webster, Texas

1162 Predicting Aerosol Deposition during Neonatal Ventilation: Feasibility of Bench Testing
by Thomas G O'Riordan, Leonard I Kleinman, Kenneth Hughes, and Gerald C Smaldone—Stony Brook, New York

CLINICAL PRACTICE GUIDELINES

1170 Metabolic Measurement Using Indirect Calorimetry during Mechanical Ventilation

1176 Transcutaneous Blood Gas Monitoring for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients

1180 Capillary Blood Gas Sampling for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients

1184 Body Plethysmography

RESPIRATORY CARE (ISSN 0020-1324) is a monthly publication of Daedalus Enterprises Inc for the American Association for Respiratory Care. Copyright © 1994 by Daedalus Enterprises Inc, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229. All rights reserved. Reproduction in whole or in part without the express, written permission of Daedalus Enterprises Inc is prohibited. The opinions expressed in any article or editorial are those of the author and do not necessarily reflect the views of Daedalus Enterprises Inc, the Editorial Board, or the American Association for Respiratory Care. Neither can Daedalus Enterprises Inc, the Editorial Board, or the American Association for Respiratory Care be responsible for the consequences of the clinical applications of any methods or devices described herein. Printed in USA.

RESPIRATORY CARE is indexed in Hospital Literature Index and in Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature.
Subscription Rates: $5.00 per copy; $50.00 per year (12 issues) in the US; $70.00 in all other countries (add $84.00 for airmail).
Second Class Postage paid at Dallas, TX. POSTMASTER: Send address changes to RESPIRATORY CARE, Daedalus Enterprises, Inc, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229.

New Press-and-Release Action
Simplified design, with fewer moving parts, makes canister actuation easier, minimizes need for coordination.

In MDI Drug Delivery...
The choice just got easier.

Better delivery.

OptiHaler® is designed to give your patients the full benefit of their MDI medication. Its patented aerodynamic action* creates a measurably superior aerosol mixture — richer in the smaller, more effective particles.[1] And it makes more of that mixture available for delivery to the lungs than conventional holding chambers.[1]

Better design.

OptiHaler's new simplified design makes MDI therapy easier than ever. Patients simply press and release the canister while inhaling — then close the end cap for the next puff. Cleaning and maintenance are easier too.

Better compliance.

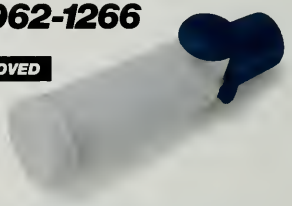
And because more convenience usually means better compliance, OptiHaler packs all of these advantages into a sleek, discreet, truly portable unit that patients rate significantly more convenient for daily use than the leading holding chambers.[2]

New, more convenient, one-piece cap.

So why not make MDI therapy easier for your patients...with the product more patients prefer.[2] Call our 24-hour customer service hotline today for your free professional sample of new, improved OptiHaler.

1-800-962-1266

NEW IMPROVED



OptiHaler®

Drug Delivery System for use with Metered Dose Inhalers

The promise of MDI therapy...delivered.

From the makers of ASSESS® and Personal Best® Peak Flow Meters

HealthScan Products Inc., Cedar Grove, NJ

REFERENCES 1. Data on file. HealthScan Products Inc. 2. Wheeler BB, Bollers ND: Initial experience with a novel spacer device. (Presented at the 1993 meeting of the American Academy of Allergy and Immunology) * U.S. Patent No. 5,040,527 OA760004-0 © 1994. HealthScan Products Inc

MANUSCRIPT SUBMISSION
We attempt to print Instructions for Authors and Typists near the end of RESPIRATORY CARE on a quarterly basis (eg, Jan, Apr, July, Nov). Call the Editorial Office for a copy if you're unable to locate.

PHOTOCOPYING & QUOTATION
PHOTOCOPYING. Any material in this journal that is copyrighted by Daedalus Enterprises Inc may be photocopied for noncommercial purposes of scientific or educational advancement.

QUOTATION. Anyone may, without permission, quote up to 500 words of material in this journal that is copyrighted by Daedalus Enterprises Inc, provided the quotation is for noncommercial use, and provided RESPIRATORY CARE is credited. Longer quotation requires written approval by the author and publisher.

SUBSCRIPTIONS/CHANGES OF ADDRESS
RESPIRATORY CARE
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229-4593
(214) 243-2272

SUBSCRIPTIONS. Individual subscription rates are $50.00 per year (12 issues) in the U.S. and Puerto Rico, $70.00 per year in all other countries; $95.00 for 2 years in the U.S. and Puerto Rico, $135.00 in all other countries; and $140 for 3 years in the U.S. and Puerto Rico, $200.00 in all other countries (add $84.00 per year for air mail). Annual subscriptions are offered to members of associations according to their membership enrollment as follows: 101-500 members—$6.00, 501-1,500 members—$5.50, 1,501-10,000 members—$5.00, and over 10,000 members—$4.00. Single copies, when available, cost $5.00; add $7.00 air mail postage to overseas countries.

CHANGE OF ADDRESS. Six weeks notice is required to effect a change of address. Note your subscription number (from the mailing label) your name, and both old and new address, including zip codes. Please note your subscription number on the envelope. Copies will not be replaced without charge unless request is received within 60 days of the mailing in the U.S. or within 90 days in other countries.

MARKETING DIRECTOR
Dale Griffiths

ADVERTISING ASSISTANT
Beth Binkley

ADVERTISING. Display advertising should be arranged with the advertising representatives. RESPIRATORY CARE does not publish a classified advertising column.

PRODUCT ADVERTISING: RATES & MEDIA KITS
Jim Burke
Williams & Wilkins
428 E. Preston St.
Baltimore, MD 21202
(800) 528-1843
fax (410) 528-4452

RECRUITMENT ADVERTISING:
Beth Binkley
RESPIRATORY CARE
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229-4593
(214) 243-2272
fax (214) 484-6010

CONTENTS, *Continued*

December 1994
Volume 39, Number 12

GUIDELINES, RECOMMENDATIONS, & STATEMENTS

1191 Guideline for Prevention of Noscomial Pneumonia
by Ofelia C Tablan, Larry J Anderson, Nancy H Arden, Robert F Breiman, Jay C Butler, Michael M McNeil, and The Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee—Atlanta, Georgia

BOOKS, FILMS, TAPES, & SOFTWARE

1256 Therapeutics in Respiratory Disease, by Peter J Barnes MA DM DSc, Kian Fan Chung MD, Timothy W Evans MD PhD, and Stephen G Spiro MD, with a contribution by Robert F Miller MB BS.
reviewed by Joseph L Rau Jr PhD RRT—Atlanta, Georgia

1257 Pharmacology and Therapeutics in Respiratory Care, by Theodore J Witek Jr DrPH and E Neil Schachter MD.
reviewed by Hugh S Mathewson MD—Kansas City, Kansas

APPRECIATION OF REVIEWERS

1237 Listing of this Year's Manuscript & OPEN FORUM Reviewers

ANNUAL INDEXES

1238 Author Index for Volume 39 (1994)
1242 Subject Index for Volume 39 (1994)

NOTICES

1260 1994 ARCF Literary Award Winners

CALENDAR OF EVENTS

1263 Meeting Dates, Locations, Themes

CALL FOR OPEN FORUM ABSTRACTS

1261 1995 Call for OPEN FORUM Abstracts

INDEXES

1264 Authors in This Issue
1264 Advertisers in This Issue
1138 Advertiser Help Lines

Editorials and Commentaries To Note

Drug Delivery by Nebulization: "Reality Testing" (editorial)—G Smaldone. J Aerosol Med 1994;7(3):213-216. (Pertains to Phipps & Gonda paper abstracted on Page 1136, Hurley et al on Page 1136, Nerbrink et al on Page 1138, and Knoch et al on Page 1141.)

The Fallacy of the Ecological Fallacy: The Potential Misuse of a Concept and the Consequences—S Schwartz. Am J Public Health 1994;84:819-824.

Assessment of Reversibility of Airflow Obstruction—JA Van Noord, J Smeets, J Clément, KP Van De Woestijne, M Demedts. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:551.

The application of the forced oscillation technique to assess reversibility of airflow obstruction was compared with that of indices of forced expiration and plethysmographic airway resistance (Raw). In 125 patients with airflow obstruction, we measured total respiratory resistance (Rrs) and reactance (Xrs), Raw and specific airway conductance (sGaw), maximal flow-volume curves and forced expiratory volume in 1 s (FEV_1), before and 30 min after 2 × 20 μg salbutamol by MDI. Salbutamol induced significant change in mean value of all measured indices. The changes in impedance data consisted of decrease in mean value and of negative frequency dependence of Rrs, an increase in Xrs with slight decrease of its positive frequency dependence. Multivariate analysis of differences between pre- and postbronchodilator values showed that the single indices with the greatest sensitivity to detect the effect of salbutamol were, in decreasing order, (1) in relative change (% baseline value): Raw, Rrs at 6 Hz (Rrs_6), forced vital capacity (FVC), FEV_1, and (2) in absolute change: FVC, sGaw or Raw, Rrs_6, FEV_1, maximal expiratory flow (MEF_{50}). The effect of salbutamol was described best in (1) by a combination of Raw and FVC and in (2) by sGaw and FVC. For individual detection of bronchodilator effect, threshold values were calculated from mean reproducibility of the three baseline values of the various indices, attempting to estimate whether response to a bronchodilator is statistically significant. The greatest number of significant responses were observed for Raw, sGaw, FEV_1, and FVC in that succession, Rrs_6 being markedly less sensitive. This discrepancy is due to the lack of Rrs_6 response to bronchodilators in patients with severe airway obstruction. We conclude that, although Rrs_6 is applicable as a test in clinical practice for bronchodilation, it is less sensitive than Raw in patients with clearly abnormal baseline lung function.

Counseling Adolescents for Smoking Prevention: A Survey of Primary Care Physicians and Dentists—DI Gregorio. Am J Public Health 1994;84:1151.

Pediatricians, family practitioners, and dentists were questioned in the spring of 1992 about whether they counseled adolescent patients (10 through 18 years old) not to smoke. Of the 674 questionnaires distributed, 443 (66%) were returned and analyzed. Most practitioners could not estimate cigarette use among their adolescent patients. Prevention counseling occurred infrequently, and least often among younger patients. Physicians were more likely than dentists to counsel adolescents. The data highlight the need for continuing training of primary health care practitioners about the importance of counseling adolescents not to smoke.

Effect of Endogenous and Inhaled Nitric Oxide on the Ventilation-Perfusion Relationships in Oleic-Acid Lung Injury—C Putensen, J Räsänen, JB Downs, FA Lopez. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:330.

Previous investigations have shown that the ventilation-perfusion ($\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$) mismatch caused by acute lung injury can be alleviated either by inducing vasodilation in ventilated lung units with inhaled nitric oxide (NO) or by inhibiting the synthesis of endogenous NO, which opposes hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. To determine the effects of a combination of these interventions, we evaluated cardiopulmonary function and $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distributions in 10 dogs with oleic acid-induced lung injury. Each animal received, in random order, zero or 40 ppm of NO in inspiratory gas, with and without intravenous infusion of N^G-monomethyl-L-arginine (L-NMMA) (5 mg/kg/h). The multiple inert-gas elimination technique was used to estimate $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ distributions. Systemic L-NMMA administration alone did not affect $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ inequality and gas exchange, but increased pulmonary and systemic vascular resistance. Inhaled NO improved gas exchange by redistributing blood flow from shunt units to lung units with a nearly ideal $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ ratio, without affecting pulmonary or systemic vascular resistance. Improved $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ matching and gas exchange was most pronounced when NO was inhaled in the presence of systemic L-NMMA. Inhalation of NO reversed the pulmonary but not the systemic vasoconstriction caused by L-NMMA. These results suggest that endogenous NO release is not limited to hypoxic lung regions in animals with oleic acid-induced lung injury. Inhaled NO reversed L-NMMA-induced pulmonary vasoconstriction and improved $\dot{V}_A/\dot{Q}$ matching by selectively dilating the pulmonary vasculature in ventilated lung units.

Effects of a Restricted Work-Site Smoking Policy on Employees Who Smoke—J Brigham, J Gross, ML Stitzer, LJ Felch. Am J Public Health 1994;84:773.

OBJECTIVES: This study evaluated the biological and subjective consequences observed in individual smokers after implementation of a workplace smoking-restriction policy. METHODS: Employees were evaluated for 4 weeks before and 4 weeks after their workplace became smokefree (n = 34). A comparison group of smokers whose work-site smoking was unrestricted served as controls (n = 33). Daily exposure to tobacco constituents and withdrawal effects were measured. RESULTS: Smokers at the restricted site had verified smoking reduction (mean = four cigarettes per day) and significantly reduced nicotine and carbon monoxide during the work shift. There were increases in ratings of some common withdrawal symptoms (cravings/urges, concentration difficulties, increased eating, depression). No evidence of compensatory smoking during nonwork hours was found. Overall tobacco exposure, as measured in saliva cotinine, showed a nonsignificant 15% decline. CONCLUSIONS: Workplace smoking restriction markedly altered smoking patterns (ie, reduced daytime smoking) and reduced cotinine levels to an amount consistent with cigarette

TEST DRIVE THE WORLD'S BEST CIRCUIT.

A lot of clinicians have been quick to seize on the cost of heated wire circuits without considering the size of the return. You'll use up to 50% less water, with a significant impact on total running costs. You'll save all the time currently spent draining your unheated circuits, which you may do as often as twice a shift. The overall temperature of your system will be lower, and you'll be able to select various temperature and humidity levels across a wide range of flows and applications.

Get the best from your humidifiers. Ring Baxter toll free in the U.S. on 1 800 321 3832 or call us direct on +64 9 570 5655 to ask about taking one of our heated wire circuits for a test drive.

Fisher & Paykel HEALTHCARE

Fisher & Paykel Healthcare, 25 Carbine Road, Panmure, Auckland, New Zealand, Telephone: +64 9 570 5655, Facsimile: +64 9 570 9500.

Circle 131 on reader service card

reduction. Thus, work-site smoking restriction may promote meaningful, albeit limited, reductions in tobacco exposure and consequent health risks.

Evaluation of Definitions for Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome—WA Knaus, X Sun, RB Hakim, DP Wagner. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:311.

We conducted a cohort study of 423 intensive care unit (ICU) admissions with a primary clinical diagnosis of acute respiratory failure, a P_{aO_2}/F_{IO_2} on ICU admission of < 300 mm Hg, and an ICD-9 discharge diagnosis of adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) (518.5 or 518.82) drawn from a nationally representative database of 17,440 ICU admissions to evaluate current and proposed revisions for definitions of ARDS. A variety of nonpulmonary physiologic risk factors, from shock to elevated serum bilirubin measurements, were significant ($p < 0.01$) for hospital mortality. Multivariable analysis using the admission APACHE III score, primary ICU admission diagnosis, and treatment location before ICU admission provided greater accuracy in prediction (ROC = 0.80) than the individual P_{aO_2}/F_{IO_2} (ROC = 0.68). Patients were given an individual risk of hospital mortality based on their admission APACHE III score, treatment location before ICU admission, and ICU admitting diagnosis. Dividing the patient population into groups using a $P_{aO_2}/F_{IO_2} \leq 150$ resulted in a wide range of individual risk for hospital mortality, from < 10 to > 90% in both groups. We conclude that ARDS is a complex clinical entity with a variety of pulmonary and nonpulmonary risk factors for both its development and its prognosis. Current and proposed categorical definitions based on the severity of hypoxemia result in a wide distribution of individual patient risks. Use of these findings in the design and conduct of future clinical trials would improve the evaluation of new therapies.

Evaporation of Aqueous Aerosols Produced by Jet Nebulizers: Effects on Particle Size and Concentration of Solution in the Droplets—PR Phipps, I Gonda. J Aerosol Med 1994;7:239.

Aqueous droplets produced by jet nebulizers can lose water by evaporation prior to entry into the patient's mouth, or a sizing device. Evaporation causes increase in the concentration of the solution in the droplet and reduction in size. These changes can complicate interpretation of results from experiments such as in vitro particle sizing or human respiratory tract deposition. We present experimental data obtained by nebulization of isotonic saline using a variety of aerosol delivery systems employing jet nebulizers. The impact of the evaporation phenomena is particularly great when a large volume of dry dilution air is mixed with the aerosol stream—a situation that is quite common in aerosol experiments. The experimental results approach the values calculated from the theoretical mass balance models in the limit of equilibrium between the droplets and the surrounding atmosphere.

Assessment of Antibiotic Aerosol Generation Using Commercial Jet Nebulizers—PK Hurley, SW Smye, H Cunliffe. J Aerosol Med 1994;7:217.

The performance of 14 commercial jet nebulisers has been assessed: Unineb, Suremist (Unimed (UK) Ltd), Micro-Cirrus (Intersurgical Ltd), Pulmo-Neb (DeVilbiss Health Care UK Ltd), Side-Stream (Medic-Aid Ltd), Micro-Neb III (Lifecare Ltd), RespirGard (Marquest Medical Products Inc), Aeromist, Venticaire (S and W Vickers Ltd), Up-Draft II, Ava-Neb, Up-Draft (Hudson Respiratory Care Inc), Bennett/Twin, Raindrop (Puritan-Bennett Corporation). The units were operated with a high flow compressor (Maxi III, Medix Ltd) at 101/min. Performance was assessed by measuring the fraction of the initial mass of drug released as an aerosol and nebulisation time for initial drug volumes of 2-6 mL, and the mass median diameter and mass fraction of the aerosol in particles < 5.17 μm diameter. The Side-Stream nebuliser gave the best performance, although incorporation of a filter to trap exhaled antibiotic may prove difficult. The Micro-Cirrus generated a particularly fine aerosol. The Raindrop nebuliser performed well, while the Up-Draft II nebulised efficiently but was associated with extended nebulisation times, which may limit its utility.

Low Birthweight at Term and the Timing of Fetal Exposre to Maternal Smoking—Am J Public Health 1994;84:1127.

OBJECTIVES: This study was undertaken to evaluate the risk of small-for-gestational-age birth for women who stop smoking or begin to smoke during pregnancy. METHODS: Women with term singleton pregnancies from a hospital-based cohort of 11 177 were classified as (1) nonsmokers; (2) smoked throughout pregnancy; (3) smoked during first trimester only; (4) smoked during first and second trimesters only; and (5) smoked during second and third trimesters or during third trimester only. Risk of small-for-gestional-age birth according to smoking category was estimated and adjusted for confounding factors by logistic regression. RESULTS: Women who stopped smoking by the third trimester were not at increased risk of small-for-gestional-age birth compared with nonsmokers. Women who began smoking during the second or third trimester had an elevated risk of small-for-gestational-age birth (odds ratio [OR] 1.83; 95% confidence interval [CI] = 1.25, 2.67) similar to that for women who smoked throughout pregnancy (OR = 2.20; 95% CI = 1.90, 2.54). Risk of small-for-gestional-age birth increased with the number of cigarettes smoked during the third trimester. CONCLUSIONS: It is during the third trimester that smoking retards fetal growth, presenting a compelling opportunity for smoking cessation interventions. Programs must emphasize the importance of not resuming smoking late in pregnancy.

Mathematical Coupling Explains Dependence of Oxygen Consumption on Oxygen Delivery in ARDS—PT Phang, KF Cunningham, JJ Ronco, BR Wiggs, JA Russell. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:318.

Because of potential for mathematical coupling of measurement errors in shared variables used to calculate oxygen consumption ($Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$) and oxygen delivery (D_{O_2}), we asked whether determination of the $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$-D_{O_2} relationship in individual patients with ARDS was statistically valid. We studied 17 clinically resuscitated patients with severe ARDS, measuring $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$, Calorimetric $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ (using analysis of respiratory gases), and D_{O_2} at regular intervals while D_{O_2} was increased using an infusion of dobutamine. Overall, we found that D_{O_2} (pre 482 ± 143, post 616 ± 170 mL O_2/min · m^2, $p < 0.01$) and $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$ (pre 130 ± 23, post 147 ± 24 mL · O_2/min · m^2, $p < 0.02$) increased significantly with dobutamine infusion, but $Calorimetric\dot{V}_{O_2}$ measured simultaneously did not change (pre 128 ± 22, post 128 ± 22 mL O_2/min · m^2, p = NS). In addition, unpooled weighted slope for $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$ versus D_{O_2} (0.06) was significantly different from zero, but unpooled weighted slope for $Calorimetric\dot{V}_{O_2}$ versus D_{O_2} (0.01) was not significantly different from zero. Slopes of the $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$-D_{O_2} relationship were significant for only three individual patients. Using methods by Stratton and colleagues to analyze the effect of mathematical coupling in the $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$-D_{O_2} relationship, we found that in all patients the slope of measurement errors was greater than observed slope and that observed slope was greater than estimated true slope. Estimated true slope of the $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$-D_{O_2} relationship in all individual patients was not significant. Therefore, we suggest that determination of the $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$-D_{O_2} relationship in individual patients who are resuscitated and hemodynamically stable is most often not statistically significant. Furthermore, we suggest that mathematical coupling of random error in the measurement of shared variables could explain finding dependence of $Fick\dot{V}_{O_2}$ on D_{O_2} in clinically resuscitated individual patients with severe ARDS.

Nonbronchodilator Effects of Inhaled β_2 Agonists: Greater Protection against Adenosine Monophosphate- Than Methacholine-Induced Bronchoconstriction in Asthma—BJ O'Connor, RW Fuller, PJ Barnes. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:381.

PRESENTING THE FIRST PORTABLE VENTILATOR THAT DOESN'T HAVE TO APOLOGIZE FOR BEING PORTABLE!

Compare Uni-Vent™ to any other portable ventilator and you will quickly see why the Model 750 is in a class by itself.*

*Respiratory Care Magazine, January 1992, Vol. 37, No. 1.

- Control, Assist-Control and SIMV operating modes, optional electronic demand valve - all PEEP compensable!
- Comprehensive alarm system and automatic continuous system self-checks for maximum safety!
- Easy-to-operate, logical control groupings, simplify personnel training
- Operates from internal battery or external power - consumes no gas!
- High-reliability, electronic circuitry is unaffected by changes in altitude

For more information on the Uni-Vent™ Model 750, or the name of your local Representative, call Impact today!
IMPACT Instrumentation, Inc., 27 Fairfield Place, P.O. Box 508, West Caldwell, NJ 07006 1-800/969-0750

Circle 115 on reader service card

There has been controversy about possible beneficial effects of β agonists on airway function in asthma, in addition to their effects on airway smooth muscle. We compared the protective effects of terbutaline on bronchoconstrictor responses to methacholine, which constricts smooth muscle directly, adenosine 5'-monophosphate (AMP), which acts indirectly by mast cell activation, and sodium metabisulfite (MBS), which stimulates sensory nerves, in 15 mild asthmatic subjects in a randomized double-blind study carried out in two phases. In the first phase 12 subjects inhaled two doses of 0.5 and 2.5 mg terbutaline or placebo administered as a dry powder (Tubohaler®) 20 min before challenge with methacholine and AMP. Each subject received increasing doubling doses of methacholine and AMP nebulized from a dosimeter. Challenges were terminated when FEV_1 fell by 20% from baseline (PC_{20}). In the second phase 10 subjects (seven of whom had participated in Phase 1) inhaled 0.5 mg terbutaline or placebo before similar challenge with methacholine and MBS. In Phase 1, terbutaline inhibited the bronchoconstrictor response to methacholine by 2.1 and 3.3 doubling doses but caused a significantly greater inhibition of the response to AMP of 3.4 and 4.8 doubling doses after 0.5 and 2.5 mg, respectively. In the second phase, 0.5 mg terbutaline had equivalent effects on responses to both methacholine and MBS of 2.6 and 2.2 doubling dilutions, respectively. This effect on methacholine and MBS implies functional antagonism of airway smooth muscle. The enhanced effect on AMP implies an additional non-smooth muscle action that may involve suppression of airway mast cell function.

Why Do Medical Nebulizers Differ in Their Output and Particle Size Characteristics?—O Nerbrink, M Dahlbäck, HC Hansson. J Aerosol Med 1994;7:259.

Previous work done on the characterization of nebulizers has focused on gravimetrical output and particle/droplet size distribution at various air flow rates. This paper investigates six different nebulizers, with regard to droplet generation and separation properties, at a single air flow rate. Droplet generation and separation properties were measured with laser diffraction and impactor techniques. For each of the nebulizers the air velocity was calculated and both liquid and air volumetric flow rate was measured. The primary generated droplets (nebulizer without impaction baffle) had a mean size of between 15 μm and > 500 μm. The secondary generated droplets (nebulizer with baffle) were in the size range of 1 to 10 μm. It was found that the baffle system of the investigated nebulizers could be described according to ordinary impaction theory. The mass median diameters (MMD) of these nebulizers were found to be dependent on air velocity (v_g) and ratio of liquid to air volumetric flow rate (Q_l/Q_a). In all of the nebulizers, between 93% and 99% of the generated primary droplets were caught by the baffle system, which resulted in a very low output. Thus, the nebulizers examined do not appear to be optimised, with regard to observed droplet generation and baffle arrangements, if secondary droplets with a size ≈ 1 μm are desired. By changing the design at the primary generation point, air velocity (v_g) and liquid to air flow rate (Q_l/Q_a), the primary generated droplet size could be decreased. This would result in an increase in the number concentration of smaller droplets that pass the baffle system. As changes in v_g affect Q_l/Q_a, and both v_g and Q_l/Q_a

UNIVERSITY FACULTY

University faculty opportunity available July 1, 1995 in BS Respiratory Therapy and MS Allied Health programs at major research university/academic health center. Masters degree and RRT required; doctoral degree preferred. Teaching experience and research expertise in adult critical care preferred. Twelve month salary commensurate with credentials and rank; no salary ceiling; excellent benefits, resources and professional environment.

Write for more information or send curriculum vitae by January 15, 1995 to:

Respiratory Therapy Search Committee
The Ohio State University
1583 Perry Street
Columbus, OH 43210-1234

OHIO STATE UNIVERSITY HEALTH SCIENCES CENTER

OSU is an EO & AA Employer.

Circle 108 on reader service card

For your convenience, and direct access, the advertisers in this issue and their phone numbers are listed below. Please use this directory for requesting written material or for any question you may have.

HELP LINES

AARC Information	**214-243-2272**
Allen & Hanburys	**See Ad**
Boehringer Ingelheim	**See Ad**
CNS	**800-843-2978**
Dräger Critical Care Systems	**703-817-0100**
Fisher & Paykel	**800-321-3832**
HealthScan Products Inc	**800-962-1266**
Impact Instrumentation	**800-969-0750**
Ohio State University	**See Ad**
Puritan Bennett	**800-255-6773**
Sherwood Medical	**800-325-7472**
WB Saunders	**800-545-2522**

We'd like to introduce a special new feature of our 7200® Series Ventilator:

Insight.

The best clinical decisions require insight. And the best insight comes from the best tools. Like the new 7200 Series Ventilatory System.

You've always known the 7200 Series for its reliability and upgradeability. Now we're adding a whole new dimension – *five enhancements* that allow greater insight into the patient's status.

The rapid shallow breathing index (RR/Vt), which may suggest readiness to wean, is among over 30 trendable parameters in the new Graphics 2.0 option.

Graphics 2.0 allows you to select from a menu of over 30 parameters to be continuously trended for up to 72 hours. With just two simple key presses, the *7250™ Metabolic Monitor* accurately and continuously monitors whole body O_2 consumption, CO_2 production and calculates energy expenditure for ventilated patients. *Auto-PEEP* provides reliable intrinsic PEEP and circuit PEEP measurements. *DCI 2.0* allows two host devices such as bedside monitors and computers to be linked to the ventilator simultaneously. And finally, the *Enhanced-Plus keyboard* allows direct access to options and shows you at a glance which are enabled.

Together, the 7200 Ventilator and these new upgrades give you a greater ability than ever before to predict patient response and determine readiness to wean.[1]

The new 7200 Series. Now turning information into insight.

For more information about our *New Tools for Greater Insight*™, contact your Puritan-Bennett sales representative or call 1-800-255-6773.

Option keys on the new, Enhanced-Plus allow direct access to options and identify which are active. The new bar graph provides exceptional visibility and resolution to changes in pressure.

[1] Yang K Tobin M A Prospective Study of Indexes Predicting the Outcome of Trials of Weaning from Mechanical Ventilation. N Engl J Med 1991; 324: 1445-1448

The 7250 Metabolic Monitor continuously measures and calculates several metabolic parameters including energy expenditure. Its unique sampling method is designed to improve measurement accuracy on mechanically ventilated patients.

1994 Zenith Award Winner

WE'RE IN IT FOR LIFE™

PB PURITAN BENNETT®

A-AA-2171-00 ©1994, Puritan-Bennett Corporation
The 7250 Metabolic Monitor is covered by U.S. patents 5,072,737 and 5,325,861. Other patents pending in the U.S.A. and other countries. 7200 is a registered trademark, and 7250 is a trademark of Puritan-Bennett.

Circle 128 on reader service card

Vitalograph Spirometers. When it's time for precision & accuracy.

Thirty pioneering years have given us a rare command of accuracy in everything from spirometry to effective inhaler technique.
If you require better performance, don't delay another second.

Call our information hot-line on 1 800 255 6626.

Vitalograph

BREATHTAKING · TECHNOLOGY

Vitalograph Inc., 8347 Quivira Road, Lenexa, Kansas 66215, USA
Tel (913) 888-4221 Toll Free 1 800 255 6626 Fax (913) 888-4259

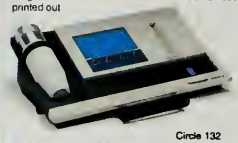
FIVE YEAR WARRANTY ON MOST PRODUCTS

Circle 130

SPIROTRAC III SPIROMETRY SYSTEM – Databasing capabilities with powerful trend analysis, in a Windows™ package

Circle 131

VOLUMETRIC C/W PRINTER (PFT-II PLUS)
Large size chart with automatic calculation of results printed out

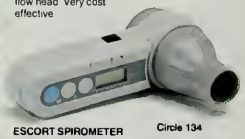


Circle 132

COMPACT II SPIROMETER
'Feature packed' instrument with sophisticated user configuration options

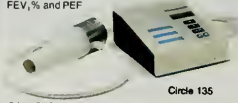
Circle 133

ALPHA SPIROMETER
Full loop capabilities from pneumotachograph flow head. Very cost effective



Circle 134

ESCORT SPIROMETER
A high specification hand-held spirometer measuring FVC, FEV_1, FEV_1% and PEF



Circle 135

OATA STORAGE SPIROMETER (OSS)
Suitable for use in long-term drug trials or allergy studies

Circle 136

AEROSOL INHALATION MONITOR & INCENTIVE DEVICE (AIM)
The A I M trains patients in the correct technique for using metered dose inhalers

Circle 137

PEAK FLOW METER
An important aid in the management of asthma. Very cost effective

Photographs of products are not to scale

Circle 34 on reader service card

separately influence the size distribution and thus output, nebulizer performance becomes difficult to control in a desired way. This suggests that it will be difficult to change the droplet size and at the same time control the mass output.

A Nebulizer System for Highly Reproducible Aerosol Delivery—M Knoch, E Wunderlich, S Geldner. J Aerosol Med 1994;7:229.

The output characteristics of current nebulizer systems are influenced by factors such as inspiratory flow, temperature and relative humidity of the ambient air, and surface tension of the nebulizing solutions. Due to the resulting alteration of droplet characteristics, the delivery of aerosolized drugs is variable. A nebulizer system, the PARI IS-2, has been designed for the delivery of aerosolized potent drugs. It is characterized by a highly consistent aerosol output and a high proportion of droplet mass in the respirable range. Laboratory testing was performed with a Melvern Particle Sizer and by measurement of total and effective output rates. Preconditioned air was supplied to the system in order to simulate different inspiratory flows (steady state) at varying ambient conditions. There was only a small effect on droplet sizes (MMD 3.0 to 3.6 μm) over the investigated range of inspiratory flow, ambient conditions, and drug solutions. Total and effective output rates of the nebulizer were found to be linearly proportional between 5 and 20 L/min inspiratory flow, thereby compensating for the dilution of aerosol by entrained air. Total output, at a relative humidity between 20% and 80% and at fixed inspiratory flow, varied only by $\pm 6\%$ with respect to 50% relative humidity. The proportion of the dose delivered from the system ranged from 28% to 67% for an initial fill volume between 0.5 and 3 mL, respectively. Thus, for standardized breathing and by using the manual interrupter for on-command therapy, a highly effective delivery and deposition of therapeutic aerosols in the lungs may be achieved with the PARI IS-2 nebulizer system. Due to the small droplet sizes (80% of the mass below 5 μm), side effects caused by aerosol deposition in the mouth and oropharynx are expected to be reduced to a minimum.

Pressure-Volume Relations of the Respiratory System in Healthy Children—A Thorsteinsson, A Larsson, C Jonmarker, O Werner. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:421.

Static pressure-volume (P-V) curves of the respiratory system were obtained in 48 healthy children (1 mo to 16 yr of age) during anesthesia and muscle paralysis. The lungs were inflated to a pressure of 25 to 40 cm H_2O, and during the subsequent deflation an interrupter placed in the airway tubing opened and closed every 0.16 s. Airway flow was integrated to obtain the volume decrement between consecutive flow interruptions. Airway pressure was measured during interruptions, and a curve relating pressure to lung volume was plotted, assuming the lung volume at zero pressure to equal functional residual capacity (FRC). FRC was measured using tracer gas washout. The maximum slope of the P-V curve (maximum compliance = C_{rs}max, mL/cm H_2O) was closely related to length (in centimeters) of the child: $C_{rs}max = 7.7 \times 10^{-4} \times length^{2.38}$; $r = 0.97$. The pressure coinciding with C_{rs}max was 6 ± 1 cm

Learn the
Mechanics
of Mechanical Ventilation

Monitoring Respiratory Mechanics During Mechanical Ventilation

By Robert L. Chatburn, RRT

Explains how physical and mathematical models are developed and applied, how such models are incorporated into ventilator design to provide estimates of mechanics, and some of the problems that can develop because of the limitations of the models. Chatburn points out that lack of consistency among manufacturers in the way in which compliance and resistance are measured and temperature conversions are applied and how the lack of published accuracy and precision information make data interpretation difficult.

Item VT30 — VHS (60 minutes)
$35 ($40 nonmembers)
Add $3 for shipping and handling.

Call (214) 243-2272 or **Fax** Your Order to (214) 484-2720 • American Association for Respiratory Care • 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas, TX 75229-4593

Texas customers only, please add 8¼% sales tax (including shipping charges). Texas customers that are exempt from sales tax must attach an exemption certificate.

H_2O (mean ± SD) in infants (1 to 6 mo of age) and 12 ± 1 cm H_2O in older children (> 1.5 yr of age). Total lung capacity (TLC) per kg body weight increased with age and was 52 ± 13 mL/kg in infants and 87 ± 11 mL/kg in older children. The FRC/TLC ratio was greater in infants (38 ± 4%) than in older children (30 ± 5%). The lung volume coinciding with C_{rs}max was nearly the same at all ages, when expressed as a percentage of TLC: 62 ± 3%. Specific compliance of the respiratory system, that is, C_{rs}max/TLC, decreased with growth and was 0.044 ± 0.006 cm H_2O^{-1} in infants and 0.035 ± 0.004 cm H_2O^{-1} in older children. It is concluded that although the P-V relations of the respiratory system changed markedly with growth, especially during the first year of life, the lung volume (%TLC) at which maximum compliance occurred varied little.

Reduction in Lung Injury after Combined Surfactant and High-Frequency Ventilation—JC Jackson, WE Truog, TA Standaert, JH Murphy, SE Juul, EY Chi, J Hildebrandt, WA Hodson. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:534.

Previous studies demonstrated that high-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV) begun at birth limits the development of alveolar proteinaceous edema in premature monkeys at risk for hyaline membrane disease (HMD). We hypothesized that exogenous surfactant combined with HFOV would lead to even further reductions in edema. Twenty *Macaca nemestrina* monkeys were delivered at 134 d gestation (term = 168 d) and treated with either HFOV or conventional mechanical ventilation (CMV) from the first breath; modified bovine surfactant (Survanta® [beractant]) was introduced into the trachea over the first few minutes of life. These animals were compared with 20 animals treated with either CMV or HFOV but without surfactant. At 6 h the lung was rapidly frozen in situ during inflation for determination of the volume fraction of alveolar edema. The combined use of surfactant and HFOV from the first breath reduced alveolar proteinaceous edema (3 ± 1%; mean ± SEM) from that seen with CMV alone (27 ± 3%, $p < 0.0001$), CMV after surfactant (21 ± 3%, $p < 0.0001$), and HFOV alone (13 ± 3%, $p < 0.015$). We conclude that the use of surfactant with HFOV after premature birth is superior to either surfactant or HFOV alone in reducing lung injury during the first few hours of life. We speculate that this reduction in lung injury may reduce the incidence or severity of bronchopulmonary dysplasia.

The Respiratory Health Impact of a Large Urban Fire—M Lipsett, K Waller, D Shusterman, S Thollaug, W Brunner. Am J Public Health 1994;84:434.

OBJECTIVES: In July 1988, a fire destroyed a huge supermarket warehouse in Richmond, Calif, sending smoke into residential neighborhoods for nearly a week. There was no organized public health response. To evaluate the respiratory health impact on the general population, a survey of emergency room visits and hospital admissions to the two acute-care hospitals serving the population downwind was conducted. METHODS: Medical records of 489 patients meeting specified diagnostic criteria during the week of the fire and several reference periods were abstracted. Ratios of proportions for respiratory diagnoses (ie, emergency room visits for a given diagnosis/total emergency room visits) were calculated comparing the fire week with the reference periods, and 1988 mortality data for the area were reviewed. RESULTS: Ratios of proportions for emergency room visits for asthma and all lower respiratory conditions increased significantly during the fire. Respiratory-related hospitalizations also increased. However, there was no observable increase in respiratory mortality. CONCLUSIONS: This fire was found to have had a moderate impact on the respiratory health of local residents. Public health intervention is indicated to prevent respiratory morbidity when extended exposure to structural fire smoke is predictable.

Smokeless Tobacco Use and Increased Cardiovascular Mortality among Swedish Construction Workers—G Bolinder, L Alfredsson, A Englund, U de Faire. Am J Public Health 1994;84:399.

OBJECTIVES: Little is known about the risks of cardiovascular disease associated with the use of smokeless tobacco, which produces blood nicotine levels similar to those caused by cigarette smoking. METHODS: Male Swedish construction industry employees (n = 135 036) who attended a health examination were followed by studying cause-specific mortality during a 12-year period. The study population comprised 6297 smokeless tobacco users, 14 983 smokers of fewer than 15 cigarettes per day, 13 518 smokers of 15 or more cigarettes per day, 17 437 ex-smokers, 50 255 "other" tobacco users, and 32 546 nonusers. RESULTS: The age-adjusted relative risk of dying from cardiovascular disease was 1.4 for smokeless tobacco users and 1.9 for smokers of 15 or more cigarettes per day, compared with nonusers. Among men aged 35 through 54 years at the start of follow-up, the relative risk was 2.1 for smokeless tobacco users and 3.2 for smokers. When data were adjusted for body mass index, blood pressure, and history of heart symptoms, the results were essentially unchanged. Cancer mortality was not raised in smokeless tobacco users. CONCLUSIONS: Both smokeless tobacco users and smokers face a higher risk of dying from cardiovascular disease than nonusers. Although the risk is lower for smokeless tobacco users than for smokers, the excess risk gives cause for preventive actions.

The Report of the Surgeon General: Preventing Tobacco Use among Young People—MJ Elders, CL Perry, MP Erikson, GA Giovino. Am J Public Health 1994;84:543.

This year's surgeon general's report on smoking and health is the first such report to focus on young people. From extensive data that indicate that tobacco use is a pediatric epidemic, the report reached six major conclusions: (1) Nearly all first use of tobacco occurs by age 18. (2) Most adolescent smokers are addicted to nicotine. (3) Tobacco is often the first drug used by young people who subsequently use illegal drugs. (4) There are identified psychosocial factors for the onset of tobacco use. (5) Cigarette advertising also appears to increase young people's risk of smoking. (6) Communitywide efforts have successfully reduced adolescent use of tobacco. This commentary restates each of the six conclusions, summarizes the data that support each, and then considers the implications of the conclusions for public health action.

Tobacco Use by Black and White Adolescents: The Validity of Self-Reports—KE Bauman, SE Ennett. Am J Public Health 1994;84:394.

OBJECTIVES: Previous studies concluded that Black adolescents use tobacco and other drugs less than White adolescents. The Black-White differences typically were attributed to variations in background and life-style. The objective of the research reported in this paper was to determine whether the presumed difference in tobacco use is due to Black-White differences in the validity of self-reports. METHODS: We used biochemical measures to compare the validity of self-reports of tobacco use by 1823 Black and White adolescents and to assess the contribution of variation in validity to Black-White differences in reported tobacco use. RESULTS: The sensitivity of Blacks' reports was significantly less than the sensitivity of Whites' reports. The specificity of Whites' reports was significantly less than the specificity of Blacks' reports. Much of the Black-White differences in reports of cigarette smoking and tobacco use were due to Black-White differences in validity. CONCLUSIONS: Studies of Black-White differences should adjust for the invalidity of reports or acknowledge that much of the difference may be due to measurement error.

Future AARC Annual Meetings

1995 - Orlando
1996 - San Diego
1997 - New Orleans

A breath of fresh air!

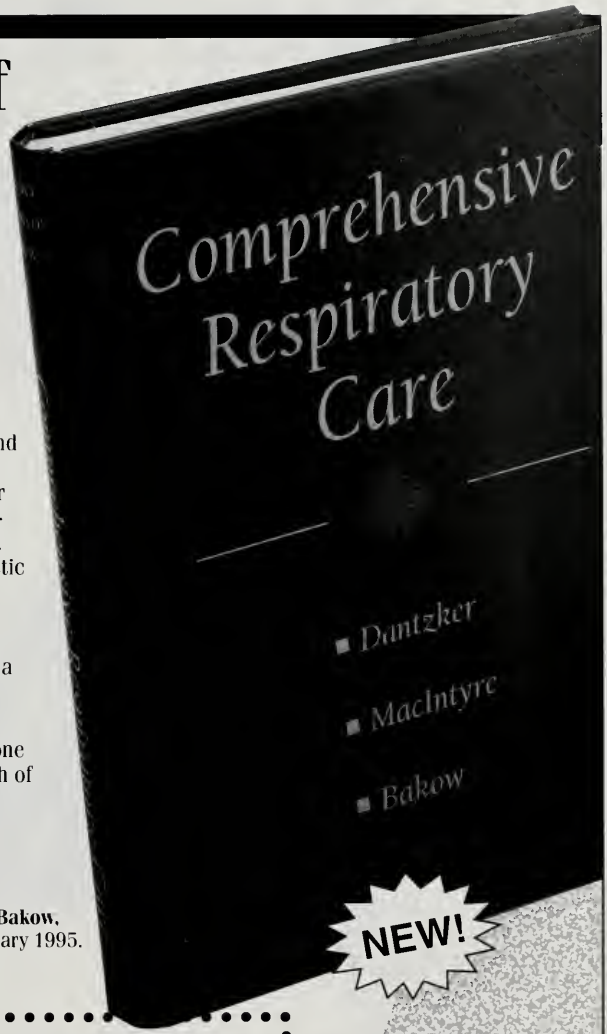
There has never been a book like **COMPREHENSIVE RESPIRATORY CARE.** It's the first to blend respiratory care with critical care...helping you to recognize and respond to life-threatening problems with greater confidence, speed, and success.

More than 70 experts — educators and RRTs, pulmonary specialists and critical care physicians — look at every issue that's important to your work. You'll strengthen your knowledge of cardiopulmonary science... catch up on the very latest diagnostic and therapeutic techniques...find clinical guidelines for managing *specific* critical care conditions... even discover winning ways to run a more efficient respiratory therapy department.

Sense and science combined into one essential resource — what a breath of fresh air!

Order today for a *FREE* 30-day review!

Edited by **David R. Dantzker, MD; Neil R. MacIntyre, MD;** and **Eric D. Bakow, MA, RRT;** with 74 contributors. February 1995. Over 1100 pp. Over 465 ills. $59.00. **Order #W2844-3.**



W2844-3 ☑ **YES!** Please send my copy of **Dantzker, MacIntyre & Bakow: COMPREHENSIVE RESPIRATORY CARE** at $59.00. If not completely satisfied, I may return the book with the invoice within 30 days with no further obligation.

☐ Do not send **Dantzker *et al.*;** send only title indicated.

Also send: ☐ W2859-1 **Dorland's ILLUSTRATED MEDICAL DICTIONARY, 28th Ed.** $39.95. NEW Ed.!

☐ Bill me later ☐ Check enclosed ☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard ☐ AmEx

card # __ __ __ __ / __ __ __ __ / __ __ __ __ / __ __ __ __ exp. date __ __ / __ __

Add the applicable sales tax for your area. Prepaid orders save shipping. Make checks payable to **W.B. SAUNDERS COMPANY. Staple this to your purchase order to expedite delivery.**

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Telephone (_____) _____

© W.B. SAUNDERS COMPANY 1994. *Professional references may be tax-deductible* Offer valid in USA only *Prices subject to change without notice*

W.B. SAUNDERS COMPANY
A Division of Harcourt Brace & Company, Order Fulfillment Department, 6277 Sea Harbor Drive, Orlando, FL 32887

RC 12/94 DM#29494

CALL TOLL-FREE 1-800-545-2522 8:30-7:00 Eastern Time to order! Be sure to mention DM#29494.

Or return this coupon to:
W.B. SAUNDERS COMPANY
Order Fulfillment Department
6277 Sea Harbor Drive
Orlando, FL 32887

Circle 107 on reader service card

Sleep Testing

Imagine the people you can reach, the needs you can fulfill.

CNS
The one company solution

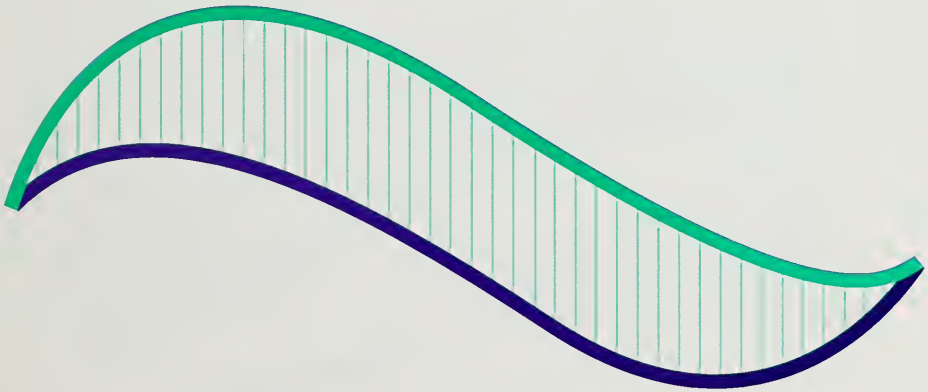
Sleep I/T™
Integrated Technology

PolyG™
Portable Apnea Recorder

CNS, Inc. 1250 Park Road, Chanhassen, MN 55317-9260. (800) 843-2978. In MN (612) 474-7600 In Europe: Erich Jaeger GmbH Germany, 0931/41902-0

Circle 112 on reader service card

A UNIQUE SOLUTION IN NEBULIZATION

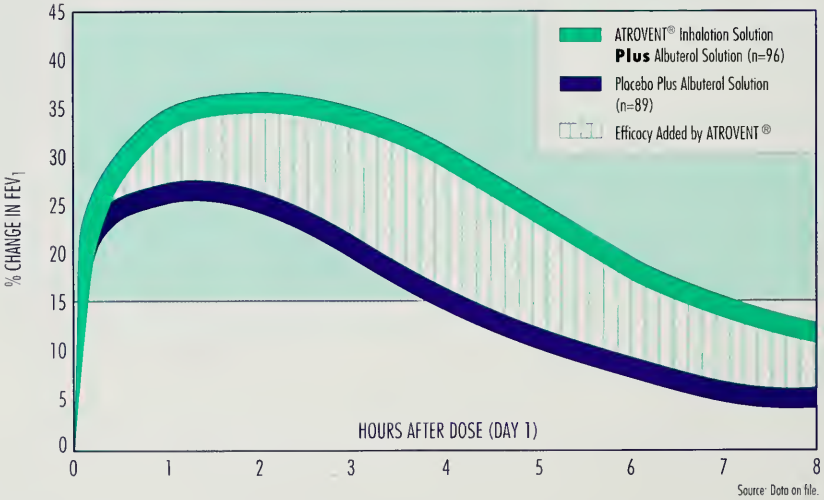


Working Together for Added FEV_1 in COPD

ATROVENT®
(ipratropium bromide) 500 mcg unit dose 0.02%
INHALATION SOLUTION

Significantly raises the efficacy curve

In combination with albuterol



Source: Data on file.

In patients with COPD, ATROVENT Inhalation Solution plus albuterol solution produced significantly greater improvement in FEV_1 than albuterol alone.[1*]

ATROVENT Inhalation Solution is a bronchodilator for the maintenance treatment of bronchospasm in COPD.

* Multicenter, randomized, double-blind, parallel trial conducted in 195 patients with COPD in whom pretreatment mean FEV_1 = 39% of predicted normal.

Please see brief summary of Prescribing Information on last page of this advertisement.

Circle 112 on reader service card

. . .without lowering the safety profile

The combination of ATROVENT Inhalation Solution and albuterol solution produced no clinically significant increase in side effects compared with albuterol alone.[2]

ATROVENT Inhalation Solution has a low incidence of systemic anticholinergic side effects.[3]

The use of ATROVENT Inhalation Solution as a single agent for the relief of bronchospasm in acute COPD exacerbation has not been adequately studied. Drugs with faster onset of action may be preferable as initial therapy in this situation.

Combination of ATROVENT and beta agonists has not been shown to be more effective than either drug alone in reversing the bronchospasm associated with acute COPD exacerbation.

ATROVENT should be used with caution in patients with narrow-angle glaucoma, prostatic hypertrophy or bladder-neck obstruction.

Please see Prescribing Information for all adverse events, regardless of drug relationship, reported in the 12-week controlled trials of ATROVENT Inhalation Solution.

ATROVENT®
(ipratropium bromide) 500 mcg unit dose 0.02%
INHALATION SOLUTION
Added efficacy without added side effects*

*When used in combination with a beta-agonist solution, ATROVENT does not significantly increase side effects associated with the beta agonist alone.

ATROVENT®
(ipratropium bromide) 500 mcg unit dose 0.02%
INHALATION SOLUTION

ADDED EFFICACY WITHOUT ADDED SIDE EFFECTS*

Atrovent®
(ipratropium bromide)
Inhalation Solution

Brief Summary of Prescribing Information

CONTRAINDICATIONS Atrovent® (ipratropium bromide) is contraindicated in known or suspected cases of hypersensitivity to ipratropium bromide, or to atropine and its derivatives.

WARNINGS The use of Atrovent® (ipratropium bromide) Inhalation Solution as a single agent for the relief of bronchospasm in acute COPD exacerbation has not been adequately studied. Drugs with faster onset of action may be preferable as initial therapy in this situation. Combination of Atrovent and beta agonists has not been shown to be more effective than either drug alone in reversing the bronchospasm associated with acute COPD exacerbation.

PRECAUTIONS General Atrovent® (ipratropium bromide) should be used with caution in patients with narrow angle glaucoma, prostatic hypertrophy or bladder-neck obstruction.

Information for Patients Patients should be advised that temporary blurring of vision, precipitation or worsening of narrow-angle glaucoma or eye pain may result if the solution comes into direct contact with the eyes. Use of a nebulizer with mouthpiece rather than face mask may be preferable, to reduce the likelihood of the nebulizer solution reaching the eyes. Patients should be advised that Atrovent Inhalation Solution can be mixed in the nebulizer with albuterol if used within one hour. Compatibility data are not currently available with other drugs. Patients should be reminded that Atrovent Inhalation Solution should be used consistently as prescribed throughout the course of therapy.

Drug Interactions Atrovent has been shown to be a safe and effective bronchodilator when used in conjunction with beta adrenergic bronchodilators. Atrovent has also been used with other pulmonary medications, including methylxanthines and corticosteroids, without adverse drug interactions.

Carcinogenesis, Mutagenesis, Impairment of Fertility Two-year oral carcinogenicity studies in rats and mice have revealed no carcinogenic potential at dietary doses up to 6 mg/kg/day of Atrovent. Results of various mutagenicity studies (Ames test, mouse dominant lethal test, mouse micronucleus test and chromosome aberration of bone marrow in Chinese hamsters) were negative. Fertility of male or female rats at oral doses up to 50 mg/kg/day was unaffected by Atrovent administration. At doses above 90 mg/kg, increased resorption and decreased conception rates were observed.

Pregnancy *TERATOGENIC EFFECTS. Pregnancy Category B.* Oral reproduction studies performed in mice, rats and rabbits at doses of 10, 100, and 125 mg/kg respectively, and inhalation reproduction studies in rats and rabbits at doses of 1.5 and 1.8 mg/kg (or approximately 38 and 45 times the recommended human daily dose) respectively, have demonstrated no evidence of teratogenic effects as a result of Atrovent. However, no adequate or well-controlled studies have been conducted in pregnant women. Because animal reproduction studies are not always predictive of human response, Atrovent should be used during pregnancy only if clearly needed.

Nursing Mothers It is not known whether Atrovent is excreted in human milk. Although lipid-insoluble quaternary bases pass into breast milk, it is unlikely that Atrovent® (ipratropium bromide) would reach the infant to a significant extent, especially when taken by inhalation, since Atrovent is not well absorbed systemically after inhalation or oral administration. However, because many drugs are excreted in human milk, caution should be exercised when Atrovent is administered to a nursing woman.

Pediatric Use Safety and effectiveness in children below the age of 12 have not been established.

ADVERSE REACTIONS Adverse reaction information concerning Atrovent® (ipratropium bromide) Inhalation Solution is derived from 12-week active-controlled clinical trials. Additional information is derived from foreign post-marketing experience and the published literature.

All adverse events, regardless of drug relationship, reported by three percent or more patients in the 12-week controlled clinical trials appear in the table below.

All Adverse Events, from Double-blind, Parallel, 12-week Studies of Patients with COPD*

	PERCENT OF PATIENTS				
	Atrovent® (500 mcg t.i.d) n=219	**Alupent®** (15 mg t.i.d) n=212	**Atrovent®/Alupent®** (500 mcg t.i.d/ 15 mg t.i.d) n=108	**Albuterol** (2.5 mg t.i.d) n=205	**Atrovent®/Albuterol** (500 mcg t.i.d/ 2.5 mg t.i.d) n=100
Body as a Whole-General Disorders					
Headache	6.4	5.2	6.5	6.3	9.0
Pain	4.1	3.3	0.9	2.9	5.0
Influenza-like symptoms	3.7	4.7	6.5	0.5	1.0
Back pain	3.2	1.9	1.9	2.4	0.0
Chest pain	3.2	4.2	5.6	2.0	1.0

All Adverse Events, from Double-blind, Parallel, 12-week Studies of Patients with COPD*

	PERCENT OF PATIENTS				
	Atrovent® (500 mcg t.i.d) n=219	**Alupent®** (15 mg t.i.d) n=212	**Atrovent®/Alupent®** (500 mcg t.i.d/ 15 mg t.i.d) n=108	**Albuterol** (2.5 mg t.i.d) n=205	**Atrovent®/Albuterol** (500 mcg t.i.d/ 2.5 mg t.i.d) n=100
Cardiovascular Disorders					
Hypertension/ Hypertension Aggravated	0.9	1.9	0.9	1.5	4.0
Central & Peripheral Nervous System					
Dizziness	2.3	3.3	1.9	3.9	4.0
Insomnia	0.9	0.5	4.6	1.0	1.0
Tremor	0.9	7.1	8.3	1.0	0.0
Nervousness	0.5	4.7	6.5	1.0	1.0
Gastrointestinal System Disorders					
Mouth Dryness	3.2	0.0	1.9	2.0	3.0
Nausea	4.1	3.8	1.9	2.9	2.0
Constipation	0.9	0.0	3.7	1.0	1.0
Musculo-skeletal System Disorders					
Arthritis	0.9	1.4	0.9	0.5	3.0
Respiratory System Disorders (Lower)					
Coughing	4.6	8.0	6.5	5.4	6.0
Dyspnea	9.6	13.2	16.7	12.7	9.0
Bronchitis	14.6	24.5	15.7	16.6	20.0
Bronchospasm	2.3	2.8	4.6	5.4	5.0
Sputum Increased	1.4	1.4	4.6	3.4	0.0
Respiratory Disorder	0.0	6.1	6.5	2.0	4.0
Respiratory System Disorders (Upper)					
Upper Respiratory Tract Infection	13.2	11.3	9.3	12.2	16.0
Pharyngitis	3.7	4.2	5.6	2.9	4.0
Rhinitis	2.3	4.2	1.9	2.4	0.0
Sinusitis	2.3	2.8	0.9	5.4	4.0

*All adverse events, regardless of drug relationship, reported by three percent or more patients in the 12-week controlled clinical trials.

Additional adverse reactions reported in less than three percent of the patients treated with Atrovent include tachycardia, palpitations, eye pain, urinary retention, urinary tract infection and urticaria. A single case of anaphylaxis thought to be possibly related to Atrovent has been reported. Cases of precipitation or worsening of narrow-angle glaucoma and acute eye pain have been reported.

Lower respiratory adverse reactions (bronchitis, dyspnea and bronchospasm) were the most common events leading to discontinuation of Atrovent therapy in the 12-week trials. Headache, mouth dryness and aggravation of COPD symptoms are more common when the total daily dose of Atrovent equals or exceeds 2,000 mcg.

HOW SUPPLIED Atrovent® (ipratropium bromide) Inhalation Solution Unit-Dose Vial is supplied as a 0.02% clear, colorless solution containing 2.5 ml with 25 vials per foil pouch (NDC 0597-0080-62). Each vial is made from a low density polyethylene (LDPE) resin.

Consult package insert before prescribing.

AS-BS-9/93

* When used in combination with a beta-agonist solution, ATROVENT does not significantly increase side effects associated with the beta agonist alone.

References: 1. Levin DC, Little KS, Laughlin KR, Galbraith JM. Ipratropium bromide solution in COPD augments extent and duration of FEV_1 increases achieved by albuterol up to 85 days. *Chest.* 1993;104(suppl to No. 2):112S. Abstract. **2.** Data on file, Boehringer Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc. **3.** ATROVENT® (ipratropium bromide) Inhalation Solution full Prescribing Information.

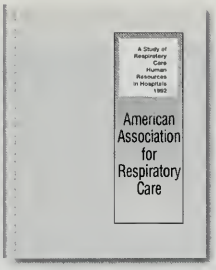
Boehringer Ingelheim
Boehringer Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc
Ridgefield, CT 06877

© 1993, Boehringer Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

AS-5381R

Circle 112 on reader service card.

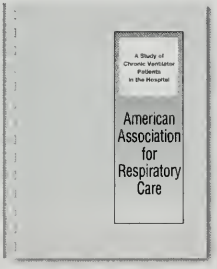
The AARC Human Resources Survey: A Study of Respiratory Care Human Resources in Hospitals



Covers a wide range of human resource issues, including compensation, numbers of full-time equivalents, job vacancy rates, education, credentialing, and licensure. Even includes information on age, sex, and years of experience. Includes comprehensive summary, position profiles, salaries, education, experience, credentials, and regional demographics. Vacancies are inventoried. 68 pages, 66 tables.

Item BK12 $35 ($50 nonmembers)

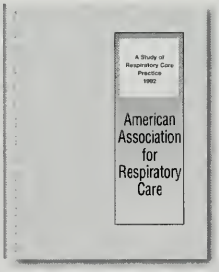
A Study of Chronic Ventilator Patients in the Hospital



Chronic ventilator-dependent patients are costing American hospitals more than $9 million per day according to this Gallup study conducted for the AARC. This important study provides information on patients who depend on life-support systems; why, how, and where they are being treated; and the cost of treatment. 47 pages, 9 tables, 12 figures.

Item BK20 $25 ($50 nonmembers)

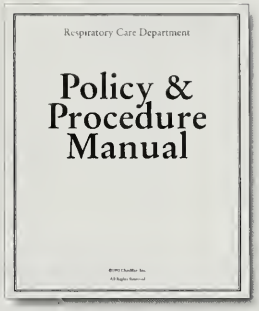
A Study of Respiratory Care Practice



This study examines the practice of respiratory care in today's health care environment and how hospital reorganization is affecting the profession. Includes chapters on medical direction, current respiratory care services, nontraditional services, respiratory care protocols, and hospital service reorganization. 38 pages, 34 tables, 15 charts.

Item BK17 $20 ($40 nonmembers)

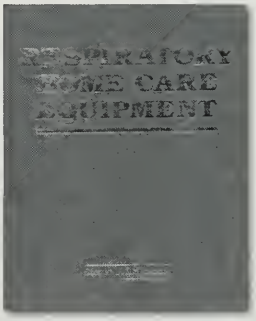
Policy and Procedure Manual



Save time and money by making your department more efficient with the *Policy and Procedure Manual*. Its 130 pages of policies and procedures cover the aspects of administrative and clinical respiratory care for both adult and pediatric practice. Sections on administrative policies, therapeutics, clinical monitoring, and mechanical ventilation. Standardized formats include objectives, indications, equipment, policies, contraindications, troubleshooting, procedures, hazards, and assessment of effectiveness.

Item BK6 $60 ($70 nonmembers)

Respiratory Home Care Equipment



Respiratory Home Care Equipment exclusively covers home care equipment with practical applications and charts on oxygen concentrators, liquid units, air compressors, and home care ventilators. An invaluable book for the home care practitioner and equipment technician. Details home care devices, cleaning, disinfecting, and monitoring procedures to minimize infection. Includes guides for educating staff on equipment, therapy, patient assessment, and safety. Features procedures for gas administration and monitoring devices, humidifiers and nebulizers, artificial airways and resuscitators, respirators, and ventilators. By Steven P. McPherson. Hardcover, 192 pages, 141 illustrations, 6 tables.

Item BK7 $9 ($12 nonmembers)

Orders with credit cards or P.O. numbers may call (214) 243-2272, or Fax to (214) 484-2720.
If ordering by mail, send coupon to:
AARC Order Department, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas, Texas 75229-4593.

Allow two days for order processing for regular and express shipping. Addresses outside the continental U.S. require an additional $5 for orders up to $100, add $10 for orders over $100

Order Total	UPS Reg.	UPS 2nd Day	UPS Next Day
$15 or less	3.25	6.00	14.00
$16 to $30	3.75	8.00	18.00
$31 to $50	4.50	11.00	24.00
$51 to $75	5.50	13.00	31.00
$76 to $100	7.00	16.00	38.00
$101 to $125	8.00	19.00	50.00
$126 to $150	10.00	22.00	60.00
$151 or more	12.00	27.00	75.00

☐ **Please send me the items I have indicated below.**

Item	Description	Quantity	Price Each	Total Price

Ship via UPS ☐ Regular ☐ 2nd Day ☐ Next Day
Please use the chart to the left to calculate shipping.

Shipping _____
Merchandise $ _____
TOTAL _____

☐ Check or Money Order enclosed payable to the AARC
☐ Bill me, my P.O. No. is _____
☐ Charge to my ☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard
Card # _____ Exp. Date _____ Signature X _____
AARC Member # _____ Name _____
Institution _____
Address _____ City/State/Zip _____

Texas customers only, please add 8¼% sales tax (including shipping charges). Texas customers that are exempt from sales tax must attach an exemption certificate

Circle 98 on reader service card

CPGs 1994: Where Are We? Where Have We Been? Where Are We Going?

After more than 4 years of concerted effort by Focus Groups, the Steering Committee, outside resource persons, and reviewers, it's time for an update on AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines (CPG) activity. Indeed, where are we? Where have we been? Where are we going?

Where Are We?

With the four Guidelines published in this issue of the Journal—addressing transcutaneous monitoring,[1] capillary blood gas sampling,[2] body plethysmography,[3] and indirect calorimetry[4]—the total number of approved and published Guidelines reaches 33.[5-9]

Those Guidelines have helped establish therapist-driven protocols, found their way into policy and procedure manuals, provided indicators for quality improvement (CQI), supported the expanded role of the respiratory care practitioner, and caught the attention of the respiratory care community worldwide (Fig. 1).

The Association has distributed more than 15,000 reprints of the Guidelines (in addition to their publication in the Journal) and has further fostered dissemination by permitting and encouraging photocopying for purposes of training and utilization.

With many basic procedures addressed and some remaining to be completed, the Guideline emphasis is changing, some of the players have retired, and we will be moving farther afield, but the philosophy, intent, and format stand polished and, perhaps while not 'perfected,' certainly enduring and true to the Association's original purpose.[10]

Where Have We Been?

The Guideline effort—after months, perhaps years, of thought and planning—was launched in 1990 by then AARC president Jerome Sullivan. The Steering Committee was selected[10] and Dean Hess was chosen to head up the undertaking. Dean devised and proposed the basic framework for the Guidelines.[10] The operational mode was established—an exhaustive search, recovery, and analysis of the literature would provide the launch pad for each Guideline, input from clinicians and content specialists would set the course, and outside review would assure that the Guideline was on target. Focus Groups were appointed and charged. The Review Panel of 650 reviewers was assembled. The first year was one of intense effort, with some stops and starts and faltering—the necessary 'shakedown cruise' for each of the Focus Groups—but that effort paid off with the publication of the first Guidelines in December 1991.[5] Each year has seen continued intense effort and the publication of additional Guidelines.

Where Are We Going?

July 1995 will see the publication of Guidelines addressing emergency airway management, respiratory muscle training and breathing exercises, exercise testing with expired gas analysis, sleep apnea, infant-toddler pulmonary functions testing, delivery of aerosol to the lung parenchyma, assessment of bronchodilator response, patient-therapist education, neonatal transport, and delivery room resuscitation.

Guidelines under development for later publication include mechanical ventilation in the home, pressure-limited ventilation, high frequency oscillatory ventilation for the neonate and infant, intubation/extubation, and patient assessment prior to and during weaning.

Each Focus Group member maintains an ongoing awareness of the need for revision of specific Guidelines—collecting pertinent papers and pertinent comments and observations from clinicians.

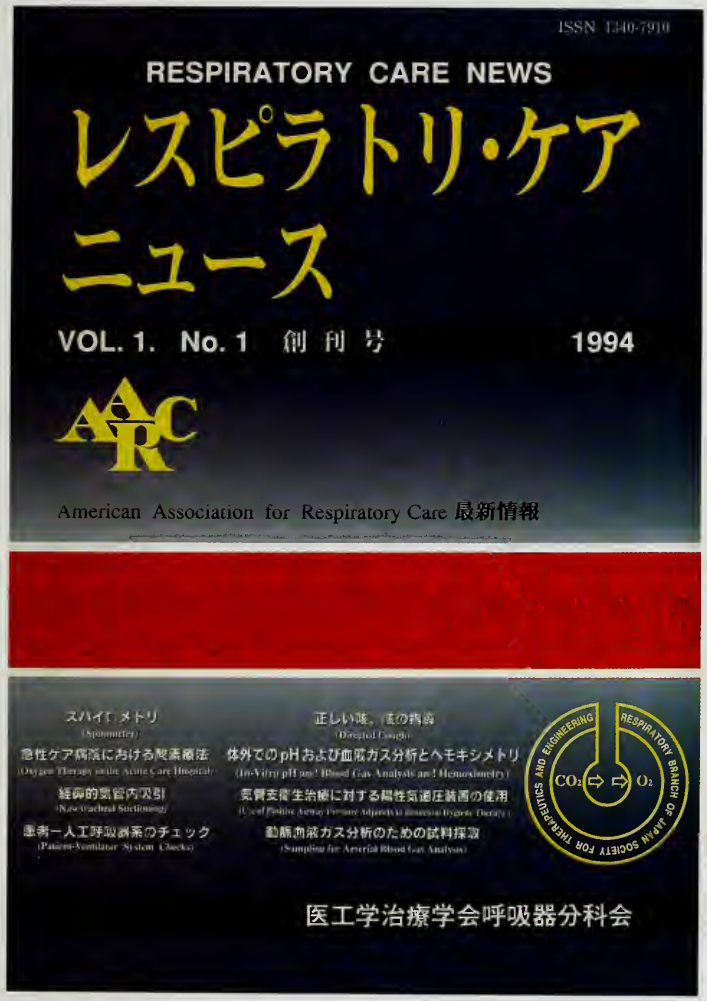


Fig. 1 AARC Clinical Practice Guidelines are being adopted abroad as well as in the U.S. The Japanese publication *Respiratory Care News* is shown.

Where does the 'average' clinician-therapist-practitioner-educator fit into the CPG effort? The CPG Steering Committee needs (1) your formal critique (via your participation on the Review Panel—just send your name and address to Joy Rea, 11030 Ables Ln, Dallas TX 75229), (2) your informal critique (positive or negative, by phone, fax, letter, or face-to-face), (3) your suggestions for future Guidelines, and (4) your account of how you and your department or program use the Guidelines.

The AARC remains committed to the task and the concept as do the Steering Committee, Focus Group members, and reviewers. Put CPG involvement at some level on your "To-Do" list for 1995!

Pat Brougher BA RRT
Editor
RESPIRATORY CARE
Project Manager
Clinical Practice Guidelines Committee
Dallas, Texas

REFERENCES

1. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guideline: transcutaneous blood gas monitor for neonatal and pediatric patients. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1170-1175.
2. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guideline: capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal and pediatric patients. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1180-1183.
3. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guideline: body plethysmography. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1184-1190.
4. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guideline: metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1170-1175.
5. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guidelines: incentive spirometry, pulse oximetry, oxygen therapy in the acute care hospital, spirometry, and postural drainage therapy. Respir Care 1991;36(12):1402-1426.
6. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guidelines: patient-ventilator system checks, humidification during mechanical ventilation, selection of aerosol delivery device to the lower airways, nasotracheal suctioning, bronchial provocation, exercise testing for evaluation of hypoxemia and/or desaturation, sampling for arterial blood gas analysis, and oxygen therapy in the home or extended care facility. Respir Care 1992;37(8):882-922.
7. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guidelines: directed cough, in-vitro pH and blood gas analysis and hemoximetry, single-breath carbon monoxide diffusing capacity, and use of positive airway pressure adjuncts to bronchial hygiene therapy. Respir Care 1993;38(5):494-521.
8. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guidelines: transport of the mechanically ventilated patient, fiberoptic bronchoscopy assisting, resuscitation in acute care hospitals, intermittent positive pressure breathing, and bland aerosol administration. Respir Care 1993;38(11):1169-1200.
9. American Association for Respiratory Care. Clinical practice guidelines: ventilator circuit changes, static lung volumes, delivery of aerosols to the upper airway, neonatal assisted ventilation, application of CPAP to neonates via nasal prongs or NP tubes, and surfactant therapy. Respir Care 1994;39(8):797-836.
10. Hess D. The Clinical Practice Guidelines. Respir Care 1991;36 (12):1398-1401.

Guideline for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia and Ventilator Circuits: Time for Change?

In this issue of RESPIRATORY CARE, the new CDC *Guideline for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia* is published.[1] It is long overdue, with the previous guideline published in 1983.[2] Physicians, respiratory care practitioners, and nurses responsible for the respiratory care of patients should find this guideline useful. In addition to the Guideline, a current review of the literature (over 700 references) related to issues on prevention of nosocomial pneumonia is provided.

Many respiratory care practitioners have anxiously awaited this Guideline for more contemporary recommendations regarding ventilator-circuit change frequency. Previous guidelines suggested daily ventilator-circuit changes. However, studies published since those guidelines resulted in the common practice of changing circuits every 48 hours.[3,4] More recently, evidence has emerged suggesting that ventilator circuits may not need to be changed at all.[5] The issue of ventilator-circuit-change frequency is currently a hot topic—there were six OPEN FORUM abstracts presented at this year's AARC meeting on this subject.[6-11]

I suspect that many respiratory care practitioners will be disappointed with the new CDC recommendations for ventilator-circuit-change frequency:

> Do not routinely change more frequently than every 48 hours the breathing circuit, including tubing and exhalation valve, and the attached bubbling or wick humidifier of a ventilator that is in use on an individual patient. No recommendation for maximum length of time after which the breathing circuit and the attached bubbling or wick humidifier of a ventilator in use on a patient should be changed.[1]

What does this mean? Why didn't the CDC take a stronger stand on this issue? How does this help me convince my Infection Control Department to allow circuits to be changed once per week?

In reality, there is not strong evidence in the literature for infrequent ventilator-circuit changes (eg, change intervals longer than 48 hours). There are too few good studies in the peer-reviewed literature to make a stronger recommendation on this issue. The Guideline is worded in a manner that allows less frequent circuit changes but places the responsibility on the hospital to determine the specific ventilator-circuit-change frequency beyond 48 hours.

I personally believe that strong circumstantial evidence supports weekly circuit changes (and perhaps even less frequent than that). I also believe that respiratory care practitioners can work with infection control practitioners to design infection control surveillance programs that provide institution-specific data to support less frequent circuit changes. We did that at the Massachusetts General Hospital—and it resulted in our weekly circuit-change policy.

Why Infrequent Circuit Changes?

Changing ventilator circuits is not a benign procedure. Circuits are changed on ventilators attached to the most critically ill patients in the hospital. The incidence of serious incidents occurring during ventilator-circuit changes is unknown and is probably under-reported. I am certain that circuits are changed on ventilators attached to patients for whom the risk of injury related to the circuit change is greater than the risk of pneumonia if the circuit were not changed. I am sure that many respiratory care practitioners (myself included) have made the clandestine decision not to change a ventilator circuit for a critically ill patient due to fear of an adverse event during the circuit change.

Frequent changing of ventilator circuits is expensive, both in terms of materials and personnel time. At the Massachusetts General Hospital, we realized a materials cost reduction of nearly $40,000 per year with weekly ventilator circuit changes (as compared to 48-hour circuit changes). Further, about 1,330 hours of personnel time (> 0.5 full-time-equivalent) were saved. These savings become increasingly important in the current era of personnel downsizing and shrinking budgets. It is critical for us, as respiratory care practioners, to identify areas where savings can be realized—allowing us to concentrate time and resources on other important areas. For example, I would much rather see the respiratory therapist have time to interact with physicians about a patient's ventilator management than to spend that time performing an unnecessary task.

In the acute care setting, most of the cost savings are realized by extending the ventilator-circuit-change frequen-

cy to every 7 days. At the Massachusetts General Hospital, more than 80% of patients are ventilated for less than 1 week. Thus, fewer than 20% of ventilated patients ever have their circuits changed.

What is the Evidence?

The two most important routes of bacterial invasion of the lower respiratory tract are aspiration of oropharyngeal secretions and inhalation of aerosols containing bacteria.[1] Current evidence strongly supports aspiration as the most important cause of nosocomial pneumonia. It is now recognized that cuffed endotracheal tubes do not prevent aspiration of oropharyngeal secretions. From my review of the literature on this subject,[12] I have become strongly convinced that nosocomial pneumonia in intubated mechanically ventilated patients is more likely to result from what is aspirated around the endotracheal tube than from what is breathed through the endotracheal tube. If this hypothesis is correct, then the frequency of ventilator circuit changes should have little impact on ventilator-associated pneumonia rates, provided that reasonable infection control practices are followed. As stated by Reinarz et al in 1965, "respirators without mainstream reservoir nebulizers impose no greater risk to a patient than that imposed by breathing room air."[13]

Lareau et al[14] compared ventilator-associated pneumonia rates with circuit-change intervals of 8, 16, and 24 hours. They found no difference in pneumonia rates at these three intervals. Although they did not study circuit changes greater than 24 hours, their study was important because it suggested that frequent circuit changes do not decrease the risk of ventilator-associated pneumonia.

Craven et al,[3] in a frequently cited paper, compared the incidence of ventilator-circuit contamination in 44 patients for whom circuits were changed every 24 hours and in 51 patients for whom circuits were changed every 48 hours. There are several important findings of this study. First, no significant difference in circuit colonization was seen between the two groups. Second, contaminants in the circuits originated from respiratory tracts of the patients—in other words, the patient contaminated the circuit, and not vice versa! Third, water in virtually all Cascade-type humidifiers remained sterile, in spite of heavy contamination of the circuit near the patient. Based upon the results of this study, it became common practice to change ventilator circuits every 48 hours, as opposed to every 24 hours. However, it is important to recognize that this study did not evaluate pneumonia rates. It only measured circuit colonization.

Craven et al[15] may have been the first to evaluate risk factors for nosocomial pneumonia using multivariate statistical techniques. Among those factors found to be significantly associated with the development of ventilator-associated pneumonia, the odds ratio was 2.3 if circuits were changed at 24-hour intervals rather than 48-hour intervals. In other words, the risk of ventilator-associated pneumonia was actually greater if circuits were changed more frequently!

Perhaps the most scientifically rigorous study to evaluate the effects of circuit-change frequency on ventilator-associated pneumonia rates was conducted by Dreyfuss et al.[5] They compared 48-hour circuit changes with no circuit changes. This was a 1-year study in which 35 patients were randomized to have their circuits changed every 48 hours, and 28 patients were randomized to never have their circuits changed. Pneumonia was precisely diagnosed using invasive procedures. Between groups, there was a similar pneumonia rate (31.4% in the circuit-change group, 28.5% in the no-circuit-change group, $p = 0.8$), duration of mechanical ventilation (5-25 days with circuit changes, 5-14 days with no circuit changes, $p = 0.7$), and mortality (8.6% with circuit changes, 7.1% with no circuit changes, $p = 0.8$). Bacterial colonization of the circuit usually followed colonization of the pharynx and trachea, and colonization of water in the humidifier was rare (heated Cascade-type humidifiers were used).

Several studies conducted at the Massachusetts General Hospital evaluated circuit contamination and circuit-change frequency in neonates.[16,17] Based upon the results of these studies, we adopted the practice of changing circuits only between patients (circuits are not routinely changed on mechanically ventilated patients in our neonatal ICU). More recently, we compared ventilator-associated pneumonia rates for adult patients in whom circuits were either changed at 48-hour or 7-day intervals.[6,12] In this study including over 3,000 patients and more than 18,000 ventilator days, no significant difference was seen in ventilator-associated pneumonia rates (the pneumonia rate was actually a bit lower with 7-day circuit changes). Based upon these results, we adopted the practice of weekly circuit changes in adult mechanically ventilated patients at the Massachusetts General Hospital.

Unresolved Issues

There are a number of unresolved issues related to ventilator-circuit-change interval, and I briefly summarize each of these.

Cascade-Type vs Wick Humidifiers

Cascade-type humidifiers bubble gas through water, and the bursting bubble effect of these humidifiers can produce microaerosols. Wick humidifiers, on the other hand, humidify gas by passing it over a water-saturated wick. Rhame et al,[18] in an in-vitro study, showed that

Cascade-type humidifiers produce microaerosols that can carry bacteria. However, the study had two major flaws. None of the humidifiers was heated, and tubing from the humidifier was only 20 cm in length—unlikely conditions during mechanical ventilation of adults. Goularte et al[19] found that the high temperature in the reservoir of Cascade-type humidifiers is bactericidal for nosocomial pathogens. Because colonization of in-use Cascade-type humidifiers is low, microaerosols produced by Cascade-type humidifiers are unlikely sources of ventilator-associated pneumonia.

Several studies have suggested that ventilator-circuit-change intervals can be extended, even with the use of Cascade-type humidifiers.[5,12] I do not believe that there is sufficient evidence to suggest that wick humidifiers are superior to Cascade-type humidifiers relative to the risk for ventilator-associated pneumonia.

Heated vs Unheated Circuits

Heated circuits are used to minimize condensation in ventilator circuits. However, circuit contamination almost always arises from the patient.[3,20] Thus, it might be argued that protecting the patient from ventilator condensate does nothing more than protect the patient from himself. Certainly it is reasonable (and appropriate) to use in-line water traps to aseptically evacuate circuit condensate at regular intervals and to avoid bolus lavage of the patient with circuit condensate. Circuit condensate may contaminate the caregiver and other patients in the same unit, and dealing with circuit condensate can be an inconvenience. However, it is not clear that circuit condensate increases the risk for ventilator-associated pneumonia—particularly if care is taken to remove it periodically.

To my knowledge, no scientific evidence confirms that heated circuits reduce the incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia. Heated circuits may be convenient for caregivers but may put patients at risk for airway occlusion due to inadequate humidification.[21,22] If heated circuits are used, care must be taken to assure that the patient's inspired gases are adequately humidified. When heated circuits are used the temperature of the humidifier reservoir does not need to be as great, and one might speculate that this could result in growth of pathogens within the humidifier reservoir. It is not known whether this occurs or whether there are any clinical consequences if it does occur.

Open vs Closed-Feed Systems

It is reasonable to expect that a closed-feed humidification system should decrease the contamination of the humidifier reservoir. However, as I stated previously, the temperature within the humidifier reservoir may be bactericidal for respiratory pathogens. Daschner et al[23] found that the use of a closed-feed humidification system did not affect the ventilator-associated pneumonia rate.

Artificial Nose vs Active Humidification

Because artificial noses trap the patient's exhaled humidity, the ventilator circuit remains dry. Some artificial noses also serve as filters. Thus, artificial noses should decrease circuit contamination. However, circuit contamination usually comes from the patient. Is our goal to protect the circuit from the patient? It is unclear whether the use of artificial noses reduces the risk of ventilator-associated pneumonia. To my knowledge no prospective randomized trial of heated humidifiers vs artificial noses of sufficient sample size (ie, adequate statistical power) has answered this question. Although concern remains about the effectiveness of these devices as humidifiers, artificial noses probably can be used safely with proper patient selection.[24]

In-Line Nebulizers

Craven et al[25] have shown that medication nebulizers used in-line during mechanical ventilation are frequently contaminated. Because these produce aerosols that can be delivered into the lower respiratory tract, they are a potential cause of ventilator-associated pneumonia The metered-dose inhaler can be used to deliver aerosolized medications into the ventilator circuit without opening the system. I have suggested that use of metered-dose inhalers has a lower risk for ventilator-associated pneumonia than nebulizers,[26] but this has not been scientifically investigated.

Bag-Valve Resuscitators

Several studies[27,28] have shown that bag-valve resuscitators at the bedside of mechanically ventilated patients are frequently contaminated. These devices should be changed at regular intervals, but the appropriate interval is not known. Although its effectiveness is unproven, our practice is to cap the patient connection of the resuscitator when it is not in use; the same cap is placed on the ventilator Y-piece when the ventilator is removed from the patient.

Open vs Closed Suction

Whether closed suction systems lower the incidence of nosocomial pneumonia is currently unclear. Deppe et al[29] found that the incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia was similar in groups of patients randomized to open suction (29%) or closed suction (26%). It may be reason-

able to use these devices in patients who already have a pneumonia to prevent spraying of ventilator circuit condensate and tracheal secretions into the environment of the ICU during suctioning.

Acute Care vs Long-Term Care Settings

Most studies of ventilator-associated pneumonia have been conducted in the acute care setting and, usually, in a critical care setting. We need to learn more about the risk factors for pneumonia in patients ventilated outside the ICU. We also need studies to determine how frequently ventilator circuits should be changed in such settings.

Diagnosis of Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia

The diagnosis of pneumonia in ventilated patients is difficult. Traditionally, the diagnosis has been based on clinical indicators such as new or persistent infiltrate and purulent sputum.[30] Recently, invasive bronchoscopic quantitative methods (eg, protected specimen brush and bronochoalveolar lavage) have been used to more precisely diagnose pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients. However, these methods are not without disadvantages—they are invasive, expensive, and may be less useful in patients already treated with antibiotics. Several recent papers have urged caution in the use and interpretation of these new diagnostic approaches.[31,32] Further, methods such as quantitative cultures are not available in all hospitals.

I doubt that anyone would suggest the use of invasive techniques for routine infection surveillance. This creates a dilemma for respiratory care practitioners and infection control practitioners conducting hospital epidemiologic studies of ventilator-associated pneumonia. Methods necessary to increase the accuracy of diagnosing ventilator-associated pneumonia cannot be routinely used because they are invasive and expensive, but the results of epidemiologic studies based on clinical criteria will be questioned because of potential inaccuracy of the diagnosis. For infection control purposes, ventilator-associated pneumonia will most frequently be identified based upon clinical criteria. The clinical criteria used should be consistent with the recommendations of the CDC,[30] and a uniform approach should be used by trained clinicians. Almost all past studies of the epidemiology of ventilator-associated pneumonia have been based upon clinical criteria.

Recommendations

Ventilator-associated pneumonia may not be ventilator related. I personally believe that ventilator circuits can be changed at weekly intervals (and perhaps less frequently). I am not particularly bothered that the new CDC Guideline does not say this. I am encouraged that the Guideline allows ventilator-circuit-change intervals greater than 48 hours. I challenge respiratory care practitioners to work together with infection control practitioners to resolve the issues related to ventilator-circuit-change frequency. Having done that, I further challenge all of us to conduct these quality assurance projects in a scientifically rigorous manner, so that the results can be published in the peer-reviewed literature.

Dean Hess PhD RRT
Instructor in Anesthesia
Harvard Medical School

Assistant Director
Respiratory Care
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

The author has no financial interest in any of the products mentioned or in competing products.

Reprints: Dean Hess PhD RRT, Ellison 4, Massachusetts General Hospital, 32 Fruit St, Boston MA 02114.

REFERENCES

1. Tablan OC, Anderson LJ, Arden NH, Breiman RF, Butler JC, McNeil MM, the Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Respir Care 1994;39(12): 1191-1236.
2. Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Respir Care 1983;28:221-232.
3. Craven DE, Connolly MG, Lichtenberg DA, Primeau PJ, McCabe WR. Contamination of mechanical ventilators with tubing changes every 24 or 48 hours. N Engl J Med 1982;306:1505-1509.
4. Boyce JM, White RL, Spruill EY, Wall M. Cost-effective application of the Centers for Disease Control guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Am J Infect Control 1985;13:228-232.
5. Dreyfuss D, Djedanini K, Weber P, Brun P, Lanore J, Rahmani J, et al. Prospective study of nosocomial pneumonia and of patient and circuit colonization during mechanical ventilation with circuit changes every 48 hours versus no change. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:738-743.
6. Hess D, Burns E, Romagnoli D, Kacmarek RM. The effect of weekly circuit changes on ventilator-associated pneumonia rate (abstract). Respir Care 1994;39(11):1107.
7. Alfredson T, Earl A, Larson R, Cronin J, Hauptman D, Fahey PJ, O'Keefe P. Effect of extending ventilator circuit changes from 2-3 to every 7 days (abstract). Respir Care 1994;39(11):1108.
8. Krause S, Fisher M, Fink J. Reduction of ventilator-associated pneumonias with seven day circuit changes (abstract). Respir Care 1994;39(11):1108.
9. Orens D, Stoller JK. The impact of changing ventilator circuits at 72 hours versus 7 days on ventilator-associated pneumonia (abstract). Respir Care 1994;39(11):1108.

ry tract infection rates in the NICU and PICU (abstract). Respir Care 1994;39(11):1109.
11. Tyra JA, Norwood JA. A two year experience with ten day ventilator circuit change outs (abstract). Respir Care 1994;39(11):1107.
12. Hess D. The effect of ventilator circuit change frequency on ventilator-associated pneumonia rates in a large university hospital. Doctoral Dissertation. Mandeville LA: LaSalle University, 1994.
13. Reinarz JA, Pierce AK, Mays BB, Sanford JP. The potential role of inhalation therapy equipment in nosocomial pulmonary infection. J Clin Invest 1965;44:831-839.
14. Lareau SC, Ryan KJ, Diener CF. The relationship between frequency of ventilator circuit changes and infectious hazard. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;118:493-496.
15. Craven DE, Kunches LM, Kilinsky V, Lichtenberg DA, Make BJ, McCabe WR. Risk factors for pneumonia and fatality in patients receiving continuous mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:792-796.
16. English PA, Kacmarek RM, Vallende N, Hopkins CC. Contamination of heated neonatal ventilator circuits (abstract). Respir Care 1990;35:1089.
17. Kacmarek RM, English P, Vallende N, Hopkins CC. Extended use of heated neonatal/pediatric ventilator circuits (abstract). Respir Care 1991;36:1287.
18. Rhame FS, Streifel A, McComb C, Boyle M. Bubbling humidifiers produce microaerosols which can carry bacteria. Infect Control 1986;7:403-407.
19. Goularte RA, Maning MT, Craven DE. Bacterial colonization in humidifying cascade humidifiers after 24 and 48 hours of continuous mechanical ventilation. Infect Control 1987;8:200-203.
20. Craven DE, Goularte TA, Make BJ. Contaminated condensate in mechanical ventilator circuits. A risk factor for nosocomial pneumonia? Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;129:625-628.
21. Gilmour IJ, Boyle MJ, Rozenber A, Palahniuk RJ. The effect of heated circuits on humidification of inspired gases. Anesth Analg 1994;79:160-164.
22. Miyao H, Hirokawa T, Miyasaka K, Kawazoe T. Relative humidity, not absolute humidity, is of great importance when using a humidifier with a heating wire. Crit Care Med 1992;20:674-679.
23. Daschner F, Kappstein I, Schuster F. Influence of disposable ('Conchapak') and reusable humidifying systems on the incidence of ventilation pneumonia. J Hosp Infect 1988;11:161-168.
24. Branson RD, Campbell RS, Davis K, Johnson DJ, Porembka D. Humidification in the intensive care unit. Chest 1993;104:1800-1805.
25. Craven DE, Lichtenberg DA, Goularte TA, Make BJ, McCabe WR. Contaminated medication nebulizers in mechanical ventilator circuits. Am J Med 1984;77:834-838.
26. Hess D. How should bronchodilators be administered to patients on ventilators? Respir Care 1991;36:377-394.
27. Weber DJ, Wilson B, Rutala WA, Thomann CA. Manual ventilation bags as a source for bacterial colonization of intubated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142:892-894.
28. Thomson AC, Wilder BJ, Powner DJ. Bedside resuscitation bag: a source of bacterial contamination. Infect Control 1985;6:231-232.
29. Deppe SA, Kelly W, Thoi LL, Chudy JH Longfield RN, Ducey JP, et al. Incidence of colonization, nosocomial pneumonia, and mortality in critically ill patients using a Trach Care™ closed-suction system versus an open-system: prospective, randomized study. Crit Care Med 1990;18:1389-1393.
30. Garner, JS, Jarvis WR, Emori TG, Horan TC, Hughes JM. CDC definitions for nosocomial infections. J Infect Control 1988;16:128-140.
31. Bonten MJM, Gaillard CA, Wouters EFM, van Tiel FH, Stobberingh EE, van der Geest S. Problems in diagnosing nosocomial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1994;22:1683-1691.
32. Niederman MS, Torres A, Summer W. Invasive diagnostic testing is not needed routinely to manage suspected ventilator-associated pneumonia. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;150:565-569.

TB Control Guidelines Deserve Our Attention, Too

The CDC *Guidelines for Preventing the Transmission of Mycobacterium Tuberculosis in Health-Care Facilities, 1994*[1] became effective on October 28, 1994. These Guidelines have been under development for more than a year, and, in November 1993, the AARC guided by then President Diane Lewis and Cheryl Brown, Director of Government Affairs for the AARC, submitted comments, some of which have been incorporated into this final version. AARC concerns centered around the use of protective devices in the hospital and in the home, and the need for specific precautions during bronchoscopy and pentamidine aerosol administration.

The document is being printed in its entirety in the *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR) Recommendations and Reports*. Instruction for retrieval from the *Federal Register* are as follows: "For copies of the MMWR printing, call CDC's Voice Information System (VIS) at (404) 639-1819 or write the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Information Services, Mailstop E-06, Atlanta GA 30333. An electronic version of the document [is] available via Anonymous FTP from ftp.cdc.gov. Type 'Anonymous' for the user name and your e-mail address for the password. Select the pub directory, then the tbdoc subdirectory. Retrieve the README file for instructions on document viewing and printing."

Managers, administrators, department directors, medical directors, and educators and trainers need to be conversant with the content of these Guidelines and their implications for patient and caregiver protection and respiratory care procedures. Copies of this document and the *Guideline for the Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia*[2] (published in this issue of the Journal) belong in every respiratory care department!

Pat Brougher BA RRT
Editor
RESPIRATORY CARE
Dallas, Texas

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* in health-care facilities, 1994. Federal Register, October 28, 1994;59(206):54242-544303.
2. Tablan OC, Anderson LJ, Arden NH, Breiman RF, Butler JC, McNeil MM, the Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1191-1236.

Aerosol Research: How Should We Skin This Cat?

Aerosol therapy continues to play an important role in contemporary medicine and in respiratory care in particular. The number of drugs, other than bronchodilators, that have been studied or proposed for topical delivery to the lungs or upper airways by the aerosol route have increased appreciably over the past few years. Certainly, corticosteroids and antimicrobials, such as pentamidine[1] and ribavirin,[2] immediately come to mind. But other agents, such as aminoglycosides,[3] antiproteases,[4] surfactant,[5] antioxidants,[6] and cyclosporine[7] are receiving their share of attention. At first blush, the recent introduction of an aerosol formulation of genetically-engineered recombinant human deoxyribonuclease (rhDNase) for mucolysis in cystic fibrosis (CF) patients[8] might seem to be the apotheosis of aerosol therapy. But my guess is that the penultimate accolades will be reserved for a simple and reliable aerosol method of delivering copies of normal CF genes to the airway epithelium of ambulatory CF patients. But this will require more than just development of a suitable pharmacologic preparation!

Although aerosol therapy is at least 50 years old, the importance of the delivery system is only now being appreciated. The relative ease with which aerosolized beta agonists are administered and the usually predictable therapeutic response that ensues readily lead to the assumption that aerosol therapy is facile. Yet, it is now well known that the choice of delivery system has a profound effect on the efficiency of drug delivery by the aerosol route. Note that I stress the delivery *system* rather than the small volume nebulizer (SVN) or metered dose inhaler (MDI) itself. A system is composed of interrelated parts, each of which contributes to the uniqueness and function of the whole. Rather than the singular devices as they were originally conceived, the SVN and the MDI are now evolving as components of larger systems.

This assertion is supported by a number of examples. At least two different brands of SVN have been intentionally augmented by directional valves and additional tubing for the express purpose of baffling large particles and creating an aerosol of uniformly smaller particles.[9] This collection of tubing, valves, and nebulizer, used specifically to deliver pentamidine aerosol to the alveolar level, is distinctly a system. The classic MDI, virtually unchanged since its introduction in 1956, has been improved in the last decade by the addition of a reservoir, often known as a spacer. These parts, joined and working in concert with one another, are a system. The addition of an integral pediatric mask to one end of the spacer represents further evolution of that particular system.

Building upon the system concept and apparently borrowing ideas from both of these examples, an SVN utilizing principles of directional flow, baffling, adjustable inspiratory resistance, and a spacer has now been introduced. This device has already undergone limited clinical testing as reported by Mason et al[10] in this issue of RESPIRATORY CARE.

The evolution and increasing complexity of aerosol delivery systems leads to still another issue. Namely, how are these hybrid systems going to be tested, characterized, and reported? Traditional pharmaceutical research has stressed the dose-response or pharmacokinetic approach to evaluating drug therapy. However, this is only a partial approach for evaluating aerosol drug therapy because of the vast number of variables, including variations in delivery systems. Thus, the aerosol test bench should be the first stop in any study that seeks to evaluate the efficiency of a new aerosol delivery device, especially a hybrid device that borrows and combines concepts from a multitude of sources.

The importance of bench studies in aerosol research should not be underestimated. Previous clinical studies conducted in my institution found that disposable plastic nebulizers, even from the same lot, do not always perform comparably.[1,11,12] Thus, when conducting studies involving many nebulizers, we now customarily pretest a sufficient number of devices to ascertain that they all function comparably or to identify and discard outliers from the group that will be used clinically or in further bench tests. This simple but often overlooked procedure can help to ascertain whether aberrant results in a clinical study, for example, are due to system factors or patient factors.

The procedure nicknamed "standing cloud"[12,13] uses an absolute filter to capture all particles that leave the nebulizer as it is run to dryness. Identical amounts of drug or radioactive tracer are placed in a series of nebulizers, and the experiment is repeated for each. Duration of nebulization until dryness and/or the amount of drug or tracer measured on the filter form the

basis for comparability. Simple statistical analysis characterizes like performers and identifies outliers in the sample.

One situation in which the standing-cloud measurement would be valuable is the testing of new aerosol delivery systems that have been created from combining features of others. In the paper by Mason et al[10] in this issue of RESPIRATORY CARE, for example, the standing-cloud measurement would have been useful in determining whether there were any intrinsic differences between the two nebulizers used in the study. The paper makes a comparison between a stand-alone nebulizer of one brand and another brand of nebulizer incorporated into a system. While the results of the study are indeed interesting, the absence of preliminary bench testing raises additional questions.

This should be taken as commentary rather than criticism inasmuch as appropriate testing of new and increasingly complex aerosol delivery systems is itself a new and increasingly complex venture. While unusual for one editorial to point to another, I am compelled to recommend a recent editorial by Smaldone,[13] in the *Journal of Aerosol Medicine*. It explores many facets of the technical issues of aerosol drug delivery and some of the problems investigators are experiencing in utilizing a common language for reporting and describing their work. However, despite these problems, it is clear that a new era is dawning in the field of aerosol drug delivery, and it is accompanied by an awakening recognition of the need for improved assessment of aerosol delivery system function and performance.

Michael McPeck BS RRT
Director, Respiratory Care Department
University Hospital
Clinical Assistant Professor
Respiratory Care Program
School of Health Technology & Management
State University of New York
at Stony Brook
Stony Brook, New York

REFERENCES

1. Smaldone GC, Fuhrer J, Steigbigel RT, McPeck M. Factors determining pulmonary deposition of aerosolized pentamidine in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:727-737.
2. Demers RR, Parker J, Frankel LR, Smith DW. Administration of ribavirin to neonatal pediatric patients during mechanical ventilation. Respir Care 1986;31:1188-1196.
3. Ilowite JS, Gorvoy JD, Smaldone GC. Quantitative deposition of aerosolized gentamicin in cystic fibrosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1445-1449.
4. Hubbard RC, Brantly ML, Sellers SE, Mitchell ME, Crystal RG. Anti-neutrophil-elastase defenses of the lower respiratory tract in α^1-antitrypsin deficiency directly augmented with an aerosol α^1-antitrypsin. Ann Intern Med 1989;111:20- 212.
5. Todisco T, Cosmi E, Dottorini M, Baglioni S, Eslami A, Fedeli L, Palumbo R. ^{99}Tc-DTPA-surfactant inhalation in adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS): a new diagnostic-therapeutic tool. J Aerosol Med 1992;5:113-122.
6. Knowles MR, Church NL, Waltner WE, Yankaskas JR, Gilligan P, King M, et al. A pilot study of aerosolized amiloride for the treatment of lung disease in cystic fibrosis. N Engl J Med 1990;322:1189-1194.
7. O'Riordan TG, Duncan SR, Burchart GJ, Griffith BP, Smaldone GC. Characterization of an aerosol of cyclosporine as a prelude to clinical studies. J Aerosol Med 1992;5:171-177.
8. Ramsey BW, Astley SA, Aitken ML, Burke W, Colin AA, Dorkin HC, et al. Efficacy and safety of short-term administration of aerosolized recombinant human deoxyribonuclease in patients with cystic fibrosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148:145-151.
9. Smaldone GC, Perry RJ, Deutch DG. Characteristics of nebulizers used in the treatment of AIDS-related *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia. J Aerosol Med 1988;1:113-126.
10. Mason JW, Miller WC, Small S. Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer. Respir Care 1994;39(12):1157-1161.
11. Vinciguerra C, Smaldone GC. Treatment time and patient tolerance for pentamidine delivery by Respigard II and Aerotech II. Respir Care 1990;35:1037-1041.
12. McPeck M, O'Riordan TG, Smaldone GC. Choice of mechanical ventilator: influence on nebulizer performance. Respir Care 1993;38:887-895.
13. CG. Drug delivery by nebulization: "reality testing" (editorial). J Aerosol Med 1994;7:213-216.

Comparison of Aerosol Delivery via Circulaire System vs Conventional Small Volume Nebulizer

John W Mason RRT, Warren C Miller MD, and Sherry Small CNMT

BACKGROUND: Contemporary small volume nebulizers have the disadvantages of low efficiency, extrapulmonary deposition of medication leading to side effects, and possible environmental contamination. DESCRIPTION OF DEVICE: The Circulaire nebulizer® is mated to a circuit that includes a one-way valve to baffle large particles and direct airflow, a distensible reservoir to capture aerosol from the nebulizer during expiration, and a variable resistor to optimize nebulizer function for the individual patient. EVALUATION METHODS: Performance of 9 units of the new device (nebulizer plus circuit) was compared to performance of 9 conventional nebulizer units by aerosol techniques that permitted quantitation of aerosol deposition. RESULTS: Compared to a conventional nebulizer, the Circulaire system produced a statistically significant improvement ($p < 0.05$) in lung deposition (50% increase), a fivefold reduction in extrapulmonary deposition, and a twofold reduction in amount of aerosol escaping to the environment. CONCLUSION: Our study suggests that the Circulaire system demonstrates (1) improved efficiency of aerosol delivery to the lungs, (2) reduced aerosol deposition in the body outside of the lungs, and (3) less escape of aerosol to the environment when compared to a conventional nebulizer. [Respir Care 1994;39(12):1157-1161.]

Introduction

Among the options for delivery of aerosol therapy, small volume nebulizers are popular and versatile devices, but they are far from perfect. One of the problems is their low efficiency (ie, the small fraction of the fill volume actually deposited in the lungs). Investigators have demonstrated that only 2.7-12.4% of the medication placed in the nebulizer is deposited in the lungs.[1-5] A typical delivery is no more than about 10%. If low efficiency were the only factor, simply increasing the dose might suffice because most aerosol medication is relatively inexpensive. Unfortunately, conventional small volume nebulizers (SVNs) produce a variety of particle sizes, the larger of which impact the pharynx, are systemically absorbed, and may produce undesirable side effects. The larger particles may be in part removed from the nebulizer output by the use of a spacer and/or one-way valve baffle such as that incorporated into the Respirgard II® nebulizer approved for inhaled pentamidine.[6] Unfortunately, this may lead to even less efficiency—approximately 4-5%.[7-9]

Low efficiency is due in part to the so-called dead volume (ie, the volume of the medication plus diluent remaining in the SVN that cannot be aerosolized) and in large part to the aerosol vented to the atmosphere during the expiratory phase of the respiratory cycle.[10] One solution is to somehow capture the otherwise lost aerosol for subsequent inhalation. We evaluated a new nebulizer design that utilizes a spacer and baffles coupled with a distensible reservoir. Our hypothesis was that compared to a conventional SVN, the Circulaire® nebulizer with its inspiratory circuit (C-system)* would provide equal or greater efficiency while minimizing deposition in the gastrointestinal tract.

An additional concern with conventional SVN therapy is release of aerosol into the environment. Therefore, our second

The authors are associated with the Respiratory Section of Clear Lake Regional Medical Center, Webster, Texas.

This study was supported in part by a grant from WestMed Inc, Tucson, Arizona, and the Humana Centers for Excellence Program. Mr Mason and Ms Small have no financial interest in any of the products described or in competing products. Dr Miller is a consultant for WestMed Inc.

Reprints: Warren C Miller MD, Clear Lake Regional Medical Center, 500 Medical Center Blvd, Webster TX 77598.

*Manufacturers and suppliers are identified in the Product Source section at the end of the text.

hypothesis was that less aerosol would escape into the environment with the C-system.

Description of Device

The C-system is a small volume jet nebulizer mated to a breathing circuit designed to optimize function (Fig. 1). A one-way valve placed between the nebulizer and the patient serves as a baffle to remove many of the larger particles otherwise destined for loss to room air or for pharyngeal deposition in the patient. The one-way valve also directs the nebulizer output to the distensible reservoir during expiration. The reservoir captures the aerosol during expiration and makes it available to the patient on subsequent inspiration. To provide patients with additional air should they inhale beyond the combined volume of the reservoir and the nebulizer output, a port open to ambient air is required. For the device to function properly, this port is provided with an inspiratory retard that may be adjusted so that it is sufficient to overcome the inspiratory resistance of the one-way valve and encourage the patient to breathe preferentially from the nebulizer side of the circuit.

Evaluation Methods

Measurements

In order to quantitate aerosol deposition in the body and elsewhere, it is usually necessary to generate a radioactive aerosol that permits imaging and counting by gamma camera. We employed such techniques in this study.[9]

To provide a standard for comparison, we studied each subject (ie, 9 subjects, 9 units of each device) using both a C-system and an Airlife Misty-Neb (M-neb), which is the small volume nebulizer commonly used in our institution.

The particle size data were obtained with a California Measurements' model PC-2AS 10-stage impactor system. This multistage inertial impaction instrument provided size distribution of the normal saline aerosol within seconds after each sampling run. The instrument encompasses a particle size range of 0.14 to > 10 μ in 10 size fractions and is a low-pressure cascade impactor system operating at a flowrate of 0.24 L/min. Oscillating piezoelectric quartz crystals are used in each impactor stage as 'live' particle mass sensors to provide real-time data. The cascade impactor is connected to the nebulizer mouthpiece for these studies.

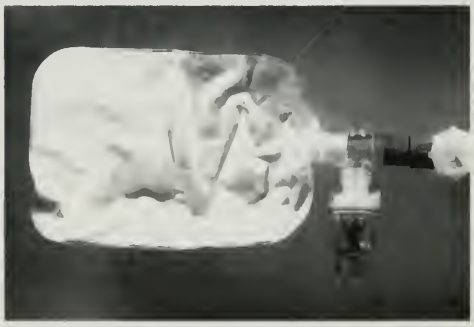


Fig. 1. Photograph of the Circulaire system.

Protocol

Following approval by our Institutional Review Board, we recruited 9 normal subjects who gave informed consent for participation in the study. The subjects were studied on two separate days, on one day with the M-neb and on the other with the C-system. The order of study was randomized by coin toss. Approximately 3 millicuries of 99m technetium diethylenetriamine-penta acetate (DPTA) in 3.5 mL of normal saline solution was added to the nebulizer. On each day, the subject underwent a simulated aerosol treatment seated upright with a nosesclip in place, in front of a gamma camera. To minimize escape of the radioactive aerosol into the environment, subjects were instructed not to remove the mouthpiece during nebulization, and a filter was placed on the nebulizer opening to atmosphere. Subsequent gamma-camera (γ-Cam), or particle, counting of these filters allowed measurement of aerosol that otherwise would have been vented to room air. Treatments were delivered in the conventional fashion with the subject breathing normally and nebulizer flow at 7 L/min from a wall oxygen source. The treatment proceeded to 'dryness' (ie, no further aerosol could be seen leaving the nebulizer even after the device had been tapped). A usual treatment took 6-10 minutes.

Differences in outcome variables (eg, deposition, particle size) were compared between C-system and M-neb using paired *t* tests.

Radioactive Scanning

Measurement of aerosol deposition was achieved by quantitative γ-Cam counting of the radioactivity in the device pretreatment and in regions of interest over the posterior aspect of the body during and after treatment. Results were expressed as the ratio of corrected-to-baseline nebulizer counts. The corrected count in the lung expressed as percent of count initially placed in the nebulizer is designated as % Lung. The corrected counts in the region of interest circumscribing pharynx, stomach, and esophagus as percent of nebulizer counts are designated %GI. Typical deposition images are shown in Figure 2A and 2B.

Correction of lung counts for attenuation of internal radioactivity by body tissues was achieved by measurement of transthoracic attenuation of a known source. The half-value is calculated by assuming a semilogarithmic attenuation of counts over

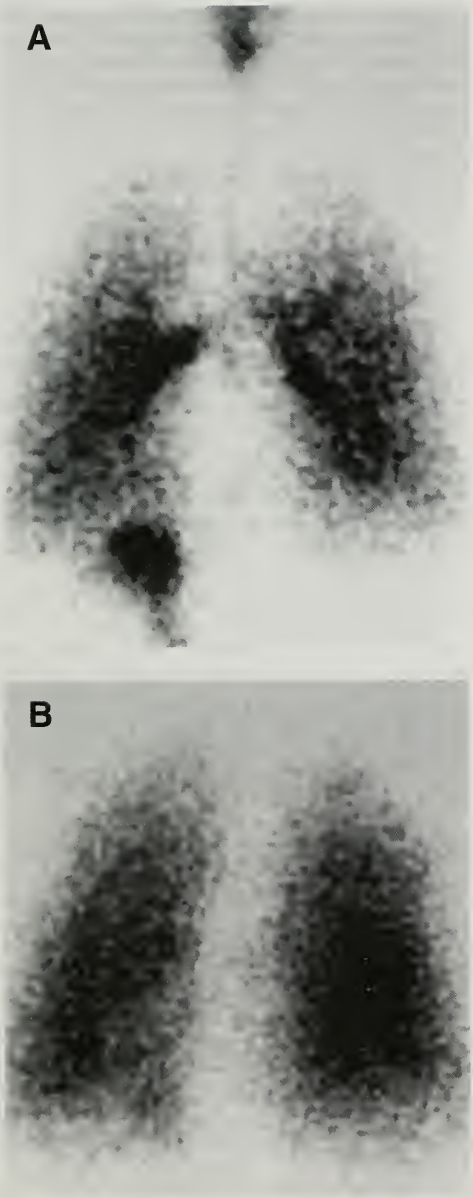


Fig. 2A. Scan of lung following administration of ^{99m}technetium diethylenetriamine-penta acetate (DPTA) via Misty-Neb nebulizer. 2B. Scan following administration of DPTA via Circulaire.

transthoracic distance for each subject. This typically increases counts about twofold.[9,12] In addition, counts were corrected for the physical decay of the isotope and biologic loss of tracer from the lungs through vascular absorption. We measured the rate of absorption and applied minute-by-minute correction for vascular absorption to deposited counts.[9] The total corrected γ-Cam count deposited during nebulization is the sum of these minute-by-minute observations as corrected. In normal subjects, only 0.5-1.0 %/min is typical, and over a nebulization period of a few minutes the correction is of small magnitude. However, in subjects with active alveolitis, the correction may be much larger.[13]

The filters were counted and expressed as the percentage of baseline γ-Cam count placed in the nebulizer to determine the amount of atmospheric contamination (% Room). The nebulizers alone without the circuits were counted and expressed in the same fashion to determine dead volume (% Dead).

Aerosol penetration was meaured by creating quantitative regions of interest around the outer and inner 50%-by-area images of the right lung after aerosol delivery. By convention, the left side was not analyzed because of possible confusion with stomach contents.[14] The outer edge of the images for each subject had been first defined as that of the equilibrium image of radioactive xenon gas, and hence represents the ventilated portion of the lung. We define penetration index (PI) as the ratio of γ-Cam counts in the outer area to counts in the inner area and, therefore, the higher the index the greater the penetration to the alveoli (Fig. 3). The PI is one method used to describe the penetration of

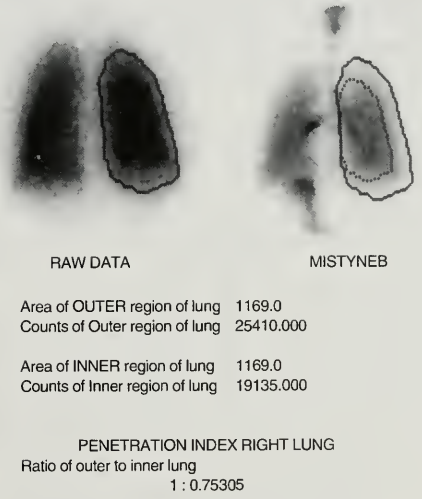

RAW DATA
MISTYNEB
Area of OUTER region of lung 1169.0
Counts of Outer region of lung 25410.000
Area of INNER region of lung 1169.0
Counts of Inner region of lung 19135.000
PENETRATION INDEX RIGHT LUNG
Ratio of outer to inner lung
1 : 0.75305

Fig. 3. Demonstration of inner and outer lung areas based on xenon lung scan.

aerosol into the lungs.[14] Another is the central-peripheral ratio, which is measured similarly but has the reverse connotation—that is, a deep penetration of aerosol into the lung results in a low central-peripheral ratio. For those investigators utilizing radioactive particles, the retained radioactivity at 24 hours is believed to represent deep penetration to the alveoli. A description of these techniques is found in the review by Agnew.[14]

Results

Particle-size testing revealed a mass median aerosol diameter (MMAD) of 0.51 μ for the C-system, whereas the M-neb produced a MMAD of 1.45 μ.

Composite data are provided in Table 1. Greater lung deposition (%Lung) occurred with the C-system. Extrapulmonary deposition (%GI) was reduced fivefold, and escape into the room (%Room) was reduced twofold. No difference was observed in either PI or %Dead.

Discussion

During the study, we made a number of observations. Some subjects of small stature with comparatively low breathing frequencies and tidal volumes seemed to be able to obtain virtually all of their inspiratory needs from the nebulizer output, and, therefore, the reservoir bag became distended and fixed. We did not alter flow to the nebulizer during the course of the study. However, we later found that reducing nebulizer flow optimized utility of the reservoir, but it was not clear whether this affected efficiency. (We did informal bench testing with radioactive aerosols, an inspiratory filter, and a mechanical 'lung' to optimize flowrate to nebulizer with minute ventilation of the lung, but because we do not know the effect on particle size, we cannot state that this improves efficiency in vivo.) Participation by the respiratory therapist, although not mandatory, was desirable to adjust the inspiratory resistor for best system operation. The reservoir bag can provide biofeedback if the subject is coached to watch the reservoir and take breaths of sufficient depth to deflate it.

Our data undoubtedly underestimate the amount of extrapulmonary deposition in the subjects participating in this study. In larger subjects, we were not able to encompass the entire pharyngeal-to-lower gastric area within view of the camera. We suspect that extrapulmonary deposition probably accounts for as much or more aerosol than is deposited in the lungs with a conventional nebulizer.

That we were unable to demonstrate a difference in penetration has two possible explanations. First, the finding could be valid in that the aerosol particles produced by small volume nebulizers may be thought of as two populations—larger particles unable to traverse dead space, baffles, and/or upper airways and smaller particles that enter the lung and penetrate to a variable degree depending on their size distribution. Alternatively, the finding may be an artifact of technique in that we do not correct for lung-volume depth beneath the planar surface observed by the camera. Hence deposition in the anteroposterior dimension is not assessed.

The Circulaire system appears to have advantages compared to conventional nebulization. The mean deposition efficiency is greater than that reported in studies of conventional nebulizers.[1-5] If we assume that the same doses of medication are to be administered, replacement of conventional nebulizers with the Circulaire should markedly reduce the side effects from sympathomimetic bronchodilators or steroids. Further, the Circulaire should reduce the risk to caregivers[15] and other

Table 1. Data from 10 Patients Using Conventional Nebulizer (M-Neb) and a New Nebulizer System (C-Sys)

	%Lungs*		%GI		%Room		Penetration Index		%Dead Volume	
Subject No.	M-Neb	C-Sys	M-Neb	C-Sys	M-Neb	C-Sys	M-Neb	C-Sys	M-Neb	C-Sys
1	8.0	11.2	3.5	1.3	34.8	11.8	0.50	0.38	36	36
2	9.1	19.8	4.2	1.2	37.3	19.7	0.43	0.36	28	25
3	9.0	17.4	2.4	1.1	26.7	7.4	0.33	0.48	54	42
4	8.1	5.7	6.5	0.3	41.3	33.9	0.42	0.46	25	37
5	6.5	10.2	3.6	1.1	34.3	7.0	0.59	0.37	41	36
6	12.3	8.7	4.6	0.6	29.1	21.0	0.41	0.59	38	35
7	7.3	9.6	13.2	1.8	27.6	16.0	0.59	0.59	33	39
8	8.0	19.7	5.1	1.1	22.9	0.8	0.40	0.38	46	51
9	8.7	13.3	7.6	1.6	29.5	5.2	0.34	0.58	34	42
Mean (SD)	8.6 (1.6)	12.8 (5.1)†	5.6 (3.3)	1.1 (0.5)†	31.5 (5.8)	13.9 (9.8)†	0.45 (0.10)	0.47 (0.10)	37 (9)	38 (7)

*%Lungs = % of aerosol deposited in the lungs; %GI = deposited in gastrointestinal tract; % room = deposited in environment (potentially); penetrtion index = ratio of radioactive particle count in outer region to count in the inner region of the lung; and %Dead Volume = % of radioactive solution remaining in the nebulizer.

†Statistically significant difference ($p < 0.05$).

patients associated with the venting of excess aerosol to the environment, although obviously any effective expiratory filter would serve the same function. With the biofeedback possible from the reservoir and the participation of the respiratory therapist, treatments may be more effective. A more intriguing possibility is that higher doses of medication might be utilized with a greater degree of safety. Although we have not directly tested the clinical benefit of high-dose bronchodilators, some evidence[16,17] suggests that true clinical benefit might be achieved for both bronchodilators and steroids.

PRODUCT SOURCES

Nebulizers:

Circulaire, WestMed Inc, Tucson AZ

Airlife Misty-Neb, Baxter HealthCare Corp, Pharmaseal Division, Valencia CA

Measuring Equipment & Supplies:

Model IPC-2AS Cascade Impactor, California Measurements Inc, Sierra Madre CA

Gamma camera, 400X C/T, GE Medical Systems, Milwaukee WI

Radioactive isotope, ^{99m}technetium diethylenetriamine-penta acetate (DPTA), Mallinckrodt Medical Inc, St Louis MO

REFERENCES

1. Lewis RA, Fleming JS. Fractional deposition from a jet nebulizer: how it differs from a metered dose inhaler. Br J Dis Chest 1985;79(4):361-367.
2. Ilowite JS, Gorvoy JD, Smaldone GC. Quantitative deposition of aerosolized gentamicin in cystic fibrosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136(6):1445-1449.
3. Johnson MA, Newman SP, Bloom R, Talaee N, Clarke SW. Delivery of albuterol and ipratropium bromide from two nebulizer systems in chronic stable asthma: efficacy and pulmonary deposition. Chest 1989;96(1):6-10.
4. Zainudin BMZ, Biddiscombe M, Tolfree SEJ, Short M, Spiro SG. Comparison of bronchodilator responses and deposition patterns of salbutamol inhaled from a pressurised metered dose inhaler, as a dry powder, and as a nebulised solution. Thorax 1990;45:469-473.
5. Miller WC, Mason JW. Small-volume nebulizers versus metered dose inhalers. Chest 1993;103:655-656.
6. Mason JW, Miller WC. What nebulizer should be used to aerosolize pentamidine for *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia? Respir Care 1989;34(3):218-220.
7. Smaldone GC, Perry RJ, Deutsch DG. Characteristics of nebulizers used in the treatment of AIDS-related *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia. J Aerosol Med 1988;1(3):113-126.
8. O'Doherty MJ, Thomas S, Page C, Barlow D, Bradbeer C, Nunan TO, Bateman NT. Differences in relative efficiency of nebulizers for pentamidine administration. Lancet 1988;2(8623):1283-1286.
9. Miller WC, Mason JW. Aerosol deposition of a propylene glycol solution. J Aerosol Med 1991;4(4):293-296.
10. Newman S. Aerosol deposition considerations in inhalation therapy. Chest 1985;88(2, suppl):152S-160S.
11. Fallat RJ, Kandal K. Aerosol exhaust: escape of aerosolized medication into the patient and caregiver's environment. Respir Care 1991;36(9):1008-1016.
12. MacIntyre NR, Silver RM. Aerosol delivery in intubated, mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1985;13(2):81-84.
13. Rinderknecht JL, Shapiro L, Krauthammer M, Taplin G, Wasserman K, Uszler JM, Effros RM. Accelerated clearance of small solutes from the lungs in interstitial lung disease. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;121:105-117.
14. Agnew JE. Characterizing lung aerosol penetration. J Aerosol Med 1991;4(3):237-249.
15. Alberts WM. Occupational asthma in the respiratory care worker. Respir Care 1993;38(9):997-1004.
16. Lai CKW, Legge JS, Friend JAR. Air-driven nebulised high-dose salbutamol in severe chronic obstructive airways disease: is it safe? Respiration 1991;58:249-254.
17. Miller WC, Unger KM. Nebulized small particle dexamethasone in asthma. Immun Allerg Prac 1993;15(3-4):88-91.

Predicting Aerosol Deposition during Neonatal Ventilation: Feasibility of Bench Testing

Thomas G O'Riordan MD, Leonard I Kleinman MD,
Kenneth Hughes MPS RRT, and Gerald C Smaldone MD PhD

STUDY QUESTION: Can in-vitro bench testing of neonatal pressure-controlled ventilators predict aerosol delivery to the lung? BACKGROUND: Lung deposition of an aerosolized drug is determined by the amount of drug inhaled (inhaled mass) and by the tendency of the lung to retain rather than exhale the aerosol. For adult aerosol delivery systems, in-vitro bench testing has resulted in increased lung deposition in clinical studies of spontaneously breathing and mechanically ventilated patients. However, it has been reported that bench testing of neonatal ventilator systems is not useful for predicting clinical deposition. PURPOSE OF THE STUDY: To assess whether perturbation of a bench model of neonatal ventilation in a manner likely to change aerosol delivery would result in proportional changes in deposition in an animal lung. METHODS: We measured aerosol delivery using a bench model of a pressure-controlled, continuous-flow, neonatal ventilator system delivering a typical range of minute ventilation (260-900 mL) to a test lung. A radioactive aerosol of ^{99m}Tc bound to human serum albumin was generated using a small-volume ultrasonic nebulizer and collected on a filter positioned distal to a 3.0-mm endotracheal tube (ETT) that determined inhaled mass. The nebulizer was placed at two locations: its conventional position in the inspiratory line (IL position) and just distal to the Y-piece of the ventilator (DY position) a position not clinically applicable but likely to increase aerosol delivery. After the bench studies, the two nebulizer-ventilator circuits and settings were used to deliver the radioaerosol to the lungs of mechanically ventilated rabbits and lung deposition was calculated using a gamma camera and attenuation-coefficient technique. RESULTS: Bench model, inhaled mass—using the DY configuration, 8.3 ± 0.94 % of the activity was delivered to the inhaled-mass filter compared to 1.6 ± 0.6 % in the IL configuration ($p < 0.0001$, DY:IL 5.2:1). Deposition in the ETT was similar in magnitude to the inhaled mass (DY vs IL configuration, 6.4 ± 1.7 % vs 1.4 ± 0.6 %, $p < 0.0001$) and correlated with the measured particle distributions. Rabbit model, lung deposition: DY configuration vs IL position 3.31 ± 2.1 % vs 0.56 ± 0.09 %, $p = 0.008$, DY:IL 5.9:1). CONCLUSIONS: Differences in aerosol delivery measured in an in-vitro bench model are found to be proportional to those detected in the lung. A significant quantity of nebulized particles deposit in the ETT. Therefore, bench testing may have a useful role in preliminary testing of aerosol delivery systems and nebulized drugs in the setting of neonatal ventilation. The clinical acceptance and safety of modifications to standard neonatal circuits (eg, dead-space effects and tubing modifications) require additional clinical studies. [Respir Care 1994;39(12):1162-1168.]

Dr O'Riordan and Dr Smaldone are associated with the Department of Medicine, Pulmonary/Critical Care Division; Dr Kleinman with the Department of Pediatrics, Division of Neonatal Medicine; and Mr Hughes with the Department of Respiratory Care—University Medical Center, State University of New York at Stony Brook, Stony Brook, New York.

None of the authors has any financial interest in any of the products utilized in this study. The study was supported in part by University Medical Center operational grant 371318.

Reprints: Gerald C Smaldone MD PhD, Pulmonary Disease Division, University Medical Center, State University of New York at Stony Brook, Stony Brook, New York 11784-8172.

INTRODUCTION

In recent years, interest has been increasing in topical delivery of medications to the lung in the form of aerosols. The motivation for applying this mode of administration is the desire to maximize efficacy by concentrating drug in the target organ while limiting systemic toxicity. In order to measure the dose-response of an inhaled drug it is, of course, necessary to know the dose deposited in the patient's lungs. Unfortunately, the dose deposited in the lung cannot be extrapolated from the dose placed in the nebulizer, primarily because only a fraction

of the medication placed in the nebulizer is inhaled by the patient and the relative efficiency of commercially available nebulizer-ventilator delivery systems can vary by an order of magnitude.[1-4] To minimize this variability in adults, aerosol delivery systems have been tested on the bench before undertaking in-vivo clinical studies. In both spontaneously breathing patients[2,5] and adults on mechanical ventilation,[3,6] bench studies have predicted aerosol delivery to the lung.

Neonatal ventilator systems differ from adult systems in important ways. First, most are pressure controlled rather than volume controlled. Second, the minute volume, which is not measured in standard clinical practice, is usually between 250 and 750 mL/min compared to 5-20 L/min in the adult. Third, the diameter of the endotracheal tube (ETT) and other tubing used in the circuit is smaller and may prove to be a barrier to inhaled particles. Cameron et al[4] have demonstrated significant variability in the efficiency of commercially available nebulizers, in a bench model of pressure-controlled neonatal ventilation. Expressed as a percentage of the dose placed in the nebulizer, the amount of aerosol 'inhaled' by the test lung varied from 0.22 to 1.52 %. Rau and Harwood[7] using a bench setup similar to that of Cameron et al[4] demonstrated that modifying the ventilator circuit using a spacer, or holding chamber, in the inspiratory line increased aerosol delivery from 0.97 to 1.78% in one type of jet nebulizer. In contrast to the relatively inefficient aerosol delivery reported by Cameron et al[4] and Rau and Harwood,[7] Benson et al[8] using a different bench technique found that up to 12% of the dose of theophylline in a nebulizer could be delivered to a test lung. In none of these three studies was the predictive accuracy of the bench model tested by comparison to an animal or human model. Watterberg et al[9] tested the predictive ability of a bench model of a neonatal circuit in delivering cromoglycate to intubated neonates. Their bench protocol, which utilized two different experimental configurations, predicted markedly different lung deposition for each; but, when those configurations were tested in neonates, no differences in deposition were detected. However, the ventilator circuit in the bench model was not pressurized and did not precisely mimic the actual circuit used clinically. In a separate study, Flavin et al[10] used a rabbit model and found that 1-4% of the dose placed in the nebulizer was deposited in the rabbits' lungs, with the highest deposition being reported in animals treated with nebulizers producing submicronic particles. However, Flavin et al[10] used a volume-controlled ventilator; so, their study cannot be easily compared to that of Cameron et al,[4] Rau and Harwood,[7] Benson et al,[8] or Watterberg et al.[9]

If bench testing was to be shown to reliably assess factors that determine deposition in the lungs of neonates, then many of the technical issues related to the delivery of new drugs to neonates or the testing of new aerosol devices for neonates could be studied in advance of clinical patient studies. For example, choice of the most efficient commercial nebulizer or the need to modify ventilator tubing or ventilator settings could be assessed with preliminary bench experiments. In the present study, we used a bench model of a neonatal ventilator with typical ventilator settings, neonatal tidal volumes (V_Ts), and ETT and ventilator tubing, and captured the aerosol particles that would have been inhaled by a neonate (inhaled mass). We selected two modes of aerosol delivery that we believed (from preliminary testing) would likely result in different amounts' being 'inhaled' on the bench. Then, we compared the bench results with measured lung deposition in an animal preparation. If in-vitro bench predictions are accurate, differences between nebulizer configurations measured on the bench should be proportional to differences in lung deposition using the same nebulizer systems.

METHODS

Bench Protocol

A radiolabeled saline solution was nebulized and the aerosol delivered through a standard pressurized neonatal ventilator circuit to an absolute low-resistance filter placed at the distal end of an ETT. (For the purposes of this study, a low-resistance absolute filter is defined as a filter that captures all of the aerosol produced by a clinical nebulizer without significantly increasing resistance to gas flow.) The amount of radioactivity on this filter (measured in a well counter) defines the inhaled mass[1] and is expressed as a percentage of the radioactivity placed in the nebulizer (the nebulizer charge[1]). In our model, this measurement corresponds to the particles inhaled by a neonate ventilated using the same circuit and ventilator settings. The percentages of radioactivity depositing on the ETT, Y-piece, and on filters placed in the inhalation and exhalation tubing were also measured. Experiments were carried out with a range of minute volumes corresponding to the range of settings that might be encountered in a neonatal ICU and using 2 different positions for the nebulizer (breathing rate of 30 breaths/min with V_T of 8 mL and breathing rate of 60 breaths/min with V_T of 15 mL; peak inspiratory pressure was limited to 15 cm H_2O).

Ventilator Circuit

The ventilator circuit is illustrated in Figure 1. A pressure-controlled ventilator* was connected to a standard ventilator circuit in which the inspiratory and expiratory lines met at a Y-piece attached to an ETT (internal diameter 3.0 mm). Distal to the ETT was a cotton ball in a plastic holder (inhaled mass filter). A pneumotachograph was placed distal to

*Manufacturers and suppliers are identified in the Product Sources section at the end of the text.

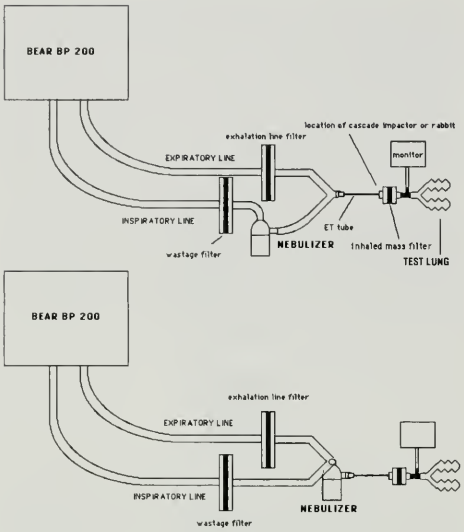


Fig. 1. A standard neonatal ventilator circuit is illustrated; *upper panel:* the ultrasonic nebulizer in the IL configuration (nebulizer 10 cm proximal to the Y-piece); *lower panel:* the DY configuration (nebulizer distal to the Y-piece).

the filter and attached to an electronic monitor, the NVM. The plastic test lungs were placed distal to the NVM. We used a commercially available test lung for 8-mL V_Ts, and customized a more compliant plastic lung in our laboratory to obtain a 15-mL V_T without significantly increasing peak airway pressure.

The 3.0-mm ETT was selected because this is the size most commonly used in our neonatal ICU. It was cut to a 10-cm length to conform with standard clinical practice in our NICU. For measurements of V_T during aerosol delivery, the monitoring device was placed distal to the absolute filter because if it had been placed proximal to the filter, particles might have deposited on the pneumotachograph. The V_T monitor was calibrated for accuracy using a pneumotachograph and integrator by passing a known volume through the device using a 30-mL syringe.

Filters

Low-resistance absolute filters were placed in the inspiratory and expiratory lines to capture any aerosol particles that may have been expelled through these lines. Particles theoretically could pass retrograde through the inspiratory line because of a safety feature of this ventilator that dissipates excess pressure in the circuit through this line. To avoid confusion with the inhaled-mass filter distal to the ETT (Fig. 1), the filter in the inspiratory line was designated as the upstream-wastage filter. The upstream-wastage filter and expiratory-line filters consisted of 17-cm diameter paper discs that fit snugly within a plastic container. Similar filters were used in our previous studies in adults.[5,7] However, these filters could not be used to sample the inhaled mass at the distal end of the ETT because the filter holder has a volume of 20 mL, a negligible volume in an adult ventilator circuit with a V_T of 500-1000 mL. However, in the neonate, V_Ts are often less than 10 mL, and particles inhaled into the 20-mL filter holder could be exhaled before depositing on the paper filter, thus underestimating the amount inhaled by the test lung. This problem was overcome by making smaller filters out of cotton balls with a smaller volume (< 1 mL). The resistance of the cotton ball to airflow was assessed by monitoring the V_T distal to the cotton-ball filter. It was noted that if the cotton ball became moistened the resistance to airflow increased significantly, as manifested by a reduction in V_T. To avoid this problem, the V_T was monitored throughout aerosol delivery and the cotton-ball filter was changed when the V_T decreased by more than 2 mL during the run. The filter's permeability to aerosol particles was tested by placing the cotton-ball filter and one of the low-resistance absolute filter papers in series and demonstrating that the cotton captured 99% of the radioactive particles that passed through the system.

Nebulizer and Circuit Location

A small-volume ultrasonic nebulizer was used rather than a jet nebulizer because the ultrasonic does not require additional gas flow to generate aerosol particles and, therefore, enabled us to experiment with changing the relationship between ventilator gas flow and the nebulizer baffling system. The nebulizer was placed at two different positions in the ventilator circuit. The first was in the inspiratory line 10 cm upstream from the Y-piece (Fig. 1), designated the inspiratory line (IL) configuration. In clinical practice, this is the conventional position for a nebulizer to be located. The nebulizer was also placed distal to the Y-piece with the ETT directly attached to the nebulizer (the DY configuration). This is not an approved location for an ultrasonic nebulizer because it could theoretically introduce significant dead space into the system and because there may be risks associated with attaching an ultrasonic nebulizer directly to the ETT. Extensive clinical testing would be required to establish its safety in clinical practice. Nevertheless, there are theoretical grounds for believing that aerosol delivery would be increased in this location, and the central purpose of our study was to establish whether a difference in aerosol deliv-

ery detectable with a bench model would also be detectable in an animal preparation.

The nebulizer was modified to run continuously rather than intermittently every 30 seconds. The one-way inspiratory valve on the nebulizer chamber was removed to facilitate attachment of the inspiratory line or Y-piece. To ensure an airtight seal with the ETT, a small plastic sleeve was interposed. The nebulizer was filled with 4 mL of 0.9% saline (the nebulizer charge[1]) labeled with technetium that was bound to human serum albumin (^{99m}Tc-HSA).

ETT and Y-Piece Deposition

After each bench study, the ETT was disconnected and placed in a plastic bag (to prevent loss of radioactive condensate) and radioactivity was measured in the well counter. Activity was also measured on the Y-piece and the tubing that connected it to the upstream-wastage and expiratory filters.

Particle Distribution

In order to measure aerodynamic particle distributions in a clinically relevant manner, the circuit shown in Figure 1 was modified. In a separate series of experiments, a cascade impactor was inserted into the circuit distal to the ETT but proximal to the inhalation filter and test lung. Sampling was performed for 1 minute with each configuration (cascade flow of 1.0 L/min).

Animal Protocol

The protocol was approved by the Animal Use Committee of the hospital. New Zealand White rabbits (weight 1.089 kg-2.25 kg) were anesthetized with ketamine and butyrophenone and paralyzed with pancuronium to prevent all spontaneous respiration, as part of a separate physiologic study. A tracheotomy was performed, and the airway was intubated with a 3.0-mm ETT, shortened to 10-cm. All of the animals died under this anesthetic regimen with death occurring as a result of circulatory failure. All but three of the experiments listed in Table 2 were performed after the animals had died but within 90 minutes of death. Lung-chest wall compliance may decrease with rigor mortis and thus V_T may decrease in a pressure-controlled system. This risk was minimized by limiting the time for completion of experiments to a maximum of 90 minutes post mortem and by checking V_T with an in-line neonatal V_T monitor immediately before each deposition run.

We performed 13 experiments on 6 rabbits, using the circuits illustrated in Figure 1. For each rabbit, using an anteriorly positioned gamma camera, serial images of aerosol deposition were obtained following aerosol inhalation from the DY and IL configurations. The images acquired by the camera were stored in a computer for later analysis. For each animal, the ETT was not removed for each deposition run and, consequently, ETT deposition was not measured via well counter. Further, the ETT orientation to the gamma camera was changed for the DY and IL experiments. This change in camera geometry precluded measurement of ETT deposition via the camera using the attenuation-coefficient technique. However, the rabbit was fixed in position, with respect to the camera, and lung deposition for each maneuver could be determined by serial subtraction of preceding images using regions of interest drawn around the lungs in a manner that excluded the ETT deposition. At the end of the experiment, for the purposes of calculating the attenuation coefficient of the chest wall and lungs, a final image of the lungs was obtained. Then, the lungs were surgically removed and counted in the well counter. This activity was decay corrected to the time of the last image, and an attenuation coefficient was calculated. Using the attenuation coefficient, lung counts from previous images could be converted to deposited radioactivity in millicuries.

RESULTS

The results of the bench model experiments are shown in Table 1. Using the DY configuration, inhaled mass delivered to the cotton-ball filter was 8.3 ± 0.94 % of the activity placed in the nebulizer compared to 1.6 ± 0.6 % when the nebulizer was placed in the IL configuration ($p < 0.0001$, unpaired t test). Aerosol delivery in the DY configuration ex-

Table 1. Bench Data for DY vs IL Configuration: Deposition of Radioacitivity Distal to ET Tube (Inhaled Mass) and in Exhalation-Line Filter

Configuration	Minute Ventilation (L)	Inhaled Mass (%)*	Exhalation Filter (%)
DY	0.26	9.30	29.00
DY	0.26	7.70	29.30
DY	0.90	8.80	30.50
DY	0.90	7.27	22.70
Mean ± SD		8.3 ± 0.94	27.88 ± 3.52
IL	0.87	1.90	17.60
IL	0.90	2.17	21.20
IL	0.54	2.10	27.80
IL	0.54	1.97	18.30
IL	0.24	0.77	30.60
IL	0.24	0.89	22.80
Mean ± SD		1.60 ± 0.6	23.05 ± 5.20
DY vs IL (t test)		p = 0.0001	p = 0.15
Ratio DY:IL		5.2:1	

*Percentages refer to % of initial quantity of radioactivity in nebulizer (nebulizer charge).

ceeded that of the IL configuration by a factor of 5.2:1. Significantly more aerosol particles were captured on the filter in the expiratory line than by the inhaled mass filter in both configurations (mean ± SD—IL configuration: % on expiratory filter 23.05 ± 5.20 %, $p < 0.0001$; DY configuration: 27.88 ± 3.51%, $p = 0.0001$, paired t test). With both configurations, a negligible quantity of particles was recovered from the filter placed in the inspiratory line (upstream-wastage filter). The time for the nebulizer to run to dryness was 10 minutes when placed in the IL configuration and 20 minutes in the DY configuration.

Deposition in the ETT was significantly greater in the DY configuration (DY vs IL configurations: 6.4 ± 1.7 % vs 1.4 ± 0.6 %, $p < 0.0001$, unpaired t test). In the Y-piece, deposition exceeded that of the ETT and there was no difference between configurations (DY vs IL: 19.7 ± 3.4 % vs 20.17 ± 6.9 %, $p = 0.92$, unpaired t test).

The mass median aerodynamic diameter (MMAD) ± geometric standard deviation (σ_g) for the particles sampled in the IL configuration was 1.41 ± 1.85 μ (n = 3); for the DY configuration the MMAD ± σ_g was 2.55 ± 1.8 μ (n = 2).

The results of the rabbit experiments are shown in Table 2. In the rabbits, particle deposition in the lungs was higher by a ratio of 5.9 to 1 with the DY configuration compared to the IL position (3.31 ± 2.1% vs 0.56 ± 0.09 %, $p = 0.008$, unpaired t test). As in the bench experiments, a significant amount of the nebulized particles was captured by the expiratory line filter, and they greatly exceeded lung deposition (mean ± SD IL configuration: % on expiratory filter = 27.43 ± 5.16 %, $p < 0.0001$, paired t test compared to lung; DY configuration: 32.47 ± 5.93 %, $p < 0.0001$).

Table 2. Rabbit Data for DY vs IL Configuration: Deposition in Lungs and Exhalation-Line Filter

Configuration	Minute Ventilation (L)	Kg	Lung Deposition (%)†	Exhalation Filter (%)
DY	0.72	2.16	1.40	21.2
DY	0.52	2.09	3.30	31.2
DY*	0.54	1.96	4.47	34.8
DY*	0.52	1.26	1.08	35.0
DY	0.44	1.09	1.49	29.2
DY	0.44	1.25	5.05	37.8
DY	0.44	1.25	6.39	38.1
Mean ± SD			3.3 ± 2.07	32.47 ± 5.93
IL	0.72	2.16	0.52	20.3
IL*	0.52	2.09	0.61	28.5
IL	0.54	1.96	0.39	24.7
IL	0.52	1.26	0.64	27.1
IL	0.44	1.09	0.61	36.0
IL	0.44	1.25	0.59	28.0
Mean ± SD			0.56 ± 0.09	27.43 ± 5.16
DY vs IL (t test)			$p = 0.008$	$p = 0.13$
Ratio DY IL			5.9:1	

* = alive

† Percentages refer to % of initial quantity of radioactivity in nebulizer (nebulizer charge).

DISCUSSION

The findings of the present study demonstrate that a bench model of neonatal ventilation is capable of detecting significant differences in the efficiency of aerosol delivery systems. Aerosol delivery in the DY configuration exceeded that of the IL configuration by a ratio of 5.2 to 1 in the bench model (expressed as the inhaled mass) and by a ratio of 5.9 to 1 in the animal model (expressed as lung deposition). Although the DY-IL ratios are similar for the bench and animal models, the inhaled mass measured on the bench regularly exceeded actual lung deposition in the rabbits. This latter finding is consistent with the experience from adult ventilator studies in which the inhaled-mass filter measures the amount inhaled (ie, there is no exhalation from an absolute filter), whereas the amount deposited in a lung is the net of the amount inhaled less the amount exhaled.[1] In ventilated and spontaneously breathing adult subjects, approximately 50%, on average, of the aerosol inhaled will be retained by the lung, the other half being exhaled.[5,6,11,12]

Previous studies of spontaneously breathing[5] and mechanically ventilated[6] adult patients have demonstrated that the choice and modification of aerosol delivery systems can affect the amount of aerosolized medication delivered to the lungs of these patients. Furthermore, it has been shown that prior bench testing of these delivery systems can be used to select the optimum method of aerosol delivery in these patient groups.[2,3] The findings of the present study suggest that the principles utilized in adults can be applied to bench models of neonatal ventilation. Appropriate in-vitro testing of neonatal delivery systems would facilitate the design of clinical trials of aerosolized medication by increasing the predictability of aerosol delivery.

The efficiency of delivery in the neonatal circuit is significantly less than that recently reported in adults (mean adult inhaled mass 30%[6]). The uniformly high quantities of captured particles found on the exhalation filter indicate that in an intact pressurized neonatal circuit significantly more aerosol passes directly into the exhaled line than enters the ETT. In the bench studies, because the inhaled-mass filter was an absolute low-resistance filter, no aerosol particles were exhaled by the test lung, hence those particles captured in the expiratory line represent aerosol that had passed directly into the expiratory line without being inhaled. With both configurations, a negligible quantity of particles was recovered from the filter placed in the inspiratory line (upstream-

wastage filter) indicating that with an ultrasonic nebulizer retrograde flow of aerosol does not occur to an important degree.

The aerosol wastage in the expiratory line can be attributed to the flow patterns of neonatal ventilator systems (ie, gas at 6-10 L/min typically passes through a neonatal ventilator). Because the average neonate has a minute ventilation of 250-500 mL, most of the ventilator gas flow (and, consequently, the aerosol carried by the gas) never enters the neonate and instead passes directly out the expiratory line. This may help to explain the findings of Watterberg et al[9] who used a bench model of ventilator tubing but not a complete pressurized neonatal circuit (ie, complete circuit with a ventilating test lung). For example, in their bench model of neonatal ventilator circuitry, they found that using a conventional jet nebulizer charged with 2 mL of cromolyn, 20.5% the dose placed in the nebulizer was recovered leaving the nebulizer, whereas only 5.5% was recoverable after passage through 60 cm of ventilator tubing and an ETT adapter. Hence, their bench model identified factors (choice of nebulizer and placement in ventilator tubing) that seemed to affect aerosol delivery to an important degree. However in a follow-up clinical study on intubated, ventilated babies that used urinary excretion of cromolyn as an index of lung deposition, it was found that < 1% of the dose placed in the nebulizer was deposited in the lungs regardless of choice of nebulizer or its position in the ventilator circuit. The absence of a pressurized ventilator circuit simulating the clinical situation in the model of Watterberg et al is the most likely explanation as to why the bench findings were not replicated in their in-vivo experiments.

In the bench model of the present study, V_T was monitored by an in-line pneumotachograph. In contrast to adult volume-controlled ventilators, most pressure-controlled neonatal ventilators do not measure V_T. Failure to verify the V_T in a bench model may explain the results of the study by Benson et al,[8] which reported unusually high deposition of aerosolized theophylline (12% of the nebulizer charge) collected in a saline bag by dissolution. They modified a standard pressurized neonatal circuit by introducing a needle into the collection bag to prevent accumulation of "excess volume." This leak distal to the ETT may not have been large enough to produce a detectable change in the pressure of the ventilator circuit, but it may have significantly increased the minute volume, and this may account for the unusually high delivery of aerosol they reported.

In addition to simulating the pattern of gas flow typical of a clinical situation, the bench model needs to include an appropriately sized ETT. In adults, ETT and connectors can be important sites of deposition, but usually represent about one third of the total quantity of particles deposited in a patient.[6] In the present study, ETT and Y-piece deposition equaled and exceeded, respectively, the inhaled mass. ETT deposition appeared related to particle distribution. That is, for the DY configuration, with the larger particle distribution, both inhaled mass and ETT deposition significantly exceeded that of the IL configuration.

We can only speculate as to the mechanisms underlying the differences in time of nebulization and efficiency in the two configurations. They are most likely due to an interaction between the baffling system of the nebulizer and the differences in flow pattern between the two configurations. In the IL configuration, 10 L/min of air enter at the top of the nebulizer cap and exit through the side port of the nebulizer cap from whence the aerosol proceeds to the Y-piece. In the DY configuration, 10 L/min of air enter through the Y-piece now on the top of the nebulizer and only 0.5 L leaves the side port and enters the ETT. The remaining 9.5 L exit through the Y-piece at top of the nebulizer (Fig. 1). Thus, it is likely that more air flushes the nebulizer in the IL configuration, shortening the time to dryness. The particles leaving the ETT were also larger in the DY configuration consistent with the greater ETT deposition. This factor may also contribute to the greater inhaled mass.

The purpose of this study was to test the feasibility of bench testing neonatal ventilator systems. Although we did find increased delivery on the bench and in the lungs for the DY configuration, we are not able to recommend at this stage that ultrasonic nebulizers can be safely placed distal to the Y-piece in clinical practice. It is theoretically possible that sufficient mixing of exhaled gas with 'fresh' gas from the ventilator may occur to prevent problems with increased dead space, but clinical testing is required to confirm this suggestion. Any variation in nebulizer design should be formally tested for its effects on dead space if the nebulizer is to be placed distal to the Y-piece.

CONCLUSIONS

In neonatal ventilation, differences in aerosol delivery measured in an in-vitro bench model are found to be proportional to those detected in animals. Therefore, bench testing may have a useful role in preliminary testing of aerosol delivery systems and nebulized drugs in the setting of neonatal ventilation, provided that certain conditions are met. First, an intact pressurized circuit ventilating a test lung is necessary because the flow characteristics of the intact ventilator circuit are important determinants of nebulizer performance during neonatal ventilation. Second, the model must incorporate an appropriate ETT and Y-piece connector identical to those which will be used in the clinical study, as these are significant sites of deposition. Third, the compliance of test lungs should be tested by placement of a V_T monitor in-line and ensuring that appropriate neonatal ventilator settings will produce appropriate neonatal V_Ts.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Ms Cathy Markarian and Mr Robert Perry for technical assistance.

PRODUCT SOURCES

Nebulizer:
Aerosonic, DeVilbiss Health Care, Somerset PA

Ventilator:
BP 200, Bear Medical Systems, Riverside CA

Gamma Camera:
Picker Dyna Camera 4, Northford CT

Computer:
Advanced Medical Computer, Sunnyvale CA

Electronic Monitor:
NVM, Bear Medical Systems, Riverside CA

Plastic Surrogate Lung:
Bear Medical Systems, Riverside CA

Pneumotachograph:
Fleisch #1, Switzerland

Integrator and Recorder:
Grass Model P7, Grass Instruments, Quincy MA

Filter Paper:
Paper 5305, Hollingsworth and Vose, West Groton PA

Cotton Balls:
Johnson & Johnson Consumer Products, Del Rio TX

Cascade Impactor:
GS1, California Measurements, Sierra Madre CA

Radioisotope Calibrator:
CRC-10R, Capintec, Montvale NJ

REFERENCES

1. Smaldone GC. Drug delivery via aerosol systems: concept of "aerosol inhaled." J Aerosol Med 1991;4:229-235.
2. Smaldone GC, Perry RJ, Deutsch DG. Characteristics of nebulizers used in the treatment of AIDS-related *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia. J Aerosol Med 1988;1:113-126.
3. O'Riordan TG, Greco MJ, Perry RJ, Smaldone GC. Nebulizer function during mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;145:1117-1122.
4. Cameron D, Clasy M, Silverman M. Evaluation of nebulizers for use in neonatal ventilator circuits. Crit Care Med 1990;18:866-870.
5. Smaldone GC, Fuhrer J, Steigbigel RT, McPeck M. Factors determining pulmonary deposition of aerosolized pentamidine in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:727-737.
6. O'Riordan TG, Palmer LB, Smaldone GC. Optimizing aerosol delivery to mechanically ventilated patients. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1994;149:214-219.
7. Rau JL, Harwood RJ. Comparison of nebulizer delivery methods through a neonatal endotracheal tube: a bench study. Respir Care 1992;37:1233-1240.
8. Benson JM, Gal P, Kandrotass RJ. Watling SOM, Hansen, CJ. The impact of changing ventilator parameters on availability of nebulized drugs in an in vitro neonatal lung system. DICP Ann Pharmacother 1991;25:272-5.
9. Watterberg KL, Clark AR, Kelly HW, Murphy S. Delivery of aerosolized medication to intubated babies. Pediatr Pulmonol 1991;10:36-141.
10. Flavin M, MacDonald M, Dolovich M, Coates G, O'Brodovich H. Aerosol delivery to the rabbit lung with an infant ventilator. Pediatr Pulmonol 1986;2:35-39.
11. Howite JS, Gorvoy JD, Smaldone GC. Quantitative deposition of aerosolized gentamicin in cystic fibrosis. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:1445-1449.
12. Bennett WD, Smaldone GC. Human variation in peripheral airspace deposition of inhaled particles. J Appl Physiol 1987;62:1603-1610.
13. O'Doherty MJ, Thomas SHL, Page CJ, Treacher DF, Nunan TO. Delivery of a nebulized aerosol to a lung model during mechanical ventilation. Effect of ventilator settings and nebulizer type, position, and volume of fill. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;146:383-388.

The American Association for Respiratory Care Clinical Practice Guidelines

- **Metabolic Measurement Using Indirect Calorimetry during Mechanical Ventilation**
- **Transcutaneous Blood Gas Monitoring for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients**
- **Capillary Blood Gas Sampling for Neonatal and Pediatric Patients**
- **Body Plethysmography**

Respir Care 1994;39(12):1170-1190

Previously Published Guidelines:

- Ventilator Circuit Changes
- Delivery of Aerosols to the Upper Airway
- Neonatal Time-Triggered, Pressure-Limited, Time Cycled Mechanical Ventilation
- Application of Continuous Positive Airway Pressure to Neonates via Nasal Prongs or Nasopharyngeal Tube
- Surfactant Replacement Therapy
- Static Lung Volumes

Respir Care 1994;39(8):797-836

- Transport of the Mechanically Ventilated Patient
- Fiberoptic Bronchoscopy Assisting
- Resuscitation in Acute Care Hospitals
- Intermittent Positive Pressure Breathing
- Bland Aerosol Administration

Respir Care 1993;38(11):1169-1200

- Directed Cough
- Endotracheal Suctioning of Mechanically Ventilated Adults and Children with Artificial Airways
- In-Vitro pH and Blood Gas Analysis and Hemoximetry
- Single-Breath Carbon Monoxide Diffusing Capacity
- Use of Positive Airway Pressure Adjuncts to Bronchial Hygiene Therapy

Respir Care 1993;38(5):495-521

- Patient-Ventilator System Checks
- Humidification during Mechanical Ventilation
- Selection of Aerosol Delivery Device
- Nasotracheal Suctioning
- Bronchial Provocation
- Exercise Testing for Evaluation of Hypoxemia and/or Desaturation
- Arterial Blood Gas Sampling
- Oxygen Therapy in the Home or Extended Care Facility

Respir Care 1992;37(8):855,856,882-922

- Incentive Spirometry
- Pulse Oximetry
- Oxygen Therapy in the Acute Care Hospital
- Spirometry
- Postural Drainage Therapy

Respir Care 1991;36(12):1398-1426

AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

Metabolic Measurement using Indirect Calorimetry during Mechanical Ventilation

MMMV 1.0 PROCEDURE:

Metabolic measurements using indirect calorimetry for determination of oxygen consumption ($\dot{V}_{O_2}$), carbon dioxide production ($\dot{V}_{CO_2}$), respiratory quotient (RQ), and resting energy expenditure (REE) as an aid to patient nutritional assessment and management;[1-5] assessment of weaning success and outcome;[6-8] and assessment of the relationship between O_2 delivery ($\dot{D}_{O_2}$) and $\dot{V}_{O_2}$[1,9,10]—this guideline addresses metabolic measurement during mechanical ventilation.

MMMV 2.0 DESCRIPTION/DEFINITION:

Metabolic measurements use an indirect calorimeter to measure $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ and $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ via expired gas analysis. The measurements of $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ and $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ are used to calculate RQ ($\dot{V}_{CO_2}/\dot{V}_{O_2}$) and REE using the Weir equation:[11]

$$REE = [\dot{V}_{O_2}(3.941) + \dot{V}_{CO_2}(1.11)]\ 1440\ \text{min/day}.$$

The measurement of REE in mechanically ventilated patients has been shown to be more accurate than published formulas used to predict REE,[12-26] to reduce the incidence of overfeeding and underfeeding,[12-26] and to decrease costs associated with total parenteral nutrition (TPN).[26] Measurement of REE and RQ has been shown to be helpful in designing nutritional regimens to reduce $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and patients requiring mechanical ventilation.[13,27-32] Despite this evidence, studies demonstrating improved outcome, improved weaning success, or shorter ICU/hospital stay are lacking.

The objectives of metabolic measurements by indirect calorimetry are

2.1 To accurately determine the REE of mechanically ventilated patients to guide appropriate nutritional support;[12-26]
2.2 To accurately determine RQ to allow nutritional regimens to be tailored to patient needs;[12-32]
2.3 To accurately determine REE and RQ to monitor the adequacy and appropriateness of current nutritional support;[12-32]
2.4 To allow determination of substrate utilization when urinary nitrogen values are concomitantly measured;[33-35]
2.5 To determine the O_2 cost of breathing as a guide to the selection of ventilator mode, settings, and weaning strategies;[6-8]
2.6 To monitor the $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ as a guide to targeting adequate $\dot{D}_{O_2}$.[1]

MMMV 3.0 SETTING:

3.1 Mechanically ventilated patients
- **3.1.1** In the hospital
- **3.1.2** In the extended care facility

MMMV 4.0 INDICATIONS:

Metabolic measurements may be indicated

4.1 In patients with known nutritional deficits or derangements.[36] Multiple nutritional risk and stress factors that may considerably skew prediction by Harris-Benedict equation include
- **4.1.1** neurologic trauma,[18-25]
- **4.1.2** paralysis,[25]
- **4.1.3** COPD,[13,21,24,32]
- **4.1.4** acute pancreatitis,[16]
- **4.1.5** cancer with residual tumor burden,[14]
- **4.1.6** multiple trauma,[20,23,26]
- **4.1.7** amputations,[23]
- **4.1.8** patients in whom height and weight cannot be accurately obtained.[36]

4.1.9 patients who fail to respond adequately to estimated nutritional needs,[19]
4.1.10 new patients on home TPN,[36]
4.1.11 patients who are unable to eat and who require mechanical ventilation for > 5 days,[36]
4.1.12 transplant patients,[36]
4.1.13 morbidly obese patients,[36]
4.1.14 severely hypermetabolic or hypometabolic patients.

4.2 When the desire or perceived need is present to measure the O_2 cost of breathing in mechanically ventilated patients.[6-8]
4.3 When the need exists to assess the $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ in order to evaluate the hemodynamic support of mechanically ventilated patients.[1,9,10]

MMMV 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:

When a specific indication is present, there are no contraindications to performing a metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry unless short-term disconnection of ventilatory support for connection of measurement lines results in hypoxemia, bradycardia, or other adverse effects.[37,38]

MMMV 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:

Performing metabolic measurements using an indirect calorimeter is a safe, noninvasive procedure with few hazards or complications. Under certain circumstances and with particular equipment the following hazards/complications may be seen.

6.1 Closed circuit calorimeters may cause a reduction in alveolar ventilation due to increased compressible volume of the breathing circuit.[5,39-41]
6.2 Closed circuit calorimeters may decrease the trigger sensitivity of the ventilator and result in increased patient work of breathing.[5,39-41]
6.3 Short-term disconnection of the patient from the ventilator for connection of the indirect calorimetry apparatus may result in hypoxemia, bradycardia, and patient discomfort.[37,38]
6.4 Inappropriate calibration or system setup may result in erroneous results causing incorrect patient management.[1,4,5]

MMMV 7.0 LIMITATIONS OF PROCEDURE:

Limitations of the procedure include

7.1 Accurate assessment of REE and RQ may not be possible[42-44] because of patient condition or certain bedside procedures or activities.
7.2 Inaccurate measurement of REE and RQ may be caused by leaks of gas from the patient/ventilator system preventing collection of expired gases including:
7.2.1 leaks in the ventilator circuit,[1,4,5]
7.2.2 leaks around tracheal tube cuffs or uncuffed tubes,[1,4,5]
7.2.3 leaks through chest tubes or bronchopleural fistula.[45]
7.3 Inaccurate measurement of REE and RQ occurs during peritoneal and hemodialysis due to removal across the membrane of CO_2 that is not measured by the indirect calorimeter.[1,4,5,15]
7.4 Inaccurate measurement of REE and RQ during open circuit measurement may be caused by
7.4.1 instability of delivered oxygen concentration (F_{DO_2}) within a breath or breath to breath due to changes in source gas pressure and ventilator blender/mixing characteristics;[46,47]
7.4.2 $F_{DO_2} > 0.60$;[1,4,5,46,47]
7.4.3 inability to separate inspired and expired gases due to bias flow from flow-triggering systems, IMV systems, or specific ventilator characteristics;[1,4,5,48,49]
7.4.4 the presence of anesthetic gases or gases other than O_2, CO_2, and nitrogen in the ventilation system;[47]
7.4.5 the presence of water vapor resulting in sensor malfunction;
7.4.6 inappropriate calibration;[50]
7.4.7 connection of the indirect calorimeter to certain ventilators, with adverse effect on triggering mechanism, increased expiratory resistance, pressure measurement, or maintenance of the ventilator.[5]
7.4.8 total circuit flow exceeding internal gas flow of indirect calorimeter that incorporates the dilutional principle.[51]
7.5 Inaccurate measurement of REE and RQ

during closed circuit measurement may be caused by

7.5.1 short duration of the measurement period (a function of CO_2 absorber life and $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$) that may not allow REE state to be achieved;[5,39-41]

7.5.2 changes in functional residual capacity (FRC) resulting in changes in spirometer volume unassociated with $\dot{V}_{O_2}$;[5,39-41]

7.5.3 leaks drawing gas into the system during spontaneous breathing measurements that adds volume to the system and cause erroneously low $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ readings;[5,39-41]

7.5.4 increased compressible volume in the circuit that prevents adequate tidal volume delivery resulting in alveolar hypoventilation and changes in $\dot{V}_{CO_2}/\dot{V}_{O_2}$;[5,39-41]

7.5.5 increased compressible volume and resistance that results in difficulty triggering the ventilator and increased work of breathing.[5,39-41]

MMMV 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:

Metabolic measurements should be performed only on the order of a physician after review of indications (MMMV 4.0) and objectives.

MMMV 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF TEST QUALITY AND OUTCOME:

9.1 Test quality can be evaluated by determining whether

9.1.1 RQ is consistent with the patient's nutritional intake;[1-5]

9.1.2 RQ rests in the normal physiologic range (0.67 to 1.3);[1-5]

9.1.3 measured $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ is within ±10% of the mean value and measured $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ within ±6% of the mean value;[5]

9.1.4 REE has been defined as the value obtained with the patient lying in bed, awake and aware of his/her surroundings.[42] (This state should have been observed for 10-15 minutes associated with results in 9.1.3.)

9.2 Outcome may be assessed by the interpretation and confirmation/manipulation of patient nutritional support regimen by a physician or nutritionist based on the measurement results.

9.3 Outcome may be assessed by the successful manipulation of the mechanical ventilator settings and/or hemodynamic management based on the measurement of the $\dot{V}_{O_2}$.

MMMV 10.0 RESOURCES:

10.1 Indirect calorimeter, open- or closed-circuit design.

10.1.1 The calibration gas mixture should be relevant to the concentration of gas to be measured clinically.[1-5]

10.1.2 The indirect calorimeter should be calibrated on the day of measurement and more often if errors in measurement are suspected.[1-5]

10.1.3 When the measurement results are suspect and/or when repeated calibration attempts are marked by instability, the indirect calorimeter may be tested via an independent test method (burning ethanol or other substance with a known RQ or adding known flows of CO_2 and nitrogen to simulate $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ and $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$).[52-55] As a simple test, ventilation of a leak-free system should yield $\dot{V}_{O_2}$ and $\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ values of near 0. Routinely scheduled measurement of normal control subjects (volunteers) may be useful.

10.2 A method of stabilizing F_{DO_2} during open-circuit measurements should be available and may include

10.2.1 an air-oxygen blender connected between the gas source and the ventilator inlets for high pressure gas;[46]

10.2.2 an inspiratory mixing chamber between the ventilator main flow circuit and the humidifier.[56]

10.3 An isolation valve, double-piloted exhalation valve, or other device to separate inspiratory and expiratory flow should be incorporated when using continuous flow in the ventilator circuit.[48]

10.4 Personnel: Due to the level of technical and patient assessment skills required, metabolic measurements using indirect calorimeters should be performed by individuals trained in and with the demonstrated and documented ability to

10.4.1 calibrate, operate, and maintain an

indirect calorimeter;

10.4.2 operate a mechanical ventilator, including knowledge of the air-oxygen blending system, the spontaneous breathing mechanisms, and the alarm and monitoring functions;

10.4.3 recognize metabolic measurement values within the normal physiologic range and evaluate the results in light of the patient's current nutritional and clinical status;

10.4.4 assess patient hemodynamic and ventilatory status and make recommendations on appropriate corrective/therapeutic maneuvers to improve or reverse the patient's clinical course.

A relevant credential (eg, RRT, CRTT, RN, or RPFT) is desirable.

MMMV 11.0 MONITORING:

11.1 The following should be evaluated during the performance of a metabolic measurement to ascertain the validity of the results:

11.1.1 clinical observation of the resting state (MMMV 9.1.4);

11.1.2 patient comfort and movement during testing;

11.1.3 values in concert with the clinical situation;

11.1.4 equipment function;

11.1.5 results within the specifications listed in 9.1.3.

11.2 Measurement data should include a statement of test quality and list the current nutritional support, ventilator settings, and vital signs.

MMMV 12.0 FREQUENCY:

12.1 Metabolic measurements should be repeated according to the clinical status of the patient and indications for performing the test. The literature suggests that more frequent measurement may be necessary in patients with a rapidly changing clinical course as recognized by

12.1.1 hemodynamic instability,[42]

12.1.2 spiking fevers.[42]

12.2 Patients in the immediate postoperative period and those being weaned from mechanical ventilation may also need more frequent measurement.[42]

MMMV 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:

Metabolic measurements using indirect calorimetry are relatively safe procedures, but a remote possibility of cross-contamination exists either via patient-patient or patient-caregiver interface. The following guidelines should be followed when a metabolic measurement is performed.

13.1 Universal Precautions should be exercised whenever equipment (isolation valves) is contaminated with blood or other body fluids.[57]

13.2 Appropriate use of barriers and handwashing is recommended.

13.3 Tubing used to direct expiratory gas from the ventilator to the indirect calorimeter should be disposed of or cleaned between patients.

13.4 Connections used in the inspiratory limb of the circuit proximal to the humidifier should be wiped clean between patients; equipment distal to the humidifier should be disposed of or subjected to high-level disinfection between patients.

13.5 Bacteria filters may be used to protect equipment in both the inspired and expired lines, but caution should be used that moisture does not increase filter resistance resulting in poor gas sampling flow or increased resistance to exhalation.

Mechanical Ventilation Guidelines Committee:

Robert S Campbell RRT, Chairman, Tampa FL
Richard D Branson RRT, Cincinnati OH
William "Chuck" Burke PhD RRT, Indianapolis IN
Jack Covington RRT, San Francisco CA

REFERENCES

1. Weissman C. Measuring oxygen uptake in the clinical setting. In: Bryan-Brown CW, Ayres SM, eds. Oxygen transport and utilization. Fullerton CA: Society of Critical Care Medicine, 1987:25-64.
2. Elia M, Livesey G. Theory and validity of indirect

calorimetry during net lipid synthesis. Am J Clin Nutr 1988;47:591-607.
3. Ferrannini E. The theoretical bases of indirect calorimetry: a review. Metabolism 1988;37:287-301.
4. Kemper MA. Indirect calorimetry equipment and practical considerations of measurement. In: Weissman C, ed. Problems in respiratory care: nutrition and respiratory disease. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1989;2:479-490.
5. Branson RD. The measurement of energy expenditure: instrumentation, practical considerations, and clinical application. Respir Care 1990;35:640-659.
6. McDonald NJ, Lavelle P, Gallacher WN, Harpin RP. Use of the oxygen cost of breathing as an index of weaning ability from mechanical ventilation. Intensive Care Med 1988;14:50-54.
7. Lewis WD, Chwals W, Benotti PN, Lakshman K, O'Donnell C, Blackburn GL, Bistrian, et al. Bedside assessment of the work of breathing. Crit Care Med 1988;16:117-122.
8. Shikora SA, Bistrian BR, Borlase BC, Blackburn GL, Stone MD, Benotti PN. Work of breathing: reliable predictor of weaning and extubation. Crit Care Med 1990;18:157-162.
9. Danek SJ, Lynch JP, Weg JG, Dantzker DR. The dependance of oxygen uptake on oxygen delivery in the adult respiratory distress syndrome. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;122:387-395.
10. Kaufman BS, Rackow EC, Falk JL. The relationship between oxygen delivery and consumption during fluid resuscitation of hypovolemic and septic shock. Chest 1984;85:336-340.
11. deV Weir JB. New methods for calculating metabolic rate with special reference to protein metabolism. J Physiol 1949;109:1-9.
12. Daly JM, Heymsfield SB, Head CA, Harvey LP, Nixon DW, Katzeff H, Grossman GD. Human energy requirements: overestimation by widely used prediction equation. Am J Clin Nutr 1985;42:1170-1174.
13. Wilson DO, Rogers RM, Openbrier D. Nutritional aspects of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Clin Chest Med 1986;7:643-656.
14. Nixon DW, Kutner M, Heymsfield S, Foltz AT, Carty C, Seitz S, et al. Resting energy expenditure in lung and colon cancer. Metabolism 1988;37:1059-1064.
15. Blumberg A, Keller G. Oxygen consumption during maintenance hemodialysis. Nephron 1979;23:276-281.
16. Long CL. Energy balance and carbohydrate metabolism in infection and sepsis. Am J Clin Nutr 1977;30:1301-1310.
17. Curreri PW, Richmond D, Marvin J, Baxter CR. Dietary requirements of patients with major burns. J Am Diet Assoc 1974;65:415-417.
18. Clifton GL, Robertson CS, Grossman RG, Hodge S, Foltz R, Garza C. The metabolic response to severe head injury. J Neurosurg 1984;60:687-696.
19. Mullen JL. Consequences of malnutrition in the surgical patient. Surg Clin North Am 1981;61:465-487.
20. Weissman C, Kemper MC, Askanazi J, Hyman AI, Kinney JM. Resting metabolic rate of the critically ill patient: measured versus predicted. Anesthesiology 1986; 64:673-679.
21. Branson RD, Hurst JM, Warner BW, Bower RH, Arita A. Measured versus predicted energy expenditure in mechanically ventilated patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Respir Care 1987;32:748-752.
22. Schane J, Goede M, Silverstein P. Comparison of energy expenditure measurement techniques in severely burned patients. J Burn Care Rehabil 1987;8:366-370.
23. Hunter DC, Jaksic T, Lewis D, Benotti PN, Blackburn GL, Bistrian BR. Resting energy expenditure in the critically ill: estimations versus measurement. Br J Surg 1988;75:875-878.
24. Moore JA, Angelillo VA. Equations for the prediction of resting energy expenditure in chronic obstructive lung disease. Chest 1988;94:1260-1263.
25. Clifton GL, Robertson CS, Choi SC. Assessment of nutritional requirements of head-injured patients. J Neurosurg 1986;64:895-901.
26. Foster GD, Knox LS, Dempsey DT, Mullen JL. Caloric requirements in total parenteral nutrition. J Am Coll Nutr 1987;6:231-253.
27. Askanazi J, Nordenstrom J, Rosenbaum SH, Elwyn DH, Hyman AI, Carpentier YA, Kinney JM. Nutrition for the patient with respiratory failure: glucose vs fat. Anesthesiology 1981;54:373-377.
28. Mohsenin V, Ferranti R, Loke JS. Nutrition for the respiratory insufficient patient. Eur Respir J Suppl 1989;7: 663S-665S.
29. Askanazi J, Rosenbaum SH, Hyman AI, Silverberg PA, Milic-Emili J, Kinney JM. Respiratory changes induced by the large glucose loads of total parenteral nutrition. JAMA 1980;243:1444-1447.
30. Covelli HD, Balck JW, Olsen MS, Beekman JF. Respiratory failure precipitated by high carbohydrate loads. Ann Intern Med 1981;95:579-581.
31. Dark DS, Pingleton SK, Kerby GR. Hypercapnia during weaning: a complication of nutritional support. Chest 1985;88:141-143.
32. Angelillo VA, Bedi S, Durfee D, Dahl J, Patterson AJ, O'Donohue WJ Jr. Effects of low and high carbohydrate feedings in ambulatory patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and chronic hypercapnia. Ann Intern Med 1985;103:883-885.
33. Livesey G, Elia M. Estimation of energy expenditure, net carbohydrate utilization, and net fat oxidation and synthesis by indirect calorimetry: evaluation of errors with special reference to the detailed composition of fuels. Am J Clin Nutr 1988;47:608-628.
34. Elia M, Livesey G. Theory and validity of indirect calorimetry during net lipid synthesis. Am J Clin Nutr 1988;47:591-607.
35. Bursztein S, Saphar S, Singer P, Elwyn DHet al. A mathematical analysis of indirect calorimetry measurements in acutely ill patients. Am J Clin Nutr 1989;50:227-230.
36. Lacy J, Orr M, Branson RD, Bower RH. Protocol for the use of indirect calorimetry to determine energy require-

ments of patients requiring nutritional support (abstract). 14th Clinical Proceedings of American Society of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, 1989:439.
37. De Campo T, Civetta JM. The effect of short term discontinuation of high-level PEEP in patients with acute respiratory failure. Crit Care Med 1979;7:47-49.
38. Craig KC, Benson MS, Pierson DJ. Prevention of arterial oxygen desaturation during closed-airway endotracheal suction: effect of ventilator mode. Respir Care 1984;29 (10):1013-1018.
39. Raurich JM, Ibanez J, Marse P. Validation of a new closed circuit indirect calorimetry method compared with the open Douglas bag method. Intensive Care Med 1989;15:274-278.
40. Branson RD, Hurst JM, Davis K Jr, Pulsfort R. A laboratory evaluation of the Biergy VVR calorimeter. Respir Care 1988;33:341-347.
41. Keppler T, Dechert RE, Arnoldi DK, Filius R, Bartlett RH. Evaluations of the Waters MRM-6000 and Biergy VVR closed-circuit indirect calorimeters. Respir Care 1989;34:28-35.
42. Weissman C, Kemper M, Hyman AI. Variation in the resting metabolic rate of the mechanically ventilated critically ill patients. Anesth Analg 1989;68:457-461.
43. Weissman C, Kemper MC, Damask MC, Askanazi J, Hyman AI, Kinney JM. The effect of routine intensive care interactions on metabolic rate. Chest 1984;86:815-818.
44. Feenstra BWA, van Lanschot JJB, Vermeij CG, Bruining HA. Artifacts in the assessment of metabolic gas exchange. Intensive Care Med 1986;12:312-316.
45. Bishop MJ, Benson MS, Pierson DJ. Carbon dioxide excretion via bronchopleural fistulas in adult respiratory distress syndrome. Chest 1987;91:400-402.
46. Browning JA, Linberg SE, Turney SZ, Chodoff P. The effects of a fluctuating F_{IO_2} on metabolic measurements in mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1982; 10:82-85.
47. Ultman JS, Bursztein S. Analysis of error in the determination of respiratory gas exchange at varying F_{IO_2}. J Appl Physiol 1981;50:210-216.
48. Head CA, Grossman GD, Jordan JC, Heppler EL, Heymsfield SB. A valve system for the accurate measurement of energy expenditure in mechanically ventilated patients. Respir Care 1985;30:969-973.
49. Nelson LD, Anderson HB, Garcia H. Clinical validation of a new metabolic monitor suitable for use in critically ill patients. Crit Care Med 1987;15:951-957.
50. Norton AC. Accuracy in pulmonary measurement. Respir Care 1979;24:131-137.
51. Rasanen J. Continuous breathing circuit flow and tracheal tube cuff leak: sources of error during pediatric indirect calorimetry. Crit Care Med 1992;20(9):1335-1340.
52. Damask MC, Weissman C, Askanazi J, Hyman AI, Rosenbaum SH, Kinney JM. A systematic method for validation of gas exchange measurements. Anesthesiology 1982;57:213-218.
53. Nunn JF, Makita K, Royston B. Validation of oxygen consumption measurements during artificial ventilation. J Appl Physiol 1989;67:2129-2134.
54. Makita K, Nunn JF, Royston B. Evaluation of metabolic measuring instruments for use in critically ill patients. Crit Care Med 1990;18:638-644.
55. Takala J, Keinanen O, Vaisanen P, Kari A. Measurement of gas exchange in intensive care: laboratory and clinical validation of a new device. Crit Care Med 1989;17: 1041-1047.
56. Branson RD, Hurst JM, Davis K Jr, Bower RH. Comparison of open circuit and closed circuit methods for measuring oxygen consumption (abstract). American Society of Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition, Miami FL, 1989.
57. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B, and other bloodborne pathogens in health care settings. MMWR 1988;37(24): 377-382,387-388.

AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

Transcutaneous Blood Gas Monitoring for Neonatal & Pediatric Patients

TCM 1.0 PROCEDURE:

Transcutaneous monitoring of oxygen (P_{tcO_2}) and carbon dioxide (P_{tcCO_2}) in neonates, infants, and small children—this guideline does not address the application of transcutaneous monitoring in adults and older children.

TCM 2.0 DESCRIPTION/DEFINITION:

Transcutaneous monitoring measures skin-surface P_{O_2} and P_{CO_2} to provide estimates of arterial partial pressure of oxygen and carbon dioxide (P_{aO_2} and P_{aCO_2}). The devices induce hyperperfusion by local heating of the skin and measure the partial pressure of oxygen and carbon dioxide electrochemically.[1,7]

TCM 3.0 SETTING:

Transcutaneous monitoring may be performed by trained personnel in a variety of settings including (but not limited to) hospitals, extended care facilities, and patient transport.[8]

TCM 4.0 INDICATIONS:

4.1 The need to monitor the adequacy of arterial oxygenation and/or ventilation[9,10]

4.2 The need to quantitate the response to diagnostic and therapeutic interventions as evidenced by P_{tcO_2} and/or P_{tcCO_2} values[9-11]

TCM 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:

In patients with poor skin integrity and/or adhesive allergy, transcutaneous monitoring may be relatively contraindicated.[9]

TCM 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:

P_{tcO_2} and/or P_{tcCO_2} monitoring is considered a safe procedure, but because of device limitations, false-negative and false-positive results may lead to inappropriate treatment of the patient.[10,12,13] In addition, tissue injury may occur at the measuring site (eg, erythema, blisters, burns, skin tears).[1,8,10]

TCM 7.0 DEVICE LIMITATIONS/VALIDATION OF RESULTS:

P_{tcO_2} is an indirect measurement of P_{aO_2} and, like P_{aO_2}, does not reflect oxygen delivery or oxygen content. Complete assessment of oxygen delivery requires knowledge of hemoglobin, saturation, and cardiac output. In a similar way, P_{tcCO_2} is an indirect measurement of P_{aCO_2} but knowledge of delivery and content is not necessary to use P_{tcCO_2} as an indicator of adequacy of ventilation.

7.1 Factors, agents, or situations that may affect readings, limit precision, or limit the performance or application of a transcutaneous monitor include

7.1.1 Technical:

7.1.1.1 The procedure may be labor intensive, although newer designs make application quicker and simpler.[14]

7.1.1.2 Prolonged stabilization time is required following electrode placement.[14,15]

7.1.1.3 Manufacturers state that electrodes must be heated to produce valid results; however, clinical studies suggest that valid results may be obtained with P_{tcCO_2} electrodes operated at lower than recommended temperatures or with no heat.[16]

7.1.1.4 The theoretical basis for mandatory heating of the P_{tcO_2} electrode is established.[2]

7.1.1.5 Improper calibration is possible and may be difficult to detect.[17]

7.1.2 Clinical: The following factors may increase the discrepancy between arterial and transcutaneous values—

7.1.2.1 The presence of hyperoxemia

(P_{aO_2} > 100 torr),[12,13]

7.1.2.2 The presence of a hypoperfused state (shock, acidosis),[8,18,19]

7.1.2.3 Improper electrode placement or application,[8]

7.1.2.4 Vasoactive drugs,[19]

7.1.2.5 The nature of the patient's skin and subcutaneous tissue (skinfold thickness, edema).[8,20]

7.2 Validation: Arterial blood gas values should be compared to transcutaneous readings taken at the time of arterial sampling in order to validate the transcutaneous values. This validation should be performed initially and periodically as dictated by the patient's clinical state.[8,17]

7.2.1 During validation studies in patients with functional shunts, electrode site and arterial sampling site should be on the same side of the shunt.[10,21]

7.2.2 When disparity exists between transcutaneous and arterial values and the clinical presentation of the patient, possible causes should be explored before results are reported. Discrepancies may be reduced by monitoring at alternate sites, recalibration, or appropriate substitution of instruments. If such steps do not remedy the disparity, transcutaneous results should not be reported; instead a statement describing the corrective action should be included in the patient's chart and some other mode of monitoring should be established (eg, pulse oximetry and/or arterial blood analysis). The absolute limits that constitute unacceptable disparity vary with patient condition and specific device. Clinical judgment must be exercised.

7.3 To help assure consistency of care based on transcutaneous blood gas readings, the operator should verify that

7.3.1 High- and low-limit alarms are set appropriately;

7.3.2 Appropriate electrode temperature is set;

7.3.3 Electrode placement is appropriate and systematic electrode-site change occurs;

7.3.4 Specific manufacturer's recommendations for maintenance, operation, and safety are complied with.

TCM 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:

8.1 When direct measurement of arterial blood is not available or accessible in a timely fashion, P_{tcO_2} and/or P_{tcCO_2} measurements may temporarily suffice if the limitations of the data are appreciated.[9]

8.2. Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring is appropriate for continuous and prolonged monitoring (eg, during mechanical ventilation, CPAP, and supplemental oxygen administration).[9,10]

8.3 P_{tcO_2} values can be used for diagnostic purposes as in the assessment of functional shunts (eg, persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, PPHN, or persistent fetal circulation[21-23]) or to determine the response to oxygen challenge in the assessment of congenital heart disease.[21-23]

TCM 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF OUTCOME:

9.1 Results should reflect the patient's clinical condition (ie, validate the basis for ordering the monitoring).[3,5,7]

9.2 Documentation of results, therapeutic intervention (or lack of), and/or clinical decisions based on the transcutaneous measurements should be noted in the medical record.

TCM 10.0 RESOURCES:

10.1 Equipment: Transcutaneous monitor, electrodes, calibration gases, and associated expendable supplies—the monitor should have been validated by the manufacturer, using appropriate quality control procedures and clinical reliability studies.

10.2 Personnel: Licensed or credentialed respiratory care practitioners or other credentialed persons with equivalent training and demonstrated ability to exercise the necessary clinical judgment, assess the patient, and perform the essential tasks of calibration and application[8]

TCM 11.0 MONITORING:

The monitoring schedule of patient and equipment during transcutaneous monitoring should be integrated into patient assessment and vital signs determinations. Results should be documented in the patient's medical record and should detail the condi-

tions under which the readings were obtained:

11.1 The date and time of measurement, transcutaneous reading, patient's position, respiratory rate, and activity level;
11.2 Inspired oxygen concentration or supplemental oxygen flow, specifying the type of oxygen delivery device;
11.3 Mode of ventilatory support, ventilator, or CPAP settings;
11.4 Electrode placement site, electrode temperature, and time of placement;
11.5 Results of simultaneously obtained P_{aO_2}, P_{aCO_2}, and pH when available;
11.6 Clinical appearance of patient, subjective assessment of perfusion, pallor, and skin temperature.

TCM 12.0 FREQUENCY:

Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring should be continuous for development of trending data. So-called spot checks are not appropriate.[3,9,10]

TCM 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:

No special precautions are necessary, but Universal Precautions (as described by the Centers for Disease Control) are recommended.[24,25]

13.1 The device probe should be cleaned between patient applications according to manufacturer recommendations.
13.2 The external portion of the monitor should be cleaned according to manufacturer's recommendations whenever the device remains in a patient's room for prolonged periods, when soiled, or when it has come in contact with potentially transmissible organisms.

Perinatal-Pediatrics Guidelines Committee:

Lynne K Bower RRT, Chairman, Boston MA
Sherry L Barnhart RRT, Mattoon IL
Peter Betit BS RRT, Boston MA
Barbara Hendon BA RCP RRT, Wylie TX
Joanne Masi-Lynch BS RRT, Salt Lake City UT
Barbara G Wilson MEd RRT, Durham NC

REFERENCES

1. Löfgren O, Jacobson J. The influence of different electrode temperatures on the recorded transcutaneous P_{O_2} level. Pediatrics 1979;64(6):892-897.
2. Lübbers DW. Theoretical basis of the transcutaneous blood gas measurements. Crit Care Med 1981;9(10): 721-733.
3. Huch R, Huch A, Albani M, Gabriel M, Schulte FJ, Wolf H, et al. Transcutaneous P_{O_2} monitoring in routine management of infants and children with cardiorespiratory problems. Pediatric 1976;57(5):681-690.
4. Monaco F, Nickerson BG, McQuitty JC. Continuous transcutaneous oxygen and carbon dioxide monitoring in the pediatric ICU. Crit Care Med 1982;10(11):765-766.
5. Yahav J, Mindorff C, Levison H. The validity of the transcutaneous oxygen tension method in children with cardiorespiratory problems. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981;124: 586-587.
6. Yip WC, Tay JS, Wong HB, Ho TF. Reliability of transcutaneous oxygen monitoring of critically ill children in a general pediatric unit. Clin Pediatr Phila 1983;22(6): 431-435.
7. Fenner A, Muller R, Busse HG, Junge M, Wolfsdorf J. Transcutaneous determination of arterial oxygen tension. Pediatrics 1975;55(2):224-231.
8. American Academy of Pediatrics, Task Force on Transcutaneous Oxygen Monitors. Report of consensus meeting, Dec 5-6, 1986. Pediatrics 1989;83(1):122-126.
9. Martin. RJ. Transcutaneous monitoring: instrumentation and clinical applications. Respir Care 1990;35(6):577-583.
10. Lucey JF. Clinical uses of transcutaneous oxygen monitoring. Adv Pediatr 1981;28:27-56.
11. Severinghaus JW. Transcutaneous blood gas analysis. Respir Care 1982;27(2):152-159.
12. Huch R, Lübbers W, Huch A. Reliability of transcutaneous monitoring of arterial P_{O_2} in newborn infants. Arch Dis Child 1974;49:213-218.
13. Martin RJ, Robertson SS, Hopple MM. Relationship between transcutaneous and arterial oxygen tension in sick neonates during mild hyperoxemia. Crit Care Med 1982; 10(10):670-672.
14. Kesten S, Chapman KR, Rebuck AS. Response characteristics of a dual transcutaneous oxygen/carbon dioxide monitoring system. Chest 1991;99:1211-1215.
15. Marsden D, Chiu MC, Paky F, Helms P. Transcutaneous oxygen and carbon dioxide monitoring in intensive care. Arch Dis Child 1985;60:1158-1161.
16. McLellan PA, Goldstein RS, Ramcharan V, Rebuck AS. Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring. Am Rev Respir Dis 1981;124:199-201.
17. Cassady G. Transcutaneous monitoring in the newborn infant. J Pediatr 1983;103(6):837-848.
18. Versmold HT, Linderkamp O, Holzmann M, Stohhacker I, Riegel K. Transcutaneous monitoring of P_{O_2} in newborn infants: where are the limits? Influence of blood pressure, blood volume, blood flow, viscosity, and acid

base state. Birth Defects 1979;15(4):285-294.
19. Peabody JL, Gregory GA, Willis MM, Tooley WH. Transcutaneous oxygen tension in sick infants. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;118:83-87.
20. Mok J, Pintar M, Benson L, McLaughlin FJ, Levison H. Evaluation of noninvasive measurements of oxygenation in stable infants. Crit Care Med 1986;14(11):960-963.
21. Pearlman SA, Maisels MJ. Preductal and postductal transcutaneous oxygen tension measurements in premature newborns with hyaline membrane disease. Pediatrics 1989;83(1):98-100.
22. Tateishi K, Yamanouchi I. Noninvasive transcutaneous oxygen pressure diagnosis of reversed ductal shunts in cyanotic heart disease. Pediatrics 1980;66(1):22-25.
23. de Geeter B, Messer J, Benoit M, Willard D. Right-to-left ductal shunt and transcutaneous P_{O_2}. Birth Defects 1979;15(4):387-392.
24. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-382,387-388.
25. Boyce JM, White RL, Spruill EY, Wall M. Cost-effective application of the Centers for Disease Control Guideline for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia. Am J Infect Control 1985;13:228-232.

ADDITIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

Guilfoile TD. Bedside monitoring of the acutely ill neonate: the impact of transcutaneous monitoring on neonatal intensive care. Respir Care 1986;31(6):507-513.

Herrell N, Martin RJ, Pultusker M, Lough M, Fanaroff A. Optimal temperature for the measurement of transcutaneous carbon dioxide tension in the neonate. J Pediatr 1980;97(1): 114-117.

Huch A, Huch R, Schneider H, Peabody J. Experience with transcutaneous P_{O_2} (tcP_{O_2}) monitoring of mother, fetus and newborn. J Perinat Med 1980;8:51-72.

James LS. Development and clinical evaluation of blood gas sensors for continuous monitoring (adult and neonate), bulletin 1-49. U.S. Dept of Commerce National Technical Information Service 1976.

Kilbride HW, Merenstein GB. Continuous transcutaneous oxygen monitoring in acutely ill preterm infants. Crit Care Med 1984;12(2):121-124.

Palmisano BW, Severinghaus. Clinical accuracy of a combined transcutaneous P_{O_2}-P_{CO_2} electrode. Crit Care Med 1984;12:276.

Peabody JL, Willis MM, Gregory GA, Tooley WH, Lucey JF. Clinical limitations and advantages of transcutaneous oxygen electrodes. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand Suppl 1978;68:76-82.

Rome ES, Stork EK, Carlo WA, Martin RJ. Limitations of transcutaneous P_{O_2} and P_{CO_2} monitoring in infants with bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Pediatrics 1984;74:217-220.

Schlueter MA, Tooley WH. Right to left shunt through the ductus arteriosus in newborn infants. Pediatr Res 1980;8:354.

Tremper KK, Waxman K, Bowman R, Shoemaker WC. Continuous transcutaneous oxygen monitoring during respiratory failure, cardiac decompensation, cardiac arrest, and CPR. Crit Care Med 1980;8(7):377-381.

Tremper KK, Waxman K, Shoemaker WC. Use of transcutaneous oxygen sensors to titrate PEEP. Ann Surg 1981;193(2):206-209.

Wimberley PD, Frederiksen PS, Witt-Hansen J, Melberg SG, Friis-Hansen B. Evaluation of a transcutaneous oxygen and carbon dioxide monitor in a neonatal intensive care department. Acta Paediatr Scand 1985;74:352-359.

AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

Capillary Blood Gas Sampling for Neonatal & Pediatric Patients

CBGS 1.0 PROCEDURE:

Capillary sampling for blood gas analysis

CBGS 2.0 DESCRIPTION:

Capillary blood gas (CBG) samples may be used in place of samples from arterial punctures or indwelling arterial catheters to estimate acid-base balance (pH) and adequacy of ventilation (P_{aCO_2}).[1-3] Capillary P_{O_2} measurements are of little value in estimating arterial oxygenation.[4-6]

A puncture or small incision is made with a lancet or similar device into the cutaneous layer of the skin at a highly vascularized area (heel, finger, toe). (The lancet may be used freehand or as part of a device that limits puncture depth.) To accelerate blood flow and reduce the difference between the arterial and venous gas pressures, the area is warmed prior to the puncture. As the blood flows freely from the puncture site, the sample is collected in a heparinized glass capillary tube.[7-9]

CBGS 3.0 SETTING:

Capillary sampling may be performed by trained health care personnel in

3.1 Acute care hospitals,
3.2 Clinics,
3.3 Physician offices,
3.4 Extended care facilities,
3.5 Homes.

CBGS 4.0 INDICATIONS:

Capillary blood gas sampling is indicated when

4.1 Arterial blood gas analysis is indicated but arterial access is not available.
4.2 Noninvasive monitor readings are abnormal: transcutaneous values, end-tidal CO_2, pulse oximetry.
4.3 Assessment of initiation, administration, or change in therapeutic modalities (ie, mechanical ventilation) is indicated.
4.4 A change in patient status is detected by history or physical assessment.
4.5 Monitoring the severity and progression of a documented disease process is desirable.

CBGS 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:

5.1 Capillary punctures should not be performed
5.1.1 at or through the following sites:[10]
5.1.1.1 posterior curvature of the heel, as the device may puncture the bone;[11]
5.1.1.2 the heel of a patient who has begun walking and has callus development;[12]
5.1.1.3 the fingers of neonates (to avoid nerve damage);[13]
5.1.1.4 previous puncture sites;[14,15]
5.1.1.5 inflamed, swollen, or edematous tissues;[14,15]
5.1.1.6 cyanotic or poorly perfused tissues;[14,15]
5.1.1.7 localized areas of infection;[14,15]
5.1.1.8 peripheral arteries.
5.1.2 on patients less than 24 hours old, due to poor peripheral perfusion;[1]
5.1.3 when there is need for direct analysis of oxygenation;[1-3]
5.1.4 when there is need for direct analysis of arterial blood;
5.2 Relative contraindications include
5.2.1 peripheral vasoconstriction;[1]
5.2.2 polycythemia (due to shorter clotting times);[1]

5.2.3 hypotension may be a relative contraindication.[1]

CBGS 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:

6.1 Infection
- **6.1.1** Introduction of contagion at sampling site and consequent infection in patient, including calcaneus osteomyelitis[9,16] and cellulitis
- **6.1.2** Inadvertent puncture or incision and consequent infection in sampler

6.2 Burns
6.3 Hematoma
6.4 Bone calcification[14]
6.5 Nerve damage[9]
6.6 Bruising
6.7 Scarring[12]
6.8 Puncture of posterior medial aspect of heel may result in tibial artery laceration[11]
6.9 Pain
6.10 Bleeding
6.11 Inappropriate patient management may result from reliance on capillary P_{O_2} values.[17,18]

CBGS 7.0 LIMITATIONS OF METHOD/ VALIDATION OF RESULTS:

7.1 Limitations
- **7.1.1** Inadequate warming of the site prior to a puncture may result in capillary values that correlate poorly with arterial pH and P_{CO_2} values.[19,20]
- **7.1.2** Undue squeezing of the puncture site may result in venous and lymphatic contamination of the sample.[14]
- **7.1.3** A second puncture may be needed to obtain an adequate amount of blood for analysis.
- **7.1.4** Variability in capillary P_{O_2} values precludes using these samples for assessing oxygenation status.[1,2,3,18,20,21]

7.2 Validation of results
- **7.2.1** Sample must be anticoagulated and obtained anaerobically with capillary tube filled completely and air bubbles expelled immediately. Sample should be immediately chilled or analyzed within 10-15 minutes if left at room temperature.[22]
- **7.2.2** A respiratory assessment of the patient should be documented in the medical record at the time a capillary sample is performed (See 11.0 Monitoring).
- **7.2.3** An arterial sample may be analyzed to compare with the capillary pH and P_{CO_2} values.

CBGS 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:

Capillary blood gas sampling is an intermittent procedure and should be performed when a documented need exists. Routine or standing orders for capillary puncture are not recommended. The following may assist the clinician in assessing the need for capillary blood gas sampling:

8.1 History and physical assessment;[23]
8.2 Noninvasive respiratory monitoring values
- **8.2.1** Pulse oximetry;[23]
- **8.2.2** Transcutaneous values;
- **8.2.3** End-tidal CO_2 values;

8.3 Patient response to initiation, administration, or change in therapeutic modalities;[23-25]
8.4 Lack of arterial access for blood gas sampling.[1-3]

CBGS 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF TEST QUALITY:

Sampling of capillary blood is useful for patient management only if the procedure is carried out according to an established quality assurance program. The validity of the test may be jeopardized if any of the following occur:[10,26,27]

9.1 The sample is contaminated by air;
9.2 Clots prevent accurate analysis;
9.3 Quantity of sample is insufficient for analysis;
9.4 Analysis of sample is delayed (> 15 minutes for samples at room temperature, or > 60 minutes for samples held at 4°C).[22]

CBGS 10.0 RESOURCES:

10.1 Equipment: Single puncture—preheparinized glass capillary (eg, Natelson) tubes, metal fleas, magnet, clay/wax sealant or caps,

lancet to make incision < 2.5 mm in depth, gauze/cotton balls, ice, gloves, skin antiseptic, warm and moist cloth/diaper or commercially prepared warming pads (42°C), sharps container, labeling materials[10]

10.2 Personnel: Capillary sampling must be performed under direction of a physician. Individuals who perform capillary sampling should have a background in mathematics and science and specific training in capillary blood sampling and related procedures. They must competently demonstrate capillary blood gas sampling and undergo periodic skills assessment of technique: implementation of Universal Precautions; success at obtaining a quality sample; preparation, storage and transport of specimens; documentation; and post sampling site care and/or complication rate.[10,28,29]

CBGS 11.0 MONITORING:

The following should be monitored and documented in the medical record as part of the capillary sampling procedure:

11.1 F_{IO_2} or prescribed oxygen flow;[10,23,28,29]
11.2 Oxygen administration device or ventilator settings;[10,23,27,28]
11.3 Free flow of blood without the necessity for 'milking' the foot or finger to obtain a sample;[10,14]
11.4 Presence/absence of air or clot in sample;[10,26,27]
11.5 Patient temperature, respiratory rate, position or level of activity, and clinical appearance;[10,27]
11.6 Ease or difficulty of obtaining sample;[10,27,28]
11.7 Appearance of puncture site;[14,15]
11.8 Complications or adverse reactions to the procedure;
11.9 Date, time, and sampling site;[10]
11.10 Noninvasive monitoring values: transcutaneous O_2 & CO_2, end-tidal CO_2, and/or pulse oximetry;[23]
11.11 Results of the blood gas analysis.

CBGS 12.0 FREQUENCY:

The frequency of capillary sampling should depend upon the clinical status of the patient and the indications for performing the procedure, not upon a prescribed frequency.

12.1 Those patients requiring frequent CBGs should be considered candidates for placement of an indwelling arterial access for blood gas sampling or noninvasive monitoring techniques, to limit trauma associated with repeated punctures.

12.2 Repeated puncture of the foot/finger increases the risk of scarring or serious laceration. Care should be exercised to alternate the sampling site for patients requiring multiple punctures.[14,15]

CBGS 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:

13.1 Universal Precautions as published by the Centers for Disease Control and directives issued by the Department of Labor concerning occupational exposure to blood-borne pathogens must be followed during capillary sampling.[29,30]

13.2 Aseptic techniques should be employed due to the invasive nature of this procedure. Puncture site should be cleaned with antiseptic solution.[10]

13.3 Blood specimens, contaminated materials, and lancets must be disposed of in appropriate containers.[29]

13.4 Gloves should be worn by caregivers to protect against blood splashes on sores or skin breaks.[29]

Perinatal-Pediatrics Guidelines Committee:

Lynne K Bower RRT, Chairman, Boston MA
Sherry L Barnhart RRT, Mattoon IL
Peter Betit BS RRT, Boston MA
Barbara Hendon BA RCP RRT, Wylie TX
Joanne Masi-Lynch BS RRT, Salt Lake City UT
Barbara G Wilson MEd RRT, Durham NC

REFERENCES

1. Koch G, Wendel H. Comparison of pH, carbon dioxide tension, standard bicarbonate and oxygen tension in capillary blood and in arterial blood during the neonatal period. Acta Paediatr Scand 1967;56:10-16.
2. Duc GV, Cumarasamy N. Digital arteriolar oxygen tension as a guide to oxygen therapy of the newborn. Biol Neonate 1974;24:134-137.

3. McLain BI, Evans J, Dear PFR. Comparison of capillary and arterial blood gas measurements in neonates. Arch Dis Child 1988;63:743-747.
4. Desai SD, Holloway R, Thambiran AK, Wesley AG. A comparison between arterial and arterialized capillary blood in infants. S Afr Med J 1967;41:13-15.
5. Corbet AJS, Burnard ED. Oxygen tension measurements on digital blood in the newborn. Pediatrics 1970;46:780-782.
6. Karna P, Poland RL. Monitoring critically ill newborn infants with digital capillary blood samples: an alternative. J Pediatr 1978;92:270-273.
7. Blumenfeld TA, Turi GK, Blanc WA. Recommended site and depth of newborn heel skin punctures based on anatomical measurements and histopathology. Lancet 1979;1:230-233.
8. Phelan S. Phlebotomy techniques. Chicago: American Society of Clinical Pathologists, 1993.
9. Pendergraph GE. Handbook of phlebotomy, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1992:82-89.
10. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards. Procedures for the collection of diagnostic blood specimens by skin puncture, 3rd ed. Villanova PA: NCCLS, 1992.
11. Kisling JA, Schreiner RL. Techniques of obtaining arterial blood from newborn infants. Respir Care 1977;22: 513-518.
12. Sell EJ, Hansen RC, Struck-Pierce S. Calcified nodules on the heel: a complication of neonatal intensive care. J Pediatr 1980;96:473-475.
13. Powers WF. Digital capillary sampling (letter). J Pediatr 1978;93(4):729-730.
14. Meites S. Skin puncture and blood collecting techniques for infants: update and problems. In: Meites S, ed. Pediatric clinical chemistry, 3rd ed. Washington DC: American Association for Clinical Chemistry, 1989:5-15.
15. College of American Pathologists. So you're going to collect a blood specimen, 5th ed. Northfield IL: College of American Pathologists, 1992.
16. Lilien LD, Harris VJ, Ramamurthy RS, Pildes RS. Neonatal osteomyelitis of the calcaneus: complication of heel puncture. J Pediatr 1976;88:478-480.
17. Graham G, Kenny MA. Changes in transcutaneous oxygen tension during capillary blood-gas sampling. Clin Chem 1980;26:1860-1863.
18. Courtney SE, Weber KR, Breakie LA, Malin SW, Bender CV, Guo SM, Siervogel RM. Capillary blood gases in the neonate: a reassessment and review of the literature. Am J Dis Child 1990;144:168-172.
19. Gandy G, Grann L, Cunningham N, et al. The validity of pH and P_{CO_2} measurements in capillary samples in sick and healthy newborn infants. Pediatrics 1964;34:192-197.
20. Hunt CE. Capillary blood sampling in the infant: usefulness and limitations of two methods of sampling, compared with arterial blood. Pediatrics 1973;51:501-506.
21. Folger GM Jr, Kouri P, Sabbah HN. Arterialized capillary blood sampling in the neonate: a reappraisal. Heart Lung 1980;9:521-526.
22. Thomsen A. Arterial blood sampling in small infants. Acta Paediatr 1964;53:237-240.
23. Raffin TA. Indications for arterial blood gas analysis. Ann Intern Med 1986;105:390-398.
24. Thorson SH, Marini JJ, Pierson DJ, Hudson LD. Variability of arterial blood gas values in stable patients in the ICU. Chest 1983;84(1):14-18.
25. Browning JA, Kaiser DL, Durbin CG Jr. The effect of guidelines on the appropriate use of arterial blood gas analysis in the intensive care unit. Respir Care 1989;34(4):269-276.
26. Moran RF, Van Kessel A. Blood gas quality assurance. NSCPT Analyzer 1981;11(1):18-26.
27. Bruck E, Eichhorn JH, Ray-Meredith S, Shanahan JK, Slockbower JM. Percutaneous collection of arterial blood for laboratory analysis. National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards 1985;H11A;5(3):39-59.
28. Shapiro BA, Harrison RA, Cane RD, Templin R. Clinical application of blood gases, 4th ed. St Louis: Year Book Medical Publishers Inc, 1989.
29. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health care settings. MMWR 1988;37:377-382,387-388.
30. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration. Occupational expose to bloodborne pathogens. 29 CFRR Part 1910.1030. Federal Register, Friday December 06, 1991.

AARC Clinical Practice Guideline

Body Plethysmography

BP 1.0 PROCEDURE:

Body plethysmography for thoracic gas volume and airways resistance measurements

BP 2.0 DESCRIPTION/DEFINITION:

During body plethysmography, the subject is enclosed in a chamber equipped to measure pressure, flow, or volume changes. The most common measurements made using the body plethysmograph are thoracic gas volume (V_{TG}) and airways resistance (R_{aw}).[1,2] Airways conductance (G_{aw}) is also commonly calculated as the reciprocal of R_{aw}. Specific airways conductance (ie, conductance/unit of lung volume) is routinely reported as SG_{aw}. Other tests that can be measured in the body plethysmograph include spirometry, bronchial challenge, diffusing capacity (D_{LCO}), single-breath nitrogen (N_2), multiple-breath N_2 washout, pulmonary compliance, occlusion pressure, and cardiac output, including pulmonary blood flow. These will not be discussed as part of this guideline because some have been previously addressed.[3-6]

2.1 V_{TG} is expressed in liters (BTPS) and is the volume of gas in the lung when the mouth shutter is closed. In plethysmographic studies, it is commonly used to represent the functional residual capacity (FRC).
2.2 Airways resistance (R_{aw}) is reported in cm H_2O/L/s.
2.3 Specific airways conductance (SG_{aw}) is reported in L/s/cm H_2O (ie, cm $H_2O \cdot s \cdot L^{-1}$) and is the reciprocal of the R_{aw} ($1/R_{aw}$) divided by the lung volume at which the resistance measurement was made.

BP 3.0 SETTINGS:

3.1 Pulmonary function laboratories
3.2 Cardiopulmonary laboratories
3.3 Clinics and physician's offices

BP 4.0 INDICATIONS:

Body plethysmographic determination of V_{TG}, R_{aw}, and SG_{aw} may be indicated

4.1 For measurement of lung volumes to distinguish between restrictive and obstructive processes;
4.2 For evaluation of obstructive lung diseases, such as bullous emphysema and cystic fibrosis, which may produce artifactually low results if measured by helium dilution or N_2 washout[7] (an index of trapped gas (ie, $FRC_{plethysmograph}/FRC_{He\ dilution}$) can be established);[8]
4.3 For measurement of lung volumes when multiple repeated trials are required, or when the subject is unable to perform multibreath tests;[9]
4.4 For evaluation of resistance to airflow;[10]
4.5 For determination of the response to bronchodilators (R_{aw}, SG_{aw}, and V_{TG});[11]
4.6 For determination of bronchial hyperreactivity in response to methacholine, histamine, or isocapnic hyperventilation (V_{TG}, R_{aw}, and SG_{aw});[12,13]
4.7 For following the course of disease and response to treatment.

BP 5.0 CONTRAINDICATIONS:

Relative contraindications to body plethysmography are

5.1 Mental confusion, muscular incoordination, body casts, or other conditions that prevent the subject from entering the plethysmograph cabinet or adequately performing the required maneuvers (ie, panting against a closed shutter);
5.2 Claustrophobia that may be aggravated by entering the plethysmograph cabinet;

as continuous I.V. infusions with pumps or other equipment that will not fit into the plethysmograph, that should not be discontinued, or that might interfere with pressure changes (eg, chest tube, transtracheal O_2 catheter, or ruptured eardrum);

5.4 continuous oxygen therapy that should not be temporarily discontinued.

BP 6.0 HAZARDS/COMPLICATIONS:

6.1 V_{TG} and R_{aw} measurements require the subject to pant against a closed shutter; improper panting technique may result in excessive intrathoracic pressures.

6.2 Enclosure in the plethysmograph may cause symptoms of claustrophobia.

6.3 Prolonged confinement in the plethysmograph chamber could result in hypercapnia or hypoxia; however, because of the limited length of the test and the fact that the plethysmograph must be vented periodically, this is an uncommon occurrence.

6.4 Transmission of infection is possible via improperly cleaned equipment (ie, mouthpieces) or as a consequence of the inadvertent spread of droplet nuclei or body fluids (patient-to-patient or patient-to-technologist).

BP 7.0 LIMITATIONS OF METHODOLOGY/ VALIDATION OF RESULTS:

Limitations of the body plethysmograph in measurement of V_{TG}, R_{aw}, and SG_{aw} include but are not limited to

7.1 Overestimation of V_{TG} in subjects with moderate or severe obstruction.[14,15]

7.2 Erroneous measurement of V_{TG}, R_{aw}, or SG_{aw} due to improper panting technique. Excessive pressure fluctuations or signal drift during panting may invalidate V_{TG}, R_{aw}, or SG_{aw}.[17]

7.3 Nonpanting measurements have been suggested for use in children or others who have difficulty mastering the panting maneuver.[18,19] Nonpanting maneuvers in plethysmographs with built in thermal leaks may invalidate V_{TG} or R_{aw} measurements.[2,20]

7.4 Computer-determined slopes of either V_{TG} or R_{aw} tangents may be inaccurate. Many systems calculate the slopes using a best-fit regression analysis. This technique may produce widely varying results if extraneous data points are included (due to improper panting or excessive signal drift).[21,22]

7.5 Excessive abdominal gas or panting techniques using accessory muscles may increase the measured V_{TG}, due to compression effects.[23]

7.6 Plethysmography is a complex test. Careful calibration of multiple transducers is required. Attention to frequency response, thermal stability, and leaks is necessary.[24]

7.7 Choice and application of reference values affect interpretation.

7.7.1 Reference values for V_{TG} using plethysmographically determined lung volumes are not widely available.

7.7.1.1 Make a tentative selection from whatever published reference values are available. The characteristics of the healthy reference population should match the study group with respect to age, body size, gender, and racial and ethnic mix. The equipment, techniques, and measurement conditions should be similar.

7.7.1.2 Following selection of apparently appropriate reference values, compare measurements obtained from a representative sample of healthy individuals (10-20 subjects) over an appropriate age range to the predicted values obtained from the selected reference values. If an appreciable number of the sample fall outside of the normal range, more appropriate reference values should be sought. This procedure detects only relatively gross differences between sample and reference populations.[25]

BP 8.0 ASSESSMENT OF NEED:

See Section 4.0 Indications.

BP 9.0 ASSESSMENT OF TEST QUALITY:

Each laboratory should standardize procedures and demonstrate intertechnician reliability. Test results can only be considered valid if they are derived according to and conform to established laboratory control and quality assurance protocols. These protocols should address test standardization and reproducibility criteria that include the methodology used to derive and report V_{TG} and airway mechanics.

9.1 Results are valid if the equipment functions acceptably and the subject is able to perform the maneuvers in an acceptable and reproducible fashion.

9.1.1 V_{TG} maneuvers may be considered acceptable when

9.1.1.1 the displayed or recorded tracing indicates proper panting technique; the P_{mouth}/P_{box} loop (closed shutter) should be closed or nearly so. The patient should support his/her cheeks with the hands to prevent pressure changes induced by the mouth.[26] This should be done without supporting the elbows or elevating the shoulders.

9.1.1.2 Recorded pressure changes should be within the calibrated pressure range of each transducer (See Section 10.1.3). The entire tracing should be visible. Pressure changes that are too large or too small may yield erroneous results.

9.1.1.3 There should be evidence of thermal equilibrium; tracings should not drift on the display or recording.

9.1.1.4 The panting frequency should be approximately 1 Hz. Nonpanting maneuvers may be acceptable if the plethysmograph system is specifically designed to perform such a maneuver.[14,27]

9.1.2 The reported V_{TG}

9.1.2.1 should be averaged from a minimum of 3-5 separate, acceptable panting maneuvers;[28,29]

9.1.2.2 should be calculated using tangents or angles that agree within 10% of the mean; widely varying tangents or angles should be averaged, and reported as variable;

9.1.2.3 should indicate whether the thoracic volume was at FRC or at another level;

9.1.2.4 should be compared with other lung volume determinations (He dilution, N_2 washout) if performed;

9.1.2.5 from some systems should be corrected for patient weight.

9.1.3 A slow vital capacity (VC) maneuver and its subdivisions inspiratory capacity (IC) and expiratory reserve volume (ERV) should be performed during the same testing session. The ERV, IC, and IVC can be measured before disconnecting the patient from the measuring system. Alternatively, the patient can be disconnected and the ERC, IC, and IVC performed imediately afterward.

9.1.3.1 The largest VC obtained should be used for calculation of derived lung volumes (ie, total lung capacity, or TLC, residual volume, or RV, and RV/TLC%).

9.1.3.2 The IC and ERV from the largest acceptable VC should be used to calculate derived volumes.

9.1.3.3 TLC may be calculated from the FRC determined plethysmographically:

$$TLC = FRC + IC$$

or

$$TLC = RV + VC.$$

9.1.3.4 RV may be calculated from the FRC determined plethysmographically:

$$RV = FRC - ERV$$

or

$$RV = TLC - VC.$$

9.1.4 R_{aw} and SG_{aw} maneuvers may be considered acceptable if they meet criteria 9.1.1.2 through 9.1.1.4 above.

9.1.4.1 The open shutter panting maneuver should show a relatively

closed loop, particularly in the range of +0.5 to –0.5 L/s.

9.1.4.2 The panting frequency during serial measurements in a given patient should be kept the same to aid in interpretation. Consensus of the group suggests a range of 1.5-3.0 Hz.

9.1.5 The reported R_{aw} and SG_{aw}

9.1.5.1 should be calculated from the ratio of closed and open shutter tangents for each maneuver.[30] Airway resistance and lung volume are interdependent in a nonlinear fashion;

9.1.5.2 should be averaged from 3-5 separate, acceptable maneuvers as calculated in 9.1.5.1; reproducibility should be within 10%;[31]

9.1.5.3 should have the open-shutter tangent (V/P_{box}) measured between flows of +0.5 and –0.5 L/s. For loops that display hysteresis, the inspiratory limbs may be used;[30]

9.1.5.4 Should have the SG_{aw} calculated using the V_{TG} at which the shutter was closed for each individual maneuver.[23]

9.2 Report of test results should contain a statement, by the technician performing the test, about test quality and if, appropriate which recommendations were not met.[32-34]

BP 10.0 RESOURCES:

10.1 Equipment:

10.1.1 Volume-measuring devices used in the plethysmograph (pneumotachometer) should meet or exceed ATS recommendations. A 3-L syringe should be available for calibration.[33]

10.1.2 Either pressure (constant volume) or flow-type plethysmographs may be used.

10.1.3 Transducers in the plethysmograph should meet the following range specifications:[23]

Mouth pressure: ±20 to 50 cm H_2O
Box pressure: ±2 cm H_2O (500 L box)
Flow: 0.2 to 1.5 L/s

10.1.4 Pressure and volumes signals should be phase aligned up to 10 Hz.

10.1.5 A plenum or similar device that facilitates thermal equilibrium is recommended. Some plethysmographs utilize air conditioning to maintain thermal equilibrium.

10.1.6 The plethysmograph cabinet should be easy for the subject to enter and exit. The door should preferably be operable from within the box. The cabinet should be equipped with an intercom and should provide adequate visibility for both the technologist and the subject.

10.1.7 The plethysmograph system, if computerized, should allow for technologist adjustment of open- and closed-shutter tangents.

10.1.8 Calibration devices should include (in addition to a 3-L syringe) 30-50 mL sine-wave pump (variable speed, used primarily for calibration of pressure boxes), water manometer ±20 cm H_2O (used for calibration of the mouth pressure transducer), and rotameter 0 to 1.5 L/s (used for calibration of the pneumotachometer).

10.1.9 An isothermal lung analog[35] and/or biologic controls[34] are recommended for quality control.

10.2 Personnel: Plethysmography should be performed under the direction of a physician trained in pulmonary function testing. It may be performed by persons who meet criteria for either Level I or Level II. Plethysmographic results can be compromised if the test is performed by inadequately trained personnel.

10.2.1 Level I: The technologist performing plethysmography should be a high school graduate or equivalent with a demonstrated ability to perform spirometry and lung volume determinations. Level I personnel should perform plethysmography only under the supervision of a Level II individual or a physician.

10.2.2 Level II: Personnel supervising plethysmography should have formal education and training.[36] This may be part of an accredited program in respiratory therapy or pulmonary function technology, or 2 years of college work in biological sci-

ences and mathematics. Level II personnel should also have 2 or more years experience performing spirometry, lung volumes, and diffusing capacity tests. One or more of the following credentials is recommended: CRTT, RRT, CPFT, RPFT, RN.

BP. 11.0 MONITORING:

(See also Section 9.0 Assessment of Test Quality)

11.1 The final report should contain a statement regarding test quality.
11.2 The final report should contain the V_{TG}, R_{aw}, and SG_{aw}, if performed. If the V_{TG} is measured at a lung volume other than FRC, both values should be reported.
11.3 If the FRC is measured by more than one method, the report should indicate how lung volumes are reported.

BP 12.0 FREQUENCY:

The frequency with which plethysmography is repeated should depend on the clinical question(s) to be answered.

BP 13.0 INFECTION CONTROL:

Plethysmographic tests are relatively safe procedures, but the possibility of cross-contamination exists, either from the patient-patient or patient-technologist interface.

13.1 Universal Precautions[37,38] (as published by the Centers for Disease Control) should be applied in all instances in which there is evidence of contamination with blood (eg, mouthpieces). Although Universal Precautions do not apply to saliva or mucus unless it contains blood, it should be noted that other potentially hazardous organisms may be present in these fluids even in the absence of blood, and the appropriate use of barriers and hand washing is recommended.[39]
13.2 Due to the nature of the maneuvers and the likelihood of coughing when the test is performed by subjects with known or suspected active infection with *M tuberculosis* or other airborne organisms, the following precautions are recommended.

13.2.1 The room in which the test is performed should meet or exceed the recommendations of U.S. Public Health Service[40] for air changes and ventilation. Ideally, an area in the testing department should be specially ventilated for isolation patients. If this is not possible, the patient should be returned to the isolation room as soon as possible.
13.2.2 Pulmonary function technologists performing procedures on patients with potentially infectious airborne diseases should wear a personal respirator that meets OSHA recommendations, especially if the testing itself induces cough.

13.3 The mouthpiece and any parts of the system that come into contact with the subject should be disposable or sterilized between patients. If sterilization is not feasible, then high-level disinfection should be performed. It is unnecessary to routinely clean the plethysmograph itself.
13.4 Bacteria filters may be used in circuits that allow rebreathing, although their efficacy is not well documented. Such filters may impose added resistance and increase the volume of the measuring device. If a filter is used in the plethysmograph, its resistance and volume should be subtracted from the R_{aw} and V_{TG}, respectively.

Cardiopulmonary Diagnostics Committee:

Kevin Shrake MA RRT, Chairman, Springfield IL
Sue Blonshine BS RRT RPFT, Lansing MI
Robert A Brown BS RRT RPFT, Madison WI
Michael J Decker CRTT, Cleveland OH
Gregg L Ruppel MEd RRT, St Louis MO
Jack Wanger MBA RRT RPFT, Denver CO

REFERENCES

1. DuBois AB, Botelho SY, Bedell GN, Marshal R, Comroe JH. A rapid plethysmographic method for measuring thoracic gas volume: a comparison with nitrogen washout method for measuring functional residual capacity in normal subjects. J Clin Invest 1956;35:322.
2. DuBois AB, Botelho SY, Comroe JH. A new method for measuring airway resistance in man using a body plethysmograph: values in normal subjects and in pa-

tients with respiratory disease. J Clin Invest 1956; 35:327.
3. AARC. Clinical practice guideline: spirometry. Respir Care 1991;36(12):1414-1417.
4. AARC. Clinical practice guideline: bronchial provocation. Respir Care 1992;37(8):902-906.
5. AARC. Clinical practice guideline: single-breath carbon monoxide diffusing capacity. Respir Care 1993;38(5): 511-515.
6. AARC. Clinical practice guideline: static lung volumes. Respir Care 1993;39(8):830-836,916.
7. Ferris BG. Epidemiology Standardization Project (American Thoracic Society). Am Rev Respir Dis 1978; 118(6, Part 2):1-120.
8. Pearle JL. Correlation of helium and plethysmographic lung volumes in airways obstruction. Am Rev Diag 1983;2:47.
9. Miller WF, Scacci R, Gast LR. Laboratory evaluation of pulmonary function. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1987.
10. Reinoso MA, Jett JR, Beck KC. Body plethysmography in the evaluation of intrathoracic airway abnormalities. Chest 1992;101(6):1674-1676.
11. Watanabe S, Renzetti AD Jr, Begin R, Bigler AH. Airway responsiveness to a bronchodilator aerosol: 1 Normal human subjects. Am Rev Respir Dis 1974; 109(5):530-537.
12. Fish JE, Rosenthal RR, Batra G, Menkes H, Summer W, Permutt S, Norman P. Airway responses to methacholine in allergic and nonallergic subjects. Am Rev Respir Dis 1976;113(5):579-586.
13. American Thoracic Society Subcommittee on Inhalation Challenges. Guidelines for bronchial inhalation challenges with pharmacologic and antigenic agents. ATS News, Spring, 11-19, 1980.
14. Rodenstein DO, Stanescu DC, Francis C. Demonstration of failure of body plethysmography in airway obstruction. J Appl Physiol 1982;52(4):949-954.
15. Shore SA, Huk O, Mannix S, Martin JG. Effect of panting frequency on the plethysmographic determination of thoracic gas volume in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am Rev Respir Dis 1983;128(1):54-59.
16. Bohadana AB, Peslin R, Hannhart B, Teculescu D. Influence of panting frequency on plethysmographic measurements of thoracic gas volume. J Appl Physiol 1982;52(3):739-747.
17. Habib MP, Engel LA. Influence of the panting technique on the plethysmographic measurement of thoracic gas volume. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;117(2):265-271.
18. Barter CE, Campbell AH. Comparison of airways resistance measurements during panting and quiet breathing. Respiration 1973;30(1):1-11.
19. Chowienczyk PJ, Rees PJ, Clark TJH. Automated system for the measurement of airways resistance, lung volumes, and flow-volume loops. Thorax 1981;36(12):944-949.
20. Bates JHT. Correcting for the thermodynamic characteristics of a body plethysmograph. Ann Biomed Eng 1989;17(6):647-655.
21. Lord PW, Brooks AGF. A comparison of manual and automated methods of measuring airway resistance and thoracic gas volume. Thorax 1977;32(1):60-66.
22. Sauder LR. Computer analysis versus technician analysis of body plethysmographic analog recordings of airway resistance and thoracic gas volume. Respir Care 1982;27(1):62-69.
23. Brown R, Hoppin FG Jr, Ingram RH Jr, Saunders NA, McFadden ER Jr. Influence of abdominal gas on the Boyle's law determination of thoracic gas volume. J Appl Physiol 1978;44(3):469-473.
24. Bargeton D, Barres G. Time characteristics and frequency response of body plethysmograph. In: DuBois AB, Van de Woestijne KP, Herzog H, eds. Progress in respiration research, body plethysmography. New York: S Karger, 1969.
25. Crapo RO, Morris AH, Clayton PD, Nixon CR. Lung volumes in healthy nonsmoking adults. Bull Eur Physiopathol Respir 1982;18(3):419-425.
26. Ruppel GL. Manual of pulmonary function testing, 6th ed. St Louis: Mosby-Yearbook, 1993.
27. Desmond KJ, Demizio DL, Allen PD, Beaudry PH, Coates AL. An alternate method for the determination of functional residual capacity in a plethysmograph. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;137(2):273-276.
28. Gibson GJ. Measurement of the mechanical properties of the thorax, lungs, and airways. In: Laszlo G, Sudlow MF, eds. Measurement in clinical respiratory physiology. New York: Academic Press, 1982.
29. Recommendations of British Thoracic Society and Association of Respiratory Technicians and Physiologists. Guidelines for the measurement of respiratory function. Respir Med 1994;88:165-194.
30. Zarins LP, Clausen JL. Plethysmography. In: Clausen JL, ed. Pulmonary function testing, guidelines and controversies. New York: Academic Press, 1982.
31. Pelzer A, Thomson ML. Effect of age, sex, stature, and smoking habits on human airway conductance. J Appl Physiol 1966;21(2):469-476.
32. Quanjer PH, ed. Lung volumes and ventilatory flows. Report of the Working Party, Standardization of Lung Function Tests, European Community for Steel and Coal. Bull Eur Physiopathol Respir 1993;16(6, Suppl):5-40.
33. American Thoracic Society. Standardization of spirometry—1987 update. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136(5): 1285-1298. Concurrent publication in Respir Care 1987;32(11):1039-1060.
34. Gardner R, Chairman. American Thoracic Society Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Laboratories. Quality assurance in pulmonary function laboratories. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;134:625-627.
35. Kanner RE, Morris AH, Crapo RO, Gardner RM, eds. Clinical Pulmonary function testing: a manual of uniform laboratory procedures for the intermountain area, 2nd ed. Salt Lake City UT: Intermountain Thoracic Society, 1984.

36. Gardner RM, Clausen JL, Epler G, Hankinson JL, Permutt S, Plummer AL. Pulmonary function laboratory personnel qualifications. American Thoracic Society Position Paper, ATS News, November 1982.
37. Centers for Disease Control. Recommendations for preventing transmission of infection with human T-lymphotrophic virus type III/lymphadenopathy-associated virus in the workplace. MMWR 1985;34(45):681-686,691-695.
38. Centers for Disease Control. Update: Universal Precautions for prevention of transmission of human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B virus, and other bloodborne pathogens in health care settings. MMWR 1988;37(24):377-382,387-388.
39. Tablan OC Williams WW, Martone WJ. Infection control in pulmonary function laboratories. Infect Control 1985;6(11):442-444.
40. Centers for Disease Control. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care settings, with special focus on HIV-related issues. MMWR 1990;39(RR-17):1-29.

Guideline for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia

CENTERS FOR DISEASE CONTROL AND PREVENTION

Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee Members, February 1994

Chairman: **Walter J. Hierholzer, Jr, MD, Yale-New Haven Hospital, New Haven, Connecticut.** *Executive Secretary:* **Julia S. Garner, RN, MN, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.** *Members:* **Donald E. Craven, MD, Boston City Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts; David W. Fleming, MD, Oregon State Health Department, Portland, Oregon; Susan W. Forlenza, MD, Nassau County Medical, Center East Meadow, New York; Mary J. Gilchrist, PhD, Veterans Administration Medical Center, Cincinnati, Ohio; Donald, A. Goldmann, MD, Children's Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts; Robert W. Haley, MD, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, Texas; C. Glen Mayhall, MD, University of Texas Medical Center, Galveston, Texas; Rita D. McCormick, RN, University of Wisconsin Hospital and Clinics, Madison, Wisconsin; Ronald L. Nichols, MD, Tulane University School of Medicine, New Orleans, Louisiana; Christine C. Sanders, PhD, Creighton University School of Medicine, Omaha, Nebraska; Edward S. Wong, MD, McGuire Veterans Affairs Hospital, Richmond, Virginia.**

PART I. ISSUES ON PREVENTION OF NOSOCOMIAL PNEUMONIA, 1994

Ofelia C. Tablan, MD; Larry J. Anderson, MD; Nancy H. Arden, MN; Robert F. Breiman, MD; Jay C. Butler, MD; Michael M. McNeil, MD; and The Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee

INTRODUCTION

This 2-part document updates and replaces the previously published Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Guideline for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia (*Infect Control* 1982;3: 327-33, *Respir Care* 1983;28:221-32, and *Am J Infect Control* 1983;11:230-44). The revised guideline is designed to reduce the incidence of nosocomial pneumonia and intended for use by personnel who are responsible for surveillance and control of infections in acute-care hospitals. The guideline may not be applicable in long-term care facilities because of the unique characteristics of these settings.

The revised guideline addresses common problems encountered by infection control practitioners regarding the prevention and control of nosocomial pneumonia in U.S. hospitals. Sections on the prevention of bacterial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated and/or critically ill patients, care of respiratory-therapy devices, prevention of cross-contamination, and prevention of viral lower respiratory tract infections, such as respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) and influenza infections, have been expanded and updated. New sections on Legionnaires' disease and pneumonia due to *Aspergillus* spp. have been added. Lower respiratory tract infection due to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is not addressed in this document; it is covered in separate guidelines.[1]

A working draft of the guideline has been reviewed by experts in infection control, pulmonology, respiratory therapy, anesthesiology, internal medicine, and pediatrics. However, all recommendations in the guideline may not reflect the opinions of all reviewers.

Part I, "Issues on Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia—1994," provides the background for the consensus recommendations of the Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC) in Part II, "Recommendations for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia." HICPAC was established in 1991 to provide advice and guidance to the Secretary and the Assistant Secretary for Health, Department of Health and Human Services; the Director, CDC; and the Director, NCID, CDC, regarding the practice of hospital infection control and strategies for surveillance, prevention, and control of nosocomial infections in U.S. hospitals. The committee also advises the CDC on periodic updating of guidelines and other policy statements regarding prevention of nosocomial infections. The Guideline for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia is the first of a series of CDC guidelines being revised by HICPAC and NCID, CDC.

Part I can be an important resource for educating health-care workers regarding prevention and control of nosocomial respiratory tract infections. Because education of health-care workers is the cornerstone of an effective infection control program, hospitals should give high priority to continuing infection control educational programs for these staff members.

SUMMARY

Pneumonia is the second most common nosocomial infection in the United States and is associated with substantial morbidity and mortality. Most patients with nosocomial pneumonia are those with extremes of age, severe underlying disease, immunosuppression, depressed sensorium, and cardiopulmonary disease, and those who have had thoracoabdominal surgery. Although patients with mechanically assisted ventilation do not comprise a major proportion of patients with nosocomial pneumonia, they have the highest risk of developing the infection.

Most bacterial nosocomial pneumonias occur by aspiration of bacteria colonizing the oropharynx or upper gastrointestinal tract of the patient. Intubation and mechanical ventilation greatly increase the risk of nosocomial bacterial pneumonia because they alter first-line patient defenses. Pneumonias due to *Legionella* spp., *Aspergillus* spp., and influenza virus are often caused by inhalation of contaminated aerosols. Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infection usually follows viral inoculation of

From the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, Georgia.

This document is not copyright-protected and may be photocopied.

the conjunctivae or nasal mucosa by contaminated hands.

Traditional preventive measures for nosocomial pneumonia include decreasing aspiration by the patient, preventing cross-contamination or colonization via hands of personnel, appropriate disinfection or sterilization of respiratory therapy devices, use of available vaccines to protect against particular infections, and education of hospital staff and patients. New measures under investigation involve reducing oropharyngeal and gastric colonization by pathogenic microorganisms.

BACTERIAL PNEUMONIA

I. Etiologic Agents

The reported distribution of etiologic agents causing nosocomial pneumonia varies between hospitals because of differences in patient populations and diagnostic methods employed.[2-10] In general, however, bacteria have been the most frequently isolated pathogens.[2-6,9,11-13] Schaberg et al reported that in 1986-1989, aerobic bacteria comprised at least 73%, and fungi 4%, of isolates from sputum and tracheal aspirates from pneumonia patients at the University of Michigan Hospitals and hospitals participating in the National Nosocomial Infection Surveillance System (NNIS); very few anaerobic bacteria and no viruses were reported, probably because anaerobic and viral cultures were not performed routinely in the reporting hospitals (Table 1).[3] Similarly, cultures of bronchoscopic specimens from mechanically ventilated patients with pneumonia have rarely yielded anaerobes.[5-7,9,11,14,15] Only the report by Bartlett, which was based mainly on cultures of transtracheal aspirates from patients not receiving mechanically assisted ventilation, showed a predominance of anaerobes.[4]

Nosocomial bacterial pneumonias are frequently polymicrobial,[4,7,9,11,12,15-19] and gram-negative bacilli are the usual predominant organisms (Table 1).[2-6,9,11-13] However, *Staphylococcus aureus* (especially methicillin-resistant *S aureus*)[5,7,10,15,20,21] and other gram-positive cocci, including *Streptococcus pneumoniae*,[5,7] have recently emerged as significant isolates.[14] In addition, *Haemophilus influenzae* has been isolated from mechanically ventilated patients with pneumonia that occurs within 48-96 hours after intubation.[3,5,12,15,22] In NNIS hospitals, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Enterobacter* sp., *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Escherichia coli*, *Serratia marcescens*, and *Proteus* spp. comprised 50% of the isolates from cultures of respiratory tract specimens from patients for whom nosocomial pneumonia was diagnosed by using clinical criteria; *S aureus* accounted for 16%, and *H influenzae*, for 6% (Table 1).[3] Fagon and co-workers reported that gram-negative bacilli were present in 75% of quantitative cultures of protected-specimen brushings (PSB) from patients who had received mechanically assisted ventilation and acquired nosocomial pneumonia; 40% of the cultures were polymicrobial.[5] In the report by Torres et al, 20% of pathogens recovered from cultures of PSB, blood, pleural fluid, or percutaneous lung aspirate were gram-negative bacilli in pure culture, and 17% were polymicrobial; however, 54% of specimens did not yield any microorganism, probably because of receipt of antibiotics by patients.[5]

II. Diagnosis

Nosocomial pneumonia has been difficult to diagnose.[7,8,16,23-32] Frequently, the criteria for diagnosis have been fever, cough, and development of purulent sputum, in combination with radiologic evidence of a new or progressive pulmonary infiltrate, a suggestive Gram's stain, and cultures of sputum, tracheal aspirate, pleural fluid, or blood.[3,4,23,25,33-36] Although clinical criteria together with cultures of sputum or tracheal specimens may be sensitive for bacterial pathogens, they are highly nonspecific, especially in patients with mechanically assisted ventilation;[8,9,12-15,18,24-26,29,31,37-42] on the other hand, cultures of blood or pleural fluid have very low sensitivity.[8,18,19,43]

Because of these problems, a group of investigators recently formulated consensus recommendations for standardization of methods to diagnose pneumonia in clinical research studies of ventilator-associated pneumonia.[44-46] These methods involve bronchoscopic techniques, eg, quantitative culture of PSB,[5,7-9,13,15,27,31,38,41,47,48] bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL),[7,12,41,47,49-54] and protected BAL (pBAL).[14] The reported sensitivities and specificities of these methods have ranged from 70% to 100% and 60% to 100%, respectively, depending on the tests or diagnostic criteria they were compared with. Because these techniques are invasive, they may cause complications such as hypoxemia, bleeding, or arrhythmia.[8,13,42,44,52,55,56] In addition, the sensitivity of the PSB procedure may decrease for patients receiving antibiotic therapy.[9,13,27] Nonbronchoscopic (NB) procedures, eg, NB-pBAL[12,27,57,58] or NB-PSB,[13] which utilize blind catheterization of the distal airways, and quantitative culture of endotracheal aspirate,[59,60] have been developed recently. Of these, endotracheal aspirate culture appears to be the most practical. The use of these bronchoscopic and nonbronchoscopic diagnostic tests can be a major step in better defining the epidemiology of nosocomial pneumonia especially in patients with mechanically assisted ventilation; however, further studies are needed to determine each test's applicability in daily clinical practice.

III. Epidemiology

NNIS reports that pneumonias (diagnosed on the basis of the CDC surveillance definition of nosocomial pneumonia) account for approximately 15% of all hospital-associated infections and are the second most common nosocomial infections after those of the urinary tract.[2,61] In 1984, the overall incidence of lower respiratory tract infection was 6 per 1,000 discharged patients.[2] The incidence per 1,000 discharged patients ranged from 4.2 in nonteaching hospitals to 7.7 in university-affiliated hospitals, probably reflecting institutional differences in the level of patients' risk for acquiring nosocomial pneumonia.

Nosocomial bacterial pneumonia often has been identified as a postoperative infection.[62,63] In the Study of the Efficacy of Nosocomial Infection Control in the 1970s, 75% of reported cases of nosocomial bacterial pneumonia occurred in patients who had had a surgical operation; the risk was 38 times greater for thoracoabdominal procedures than for those involving other body sites.[63] More recent epidemiologic studies, including NNIS studies, have identified other subsets of patients at high risk of developing nosocomial bacterial pneumonia: patients with endotracheal intubation and/or mechanically assisted ventilation, depressed level of consciousness (particularly those with closed-head injury), prior episode of a large-volume aspiration, or underlying chronic lung disease, and patients > 70 years of age. Other risk factors include 24-hour ventilator-circuit changes, fall-winter sea-

Table 1. Microorganisms Isolated from Respiratory Tract Specimens Obtained by Various Representative Methods from Adult Patients with a Diagnosis of Nosocomial Pneumonia

	Schaberg[3]	Bartlett[4]	Fagon[5]	Torres[6]
Hospital Type	NNIS & UMH*	Veterans	General	General
Patients Studied:				
Ventilated or nonventilated	Mixed	Mixed	Ventilated	Ventilated
Number	N/A†	159	49	78
Number of Episodes of Pneumonia	N/A	159	52	78
Specimen(s) Cultured	Sputum, tracheal aspirate	Transtracheal aspirate, pleural fluid, blood	Protected specimen brushing	Protected specimen brushing, lung aspirate, pleural fluid, blood
Culture Results:				
No organism isolated	N/A	0	0	54%‡
Polymicrobial	N/A	54%‡	40%‡	13%‡
Number of isolates	15,499	314	111	N/A
Aerobic Bacteria				
Gram-Negative Bacilli	50%**	46%††	75%††	16%‡‡
Pseudomonas aeruginosa	17%**	9%††	31%††	5%‡‡
Enterobacter sp.	11	4	2	0
Klebsiella sp.	7	23	4	0
Escherichia coli	6	14	8	0
Serratia sp.	5	0	0	1
Proteus sp.	3	11	15	1
Citrobacter sp.	1	0	2	0
Acinetobacter calcoaceticus	N/A	0	15	9
Others	N/A	0	10	0
Haemophilus influenzae	6%**	17%††	10%††	0%‡‡
Legionella sp.	N/A	N/A	2%††	2%‡‡
Gram-Positive Cocci	17%**	56%††	52%††	4%‡‡
Staphylococcus aureus	16%**	25%††	33%††	2%‡‡
Streptococcus sp.	1	31	21	2
Others	0	0	8	0
Anaerobes	N/A	35%††	2%††	0
Peptostreptococcus	N/A	14%††	N/A	0
Fusobacterium sp.	N/A	10	N/A	0
Peptococcus sp.	N/A	11	N/A	0
Bacteroides melaninogenicus	N/A	9	N/A	0
Bacteroides fragilis	N/A	8	N/A	0
Fungi	4% *	N/A	0	1%‡‡
Aspergillus sp.	N/A	N/A	0	1%‡‡
Candida sp.	4%**	N/A	0	0
Viruses	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

*NNIS & UMH = National Nosocomial Infections Surveillance System and University of Michigan Hospitals.
†N/A = Not applicable: not tested or not reported.
‡Percent episodes.
**Percent isolates.
†† Percent episodes (percentages not additive due to polymicrobial etiology in some episodes).
‡‡ Percent patients with pure culture.
References appear at the end of the document.

son, stress-bleeding prophylaxis with cimetidine with or without antacid, administration of antimicrobials, presence of a nasogastric tube, severe trauma, and recent bronchoscopy.[6,34,35,64-74]

Recently, NNIS stratified the incidence density of nosocomial pneumonia by patients' use of mechanical ventilator and type of intensive care unit (ICU). From 1986 to 1990, the median rate of ventilator-associated pneumonia per 1,000 ventilator-days ranged from 4.7 in pediatric ICUs to 34.4 in burn ICUs.[66] In contrast, the median rate of nonventilator-associated pneumonia per 1,000 ICU-days ranged from 0 in pediatric and respiratory ICUs to 3.2 in trauma ICUs.

Nosocomial pneumonia has been associated with high fatality rates. Crude mortality rates of 20%-50% and attributable mortality rates of 30%-33% have been reported; in one study, pneumonia comprised 60% of all deaths due to nosocomial infections.[17,35,74-80] Patients receiving mechanically assisted ventilation have higher mortality rates than do patients not receiving ventilation support; however, other factors, such as a patient's underlying disease(s) and organ failure, are stronger predictors of death in patients with pneumonia.[34,74]

Analyses of pneumonia-associated morbidity have shown that pneumonia could prolong hospitalization by 4-9 days.[79-83] A conservative estimate of the direct cost of excess hospital stay due to pneumonia is $1.2 billion a year for the nation.[83] Because of its reported frequency, associated high fatality rate, and attendant costs, nosocomial pneumonia is a major infection control problem.

IV. Pathogenesis

Bacteria may invade the lower respiratory tract by aspiration of oropharyngeal organisms, inhalation of aerosols containing bacteria, or, less frequently, by hematogenous spread from a distant body site (Figure 1). In addition, bacterial translocation from the gastrointestinal tract has been recently hypothesized as a mechanism for infection. Of these routes, aspiration is believed to be the most important for both nosocomial and community-acquired pneumonia.

In radioisotope-tracer studies, 45% of healthy adults were found to aspirate during sleep.[84] Persons with abnormal swallowing, such as those who have depressed consciousness, respiratory tract instrumentation

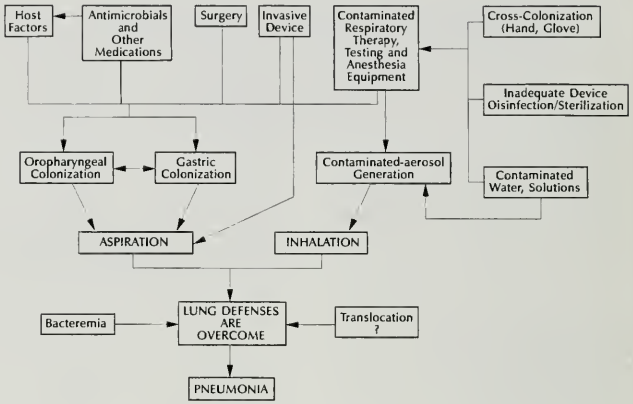


Fig 1. Pathogenesis of nosocomial bacterial pneumonia.

and/or mechanically assisted ventilation, or gastrointestinal tract instrumentation or diseases, or who have just undergone surgery, are particularly likely to aspirate.[6,34,35,63,85-87]

The high incidence of gram-negative bacillary pneumonia in hospitalized patients appears to be the result of factors that promote colonization of the pharynx by gram-negative bacilli and the subsequent entry of these organisms into the lower respiratory tract.[33,88-91] Whereas aerobic gram-negative bacilli are recovered infrequently or are found in small numbers in pharyngeal cultures of healthy persons,[88,92] colonization dramatically increases in patients with coma, hypotension, acidosis, azotemia, alcoholism, diabetes mellitus, leukocytosis, leukopenia, pulmonary disease, or nasogastric or endotracheal tubes in place, and in patients given antimicrobial agents.[33,91,93,94]

Oropharyngeal or tracheobronchial colonization by gram-negative bacilli begins with the adherence of the microorganisms to the host's epithelial cells.[90,95-97] Adherence may be affected by multiple factors related to the bacteria (presence of pili, cilia, capsule, or production of elastase or mucinase), host cell (surface proteins and polysaccharides), and environment (pH and presence of mucin in respiratory secretions).[89,90,95,98-107] The exact interactions among these factors have not been fully elucidated, but studies indicate that certain substances, such as fibronectin, can inhibit the adherence of gram-negative bacilli to host cells.[98,100,108] Conversely, certain conditions, such as malnutrition, severe illness, or postoperative state, can increase adherence of gram-negative bacteria.[89,98,102,107,109]

Besides the oropharynx, the stomach has been postulated to be an important reservoir of organisms that cause nosocomial pneumonia.[34,110-114] The stomach's role may vary depending on the patient's underlying conditions and on prophylactic or therapeutic interventions.[22,111,115-118] In healthy persons, few bacteria entering the stomach survive in the presence of hydrochloric acid at pH < 2.[119,120] However, when gastric pH increases from the normal levels to ≥ 4, microorganisms are able to multiply to high concentrations in the stomach.[117,119,121-123] This can occur in patients with advanced age,[121] achlorhydria,[119] ileus, or upper gastrointestinal disease, and in patients receiving enteral feeding, antacids, or histamine-2 (H-2) antagonists.[111,117,118,123-125] The contribution of other factors, such as duodeno-gastric reflux and the presence of bile, to gastric colonization in patients with impaired intestinal motility has been suggested and needs further investigation.[116]

Bacteria can also gain entry into the lower respiratory tract of hospitalized patients through inhalation of aerosols generated primarily by contaminated respiratory therapy or anesthesia breathing equipment.[126-129]

Outbreaks related to the use of respiratory therapy equipment have been associated with contaminated nebulizers, which are humidification devices that produce large amounts of aerosol droplets < 4 μm via ultrasound, spinning disk, or the Venturi mechanism.[126,129,130] When the fluid in the reservoir of a nebulizer becomes contaminated with bacteria, the aerosol produced may contain high concentrations of bacteria that can be deposited deep in the patient's lower respiratory tract.[126,130,131] Because endotracheal and tracheal tubes provide direct access to the lower respiratory tract, contaminated aerosol inhalation is particularly hazardous for intubated patients. In contrast to nebulizers, bubble-through or wick humidifiers mainly increase the water-vapor (or molecular-water) content of inspired gases. Although heated bubble-through humidifiers generate aerosol droplets, they do so in quantities that may not be clinically significant;[127,132] wick humidifiers do not generate aerosols.

Rarely, bacterial pneumonia can result from hematogenous spread of infection to the lung from another infection site, eg, pneumonia resulting from purulent phlebitis or right-sided endocarditis. Another mechanism, translocation of bacteria via the passage of viable bacteria from the lumen of the gastrointestinal tract through epithelial mucosa to the mesenteric lymph nodes and to the lung, has been shown in animal models.[133] Translocation is postulated to occur in patients with immunosuppression, cancer, or burns;[133] however data are lacking regarding this mechanism in humans.[134]

V. Risk Factors and Control Measures

Several large studies have examined potential risk factors for nosocomial bacterial pneumonia (Table 2).[6,34,35,135,136] Although specific risk factors may differ between study populations, they can be grouped into the following general categories: (1) host factors such as extremes of age and severe underlying conditions, including immunosuppression; (2) factors, such as administration of antimicrobials, admission to the ICU, underlying chronic lung disease, or coma, that enhance colonization of the oropharynx and/or stomach by microorganisms; (3) conditions favoring aspiration or reflux, including endotracheal intubation, insertion of nasogastric tube, or supine position; (4) conditions requiring prolonged use of mechanical ventilatory support with potential exposure to contaminated respiratory equipment and/or contact with contaminated or colonized hands of health-care workers; and (5) factors that impede adequate pulmonary toilet, such as surgical procedures involving the head, neck, thorax, or upper abdomen, and immobilization due to trauma or illness.[6,33-35,62,73,74,135]

A. Oropharyngeal, Tracheal, and Gastric Colonization

The association between colonization of the oropharynx,[88,137] trachea,[138] or stomach[110,111,117,123] and predisposition to gram-negative bacillary pneumonia prompted attempts to prevent infection either by prophylactic local application of antimicrobial agent(s)[139,140] or by utilizing the phenomenon of local bacterial interference.[141,142] Although early work suggested that the former method, use of aerosolized antimicrobials, could eradicate common gram-negative pathogens from the upper respiratory tract,[138] superinfection occurred in some patients receiving this therapy.[139-141,143,144] The latter method, bacterial interference (with alpha-hemolytic streptococci), has been successfully used by some investigators to prevent oropharyngeal colonization by aerobic gram-negative bacilli.[141] However, the efficacy of this method for use in general has not been evaluated.

The administration of antacids and H2-blockers for prevention of stress bleeding in critically ill, postoperative, and/or mechanically ventilated patients has been associated with gastric bacterial overgrowth in many studies.[34,112,113,118,122,123,145-147] Sucralfate, a cytoprotective agent that has little effect on gastric pH and may have bactericidal properties of its own, has been suggested as a potential substitute for antacids and H-2 blockers.[148-150] The results of clinical trials comparing the risk of pneumonia in patients receiving sucralfate to that in patients given antacids and/or H-2 blockers have been variable.[112,118,147,148,151-153] In most randomized trials, ICU patients receiving mechanically assisted ventilation and antacids with or without H-2 blockers had increased gastric pH, high bacterial counts in the gastric fluid, and increased risk of pneumonia compared with patients given sucralfate.[112,118,147,148,151] In one report with a large number of study patients, the incidence of early-onset pneumonia (occurring ≤ 4 days after intubation) did not differ between patient groups, but late-onset pneumonia occurred in 5% of 76 patients who received sucralfate, 16% of 69 given antacids, and 21% of 68 who received an H-2 blocker.[147] On the other hand, a meta-analysis of data from eight earlier studies[154] and a later study comparing sucralfate with ranitidine[153] did not show a strong association between nosocomial pneumonia and drugs that raise gastric pH. Further comparative studies are under way in which bronchoscopy with PSB or BAL is utilized for the diagnosis of pneumonia.

Selective decontamination of the digestive tract (SDD) is another strategy designed to prevent bacterial colonization and lower respiratory tract infection in mechanically ventilated patients.[155-179] SDD is aimed at preventing oropharyngeal and gastric colonization with aerobic gram-negative bacilli and *Candida* spp., without altering the anaerobic flora (Table 3). A variety of SDD regimens use a combination of locally administered nonabsorbable antibiotic agents such as polymyxin and an aminoglycoside (tobramycin, gentamicin, or, rarely, neomycin) or a quinolone (norfloxacin or ciprofloxacin), coupled with either amphotericin B or nystatin. The local antimicrobial preparation is applied as a paste to the oropharynx and given orally or via the nasogastric tube four times a day. In addition, in many studies, a systemic (intravenous) antimicrobial such as cefotaxime or trimethoprim is administered to the patient.

While most clinical trials,[155-158,160-167,169,170,175-177] including two meta-analyses,[171,178] of SDD have demonstrated a decrease in the rates of nosocomial respiratory infections, these trials have been difficult to assess because they have differed in study design and population, and many have had short follow-up periods (Table 3). In most of these studies, the diagnosis of pneumonia was based on clinical criteria; bronchoscopy with BAL or PSB was used in only a few studies.[159,162,173,175-177,179]

Two recently published large double-blind, placebo-controlled trials demonstrated no benefit from SDD.[173,174] In one, a large French multicenter study by Gastinne et al, a significant decrease in incidence of gram-negative bacillary pneumonia was not accompanied by a decrease in pneumonia from all causes.[173] In the other study, by Hammond et al, no differences were noted between patients randomized to SDD or to placebo; however, both patient groups received intravenous cefotaxime.[174]

Table 2. Risk Factors and Suggested Infection Control Measures for Prevention of Nosocomial Pneumonia

Risk Factors	Infection Control Measures Suggested to Prevent Nosocomial Pneumonia
Bacterial Pneumonia	
Host-Related Age >65 Years	
Underlying illness:	
Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)	Perform incentive spirometry; positive end expiratory pressure or continuous positive airway pressure by face mask.
Immunosuppression	Avoid exposure to potential nosocomial pathogens; decrease duration of immunosuppression, such as by administration of granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GMCSF).
Depressed consciousness	Administer central nervous system depressants cautiously.
Surgery (thoracic/abdominal)	Properly position patients; promote early ambulation; appropriately control pain.
Device-Related	Properly clean, sterilize or disinfect, and handle devices; remove devices as soon as the indication for their use ceases.
Endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation	Gently suction secretions; place patient in semirecumbent position, ie, 30° to 45° head-elevation; use nonalkalinizing gastric cytoprotective agent on patients at risk for stress bleeding; do not routinely change ventilator circuits more often than every 48 hours; drain and discard inspiratory-tubing condensate, or use heat-moisture exchanger if indicated.
Nasogastric tube (NGT) placement and enteral feeding	Routinely verify appropriate tube placement; promptly remove NGT when no longer needed. Drain residual; place patient in semirecumbent position as described above.
Personnel- or Procedure-Related	
Cross-contamination by hands	Educate and train personnel; wash hands adequately and wear gloves appropriately; conduct surveillance for cases of pneumonia, and give feedback to personnel.
Antibiotic administration	Use antibiotics prudently, especially on high-risk intensive-care unit (ICU) patients.
Legionnaires' Disease	
Host-Related	
Immunosuppression	Decrease duration of immunosuppression.
Device-Related	
Contaminated aerosol from devices	Sterilize/disinfect aerosol-producing devices before use; use only sterile water for respiratory humidifying devices; do not use cool-mist room-air "humidifiers" without adequate sterilization or disinfection.
Environment-Related	
Aerosols from contaminated water supply	Hyperchlorinate or superheat hospital water system; routinely maintain water-supply system; consider use of sterile water for drinking by immunosuppressed patients.
Cooling-tower draft	Properly design, place, and maintain cooling towers.
Aspergillosis	
Host-Related	
Severe granulocytopenia	Decrease duration of immunosuppression, such as by administration of GMCSF; place patients with severe and prolonged granulocytopenia in protected environment.
Environment-Related	
Construction activity	Remove granulocytopenic patients from vicinity of construction; if not already done, place severely granulocytopenic patients in protected environment; make severely granulocytopenic patients wear a mask when they leave their protected environment.
Other environmental sources of aspergilli	Routinely maintain hospital air-handling system and rooms of immunosuppressed patients.
Respiratory Syncytial Virus Infection	
Host-Related	
Age <2 Years; Congenital Pulmonary/Cardiac Disease, Immunosuppression	Consider routine preadmission screening of patients at high-risk for severe RSV infection, followed by cohorting of patients and nursing personnel during hospital outbreaks of RSV infection.
Personnel- or Procedure-Related	
Cross-contamination by hands	Educate personnel; wash hands; wear gloves; wear a gown; during outbreaks, use private rooms or cohort patients and nursing personnel, and limit visitors.
Influenza	Place infected patients in private rooms or cohort them.
Host-Related	
Age >65 years; Immunosuppression	Vaccinate high-risk patients before the influenza season each year; use amantadine or rimantadine for chemoprophylaxis during an outbreak.
Personnel-Related	
Infected personnel	Before the influenza season each year, vaccinate personnel caring for high-risk patients; use amantadine or rimantadine for prophylaxis during an outbreak.

Table 3. Controlled Studies on Nosocomial Lower Respiratory Tract Infections and Other Associated Outcomes of Selective Decontamination of the Digestive Tract in Adult Patients with Mechanically Assisted Ventilation

Author	Study Patients	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection: Diagnostic Method	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection: Infection Rate SDD[D] (%)	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection: Infection Rate Controls (%)	Colonization or Infection with Resistant[A] Microorganisms[B] SDD[D] (%)	Colonization or Infection with Resistant[A] Microorganisms[B] Controls (%)	Overall Mortality In Hospital SDD[D] (%)	Overall Mortality In Hospital Controls (%)	Mean Total Number of Days in ICU[C] SDD[D]	Mean Total Number of Days in ICU[C] Controls
Stoutenbeek[155] (1984)	Trauma; SDD = 63; controls = 59	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS culture[F]	8	59	"No increase"		3	8	Not reported	
Unertl[156] (1987)	General ICU; SDD = 19; controls = 20	Clinical & radiologic[E]	21	70	21[G]	20[G]	26	30	18[H]	23[H]
Kerver[157] (1988)	Surgical ICU; SDD = 49; controls = 47	Clinical & radiologic[E]	12	85	"Not recorded"		29; IR[I] = 4	32; IR[I] = 17	17	20
Ledingham[158] (1988)	General ICU; SDD = 163; controls = 161	Clinical & radiologic[E]	2	11	"No increase"		24	24	Not reported	
Brun-Buisson[159] (1989)	Medical ICU; SDD = 36; controls = 50	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS & PSB culture[F]	20	22	3[G]	16[G]	22; IR[I] = 9	24; IR[I] = 10	14	15
Ulrich[160] (1989)	General ICU; SDD = 48; controls = 52	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS culture[F]	15	50	GP = 78[J] GN = 3[J]	GP = 44[J] GN = 2[J]	31; IR[I] = 0	54; IR[I] = 15	17	13
Flaherty[161] (1990)	Cardiac surgery ICU; SDD = 51; controls = 56	Clinical & radiologic[E]	2	9	GN = 22[G]	GN = 21[G]	0	2	Not reported	
Godard[162] (1990)	General ICU; SDD = 97; controls = 84	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS & PSB culture[F]	2	15	GN = 15[J]	GN = 15[J]	12	18	11	16
McClelland[163] (1990)	Renal & respiratory failure; SDD = 15; controls = 12	TS culture[F]	7	50	Not reported		60; IR[I] = 27	58; IR[I] = 8	Not reported	
Rodriquez-Roldan[164] (1990)	General ICU; SDD = 13; controls = 15	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS culture[F]	Pn = 0[K] TB = 23[K]	Pn = 73[K] TB = 20[K]	"None noticed"		30; IR[I] = 0	33; IR[I] = 13	Not reported	
Tetteroo[165] (1990)	Esophageal resection; SDD = 56; controls = 56	Clinical & radiologic;[F] culture of bronchial aspirate	2	14	2[G]	4[G]	5; IR[I] = 4	4; IR[I] = 0	6	5
Aerdts[166] (1991)	General ICU; SDD = 17; controls-A = 18[L]; controls-B = 21[L]	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS culture[F]	6	A = 78; B = 62	"Not Observed"		12; IR[I] = 6	A = 22; IR[I] = 11; B = 10; IR[I] = 0	23	A = 30; B = 25
Blair[167] (1991)	General ICU; SDD = 126; controls = 130	Clinical & radiologic[E]	10	35	"No evidence of increased resistance"		14	19	8	8
Fox[168] (1991)	Cardiac bypass; SDD = 12; controls = 12	TS culture[F]	66	50	Not reported		17	66	12	12
Hartenauer[169] (1991)	Surgical ICU *ICU-1*: SDD = 50; controls = 61	Clinical & radiologic;[F] TS culture[F]	10	46	S = 34[G]; GN = 0[G]	S = 33[G]; GN = 0[G]	38 IR[I] = 8	35; IR[I] = 21	12	13
	ICU-2: SDD = 49; controls = 40		10	45	S = 37;[G] GN = 0[G]	S = 37;[G] GN = 0[G]	31; IR[I] = 6	43; IR[I] = 25	13	17

Table 3 (continued) Controlled Studies on Nosocomial Lower Respiratory Tract Infections and Other Associated Outcomes of Selective Decontamination of the Digestive Tract in Adult Patients with Mechanically Assisted Ventilation

Author	Study Patients	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection: Diagnostic Method	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection: Infection Rate SDD[D] (%)	Lower Respiratory Tract Infection: Infection Rate Controls (%)	Colonization or Infection with Resistant[A] Microorganisms[B] SDD[D] (%)	Colonization or Infection with Resistant[A] Microorganisms[B] Controls (%)	Overall Mortality In Hospital SDD[D] (%)	Overall Mortality In Hospital Controls (%)	Mean Total Number of Days in ICU[C] SDD[D]	Mean Total Number of Days in ICU[C] Controls
Pugin[170] (1991)	Surgical ICU; SDD = 25; controls = 27	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS culture[F]	16	78	"No new antibiotic resistance"		28	26	13	15
Vandenbroucke-Grauls[171] (1991)	ICUs (pooled data);[M] *SDD-A* = 488; controls-A (historical) = 540; *SDD-B* = 225; controls-B (random) = 266	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS culture[F]	A = 7; B = 8	A = 28; B = 45	"No increase in resistant microorganisms in 10 of 11 studies"		A = 25; B = 21	A = 26; B = 26	Not reported	
Cockerill[172] (1992)	Surgical and medical ICUs; SDD = 75; controls = 75	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS culture[F]	Pn = 5[K]; TB = 4[K]	Pn = 16[K]; TB = 5[K]	16[J]	11[J]	15	21	10	12
Gastinne[173] (1992)	Medical ICU; SDD = 220; controls = 225	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS ± PSB culture[F]	12	15	Not reported		40; 34[N]	36; 34[N]	18	19
Hammond[174] (1992)	General ICU; SDD = 114; controls = 125	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS culture[F]	Pn = 15;[K] Br = 6[K]	Pn = 15;[K] Br = 6[K]	Not reported[O]		18; IR[I] = 6	17; IR[I] = 6	16	17
Rocha[175] (1992)	General ICU; SDD = 47; controls = 54	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS ± BAL culture[F]	26	63	GP = 62;[J] GN = 43[J]	GP = 38;[J] GN = 30[J]	21; IR[I] = 2	44; IR[I] = 20	19	18
Winter[176] (1992)	General ICU; SDD = 91; *control-A* = 84; *control-B* = 92	Clinical & radiologic;[E] BAL culture[F]	3	A = 11; B = 23	1-8[J]	A = 1-7;[J] B = 1-17[J]	36	A = 43; B = 43	6	A = 7; B = 8
Korinek[177] (1993)	Neurosurgical ICU; SDD = 63; controls = 60	Clinical & Radiologic;[E] TS & PSB culture[F]	24	42	"No evidence of increased resistance"		8	7	24	29
SDD Trialists[178] (1993)	ICUs (pooled data);[M] SDD = 2047; controls = 2095	Variable	Odds ratio = 0.37;[P] CI_{95}[Q], 0.31-0.43		Not analyzed		27 Odds ratio = 0.90; CI_{95}[Q], 0.79-1.04	29	Not analyzed	
Ferrer[179] (1994)	Respiratory ICU; SDD = 39; controls = 41	Clinical & radiologic;[E] TS + PSB or BAL culture[F] ± autopsy histology	18	24	Not reported[R]		31	27	Not reported	

[A] Resistant to at least one antimicrobial in the SDD regimen
[B] During the study period
[C] ICU = intensive care unit
[D] SDD = selective digestive tract decontamination
[E] Clinical criteria included temperature > 38°C, purulent bronchorrhea, WBC > (12,000-15,000/mm³). Radiologic criterion was evidence of new and progressive infiltrate(s)
[F] TS = tracheal secretions; PSB = protected-specimen brushing; BAL = broncho-alveolar lavage
[G] Percentage of patients infected or colonized with gram-positive (GP) and/or gram-negative bacillary (GN) organisms at any body site; GP = percentage of patients infected or colonized with gram-positive organisms at any body site; GN = percentage of patients infected or colonized with gram-negative bacillary organisms at any body site; S = Percentage of patients with coagulase-negative staphylococcal infection or colonization
[H] Median
[I] IR = Infection-related
[J] Percentage of isolates; GP = percentage of gram-positive isolates; GN = percentage of gram-negative bacillary isolates
[K] Pn = pneumonia, TB = tracheo-bronchial infection; Br = bronchial infection
[L] Control-A = patients given penicillin (ampicillin, piperacillin, or flucloxacillin) for clinical infection(s), Control-B = patients given cephalosporin (cephadrine, cefuroxime, or cefotaxime) for clinical infection(s)
[M] Meta-analysis
[N] In ICU
[O] However, at 4 weeks, 13% and 5%, respectively, of oropharyngeal cultures of SDD and control patients had MRSA, and 41% of SDD and control patients were colonized with enterococci
[P] Computed using data from 3,836 patients and 526 events, 260 in SDD- and 366 in control-patients
[Q] CI_{95} = 95% confidence interval
[R] However, MRSA bronchial colonization occurred in 45% of SDD patients and 21% of controls

Although an earlier meta-analysis suggested a trend toward decreased mortality in patients given SDD,[171] a more recent and more extensive analysis highlights the equivocal effect of SDD on patient mortality, as well as the high cost of using SDD to prevent pneumonia or death (ie, in order to prevent one case of nosocomial pneumonia, or one death due to nosocomial pneumonia, 6 [range: 5-9] or 23 [range: 13-39] patients, respectively, would have to be given SDD).[178] Furthermore, there are concerns over the development of antimicrobial resistance and superinfection with gram-positive bacteria and other antibiotic-resistant nosocomial pathogens.[156,158,159,161,175,180] Thus, currently available data do not justify the routine use of SDD for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia in ICU patients. SDD may be ultimately useful for specific subsets of ICU patients, such as those with trauma or severe immunosuppression, eg, bone-marrow transplant recipients.

A new approach advocated to prevent oropharyngeal colonization in patients receiving enteral nutrition is to reduce bacterial colonization of the stomach by acidifying the enteral feed.[181] Although the absence of bacteria from the stomach has been confirmed in patients given acidified enteral feeding, the effect on the incidence of nosocomial pneumonia has not been evaluated.[181]

B. Aspiration of Oropharyngeal and Gastric Flora

Clinically significant aspiration usually occurs in patients who have one or more of the following conditions: a depressed level of consciousness; dysphagia due to neurologic or esophageal disorders; an endotracheal (naso- or orotracheal), tracheostomy, or enteral (naso- or orogastric tube) in place, and receipt of enteral feeding.[35,84,85,182-186] Placement of an enteral tube may increase nasopharyngeal colonization, cause reflux of gastric contents, or allow bacterial migration via the tube from the stomach to the upper airway.[183,186-188] When enteral feedings are administered, gross contamination of the enteral solution during preparation[189-191] and elevated gastric pH[70,192,193] may lead to gastric colonization with gram-negative bacilli. In addition, gastric reflux and aspiration may occur because of increased intragastric volume and pressure.[70,117,183]

Prevention of pneumonia in such patients may be difficult, but methods that make regurgitation less likely (for example, placing the patient in a semirecumbent position by elevating the head of the bed and withholding enteral feeding when the residual volume in the stomach is large or if bowel sounds are not heard upon auscultation of the abdomen) may be beneficial.[185,194-197] On the other hand, administering enteral nutrition intermittently in small boluses rather than continuously;[70,193] using flexible, small-bore enteral tubes;[186,198] or placing the enteral tube below the stomach (eg, in the jejunum[199,200]) have yielded equivocal results.

C. Mechanically Assisted Ventilation and Endotracheal Intubation

Patients receiving continuous, mechanically assisted ventilation have 6-21 times the risk of developing nosocomial pneumonia compared with patients not receiving ventilatory support.[34,63,65,75] Data from the study by Fagon and co-workers indicate that the risk of developing ventilator-associated pneumonia increases by 1% per day.[5] This increased risk is partly due to carriage of oropharyngeal organisms upon passage of the endotracheal tube into the trachea during intubation, as well as to depressed host defenses secondary to the patient's severe underlying illness.[6,34,35,201] In addition, bacteria can aggregate on the surface of the tube over time and form a glycocalyx (biofilm) that protects the bacteria from the action of antimicrobial agents or host defenses.[202] Some investigators believe that these bacterial aggregates may become dislodged by ventilation flow, tube manipulation, or suctioning and subsequently embolize into the lower respiratory tract and cause focal pneumonia.[203,204] Removing tracheal secretions by gentle suctioning and using aseptic technique to reduce cross-contamination to patients from contaminated respiratory therapy equipment or contaminated or colonized hands of personnel have been utilized traditionally to help prevent pneumonia in patients receiving mechanically assisted ventilation.

The risk of pneumonia is also increased by the direct access of bacteria to the lower respiratory tract, often because of leakage around the endotracheal tube cuff,[86,205] which allows pooled secretions above the cuff to enter the trachea.[206] In one recent study, the occurrence of nosocomial pneumonia was delayed and decreased in intubated patients whose endotracheal tubes had a separate dorsal lumen that allowed drainage (by suctioning) of secretions in the space above the endotracheal tube cuff and below the glottis.[206] However, further studies are needed to determine the cost-benefit ratio of using this device.

D. Cross-Colonization Via Hands of Personnel

Pathogens causing nosocomial pneumonia, such as gram-negative bacilli and *Staphylococcus aureus*, are ubiquitous in the hospital, especially in intensive or critical care areas.[207,208] Transmission of these microorganisms to patients frequently occurs via health-care workers' hands that become contaminated or transiently colonized with the microorganisms.[209-215] Procedures such as tracheal suctioning and manipulation of ventilator circuit or endotracheal tubes increase the opportunity for cross-contamination.[215,216] The risk of cross-contamination can be reduced by using aseptic technique and sterile or disinfected equipment when appropriate[65] and by eliminating pathogens from the hands of personnel.[65,215,217-219]

In theory, adequate handwashing is an effective way of removing transient bacteria from the hands,[218,219] but personnel compliance with handwashing has been generally poor.[220-223] For this reason, the routine use of gloves has been advocated to help prevent cross-contamination.[224,225] Routine gloving (in addition to gowning) was associated with a decrease in the incidence of nosocomial respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)[226] and other ICU infections.[227] However, nosocomial pathogens can colonize gloves,[228] and outbreaks have been traced to health-care workers who did not change gloves after contact with one patient and before providing care to another.[229,230] In addition, gloved hands may get contaminated via leaks in the gloves.[231]

E. Contamination of Devices Used on the Respiratory Tract

Devices used on the respiratory tract for respiratory therapy (eg, nebulizer), diagnostic examination (eg, bronchoscope or spirometer), or administration of anesthesia are potential reservoirs or vehicles for infectious microorganisms.[65,232-236] Routes of transmission may be from device to patient,[127,129,234-244] from one patient to another,[245,246] or from one body site to the

lower respiratory tract of the same patient via hand or device.[233,246-248] Contaminated reservoirs of aerosol-producing devices, eg, nebulizers, can allow the growth of hydrophilic bacteria that may be subsequently aerosolized during device use,[126,129,130,242] Gram-negative bacilli such as *Pseudomonas* spp., *Xanthomonas* spp., *Flavobacterium* spp., *Legionella* spp., and nontuberculous mycobacteria can multiply to substantial concentrations in nebulizer fluid[241,249-251] and increase the device-user's risk of acquiring pneumonia.[127-130,241,242,252,253]

Proper cleaning and sterilization or disinfection of reusable equipment are important components of a program to reduce infections associated with respiratory therapy and anesthesia equipment.[234,235,237-240,242,254-259] Many devices or parts of devices used on the respiratory tract have been categorized as semicritical in the Spaulding classification system for appropriate sterilization or disinfection of medical devices because they come into direct or indirect contact with mucous membranes but do not ordinarily penetrate body surfaces (See Appendix A), and the associated infection risk following the use of these devices in patients is less than that associated with devices that penetrate normally sterile tissues.[260] Thus, if it is not possible or cost-effective to sterilize these devices by steam autoclave or ethylene oxide,[261] they can be subjected to high-level disinfection by pasteurization at 75°C for 30 min,[262-265] or by using liquid chemical disinfectants approved by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) as sterilants/disinfectants and cleared for marketing for use on medical instruments by the Food and Drug Administration.[225,266-268]

When rinsing is needed (to remove residual liquid chemical sterilant/disinfectant) after a respiratory device has been chemically disinfected, sterile water has been preferred because tap or locally prepared distilled water may harbor microorganisms that can cause pneumonia.[249,250,269-272] In some hospitals, a tap-water rinse followed by air-drying with or without an alcohol rinse (to hasten drying) is used.[273] In theory, if complete drying is achieved following a tap-water rinse, the risk of nosocomial pneumonia associated with the use of the device is probably low. Drying has been shown to lower the level of microbial contamination of gastrointestinal endoscopes and washed hands.[274-276] However, many semicritical items used on the respiratory tract (eg, corrugated tubing, jet or ultrasonic nebulizers, bronchoscopes) are difficult to dry and the degree of dryness of a device is difficult to assess.[265] Data are lacking regarding the safety of routinely using tap water for rinsing (followed by drying) reusable semicritical respiratory devices after their disinfection or between their uses on the same patient.[242,258,273,277]

1. Mechanical Ventilators, Breathing Circuits, Humidifiers, Heat-Moisture Exchangers and In-Line Nebulizers

a. *Mechanical ventilators.* The internal machinery of mechanical ventilators used for respiratory therapy is not considered an important source of bacterial contamination of inhaled gas.[278] Thus, routine sterilization or high-level disinfection of the internal machinery is considered unnecessary. Using high-efficiency bacterial filters at various positions in the ventilator breathing circuit had been advocated previously.[279,280] Filters interposed between the machinery and the main breathing circuit can eliminate contaminants from the driving gas and prevent retrograde contamination of the machine by the patient but may also alter the functional specifications of the breathing device by impeding high gas flows.[279-281] Placement of a filter or condensate trap at the expiratory-phase tubing of the mechanical- ventilator circuit may help prevent cross-contamination of the ventilated patient's immediate environment,[247,282] but the importance of such filters in preventing nosocomial pneumonia needs further evaluation.

b. *Breathing circuits, humidifiers, and heat-moisture exchangers.* Most U.S. hospitals currently use ventilators with either bubble-through or wick humidifiers that produce either insignificant[132,283] or no aerosols, respectively, for humidification. Thus, they do not seem to pose an important risk for pneumonia in patients. In addition, bubble-through humidifiers are usually heated to temperatures that reduce or eliminate bacterial pathogens.[283,284] Sterile water, however, is still generally used to fill these humidifiers[285] because tap or distilled water may harbor microorganisms, such as *Legionella* spp., that are more heat-resistant than other bacteria.[252,271]

The potential risk for pneumonia in patients using mechanical ventilators with heated bubble-through humidifiers stems primarily from the condensate that forms in the inspiratory-phase tubing of the ventilator circuit as a result of the difference in the temperatures of the inspiratory-phase gas and ambient air; condensate formation increases if the tubing is unheated.[286] The tubing and condensate can rapidly become contaminated, usually with bacteria that originate from the patient's oropharynx.[286] In the study by Craven et al, 33% of inspiratory circuits were colonized with bacteria from patients' oropharynx within 2 hours and 80% within 24 hours of use.[286] Spillage of the contaminated condensate into the patient's tracheobronchial tree, as can occur during procedures in which the tubing may be moved (eg, suctioning, adjusting the ventilator setting, or feeding or caring for the patient), may increase the risk of pneumonia in the patient.[286] Thus, in many hospitals, health-care workers are trained to prevent such spillage and to drain the fluid periodically. Microorganisms contaminating ventilator-circuit condensate can be transmitted to other patients via hands of the health-care worker handling the fluid, especially if the health-care worker fails to wash his or her hands after handling the condensate.

The role of ventilator-tubing changes in preventing pneumonia in patients using mechanical ventilators with bubble-through humidifiers has been investigated. Initial studies of in-use contamination of mechanical ventilator circuits with humidifiers have shown that neither the rate of bacterial contamination of inspiratory-phase gas nor the incidence of pneumonia was significantly increased when tubing was changed every 24 hours rather than every 8 or 16 hours.[287] Craven et al later showed that changing the ventilator circuit every 48 hours rather than 24 hours did not result in an increase in contamination of the inspiratory-phase gas or tubing of the ventilator circuits.[288] In addition, the incidence of nosocomial pneumonia was not significantly higher when circuits were changed every 48 hours than when changes were done every 24 hours.[288] More recent reports suggest that the risk of pneumonia may not increase when the interval for circuit change is prolonged beyond 48 hours. Dreyfuss and others showed that the risk of pneumonia (8 [29%] of 28) was not significantly higher when the circuits were never changed for the duration of use by the patient, than (11 [31%] of 35) when the circuits were changed every 48 hours.[289]

These findings indicate that the recommended daily change in ventilator circuits may be extended to ≥ 48 hours. This change

in recommendation is expected to result in large savings in device use and personnel time for U.S. hospitals.[285,288] The maximum time, however, that a circuit can be safely left unchanged on a patient has yet to be determined.

Condensate formation in the inspiratory-phase tubing of a ventilator breathing circuit can be decreased by elevating the temperature of the inspiratory-phase gas with a heated wire in the inspiratory-phase tubing. However, in one report, three cases of endotracheal- or tracheostomy-tube blockage by dried-up patient secretions were attributed to the decrease in the relative humidity of inspired gas that results from the elevation of the gas temperature.[289] Until further data are available about the frequency of the occurrence of such cases, users of heated ventilator tubing should be aware of the advantages and potential complications of using heated tubing.

Condensate formation can be eliminated by using a heat-moisture exchanger (HME) or a hygroscopic condenser humidifier ("artificial nose").[291-296] An HME recycles heat and moisture exhaled by the patient, and eliminates the need for a humidifier. In the absence of a humidifier, no condensate forms in the inspiratory-phase tubing of the ventilator circuit. Thus, bacterial colonization of the tubing is prevented, and the need to routinely change the tubing periodically is obviated.[216] Some models of HMEs are equipped with bacterial filters, but the advantage of these filters remains unknown. HMEs can increase the dead space and resistance to breathing, may leak around the endotracheal tube, and may result in drying of sputum and blockage of the tracheobronchial tree.[297] Although recently developed HMEs with humidifiers increase airway humidity without increasing colonization with bacteria,[293,298] more studies are needed to determine whether the incidence of pneumonia is decreased.[299-302]

c. *Small-Volume ("In-Line") Medication Nebulizers.* Small-volume medication nebulizers that are inserted in the inspiratory circuit of mechanical ventilators can produce bacterial aerosols.[242] If they become contaminated by condensate in the inspiratory tubing of the breathing circuit, they can increase the patient's risk of pneumonia because the nebulizer aerosol is directed through the endotracheal tube and bypasses many of the normal host defenses against infection.[296]

2. **Large-Volume Nebulizers**. Nebulizers with large-volume (> 500 cc) reservoirs, including those used in intermittent positive-pressure breathing (IPPB) machines and ultrasonic or spinning-disk room-air "humidifiers," pose the greatest risk of pneumonia to patients, probably because of the total amount of aerosol they generate.[237-241,252,303] These reservoirs can become contaminated by hands of personnel, unsterile humidification fluid, or inadequate sterilization or disinfection between uses.[126] Once introduced into the reservoir, various bacteria, including *Legionella* spp., can multiply to sufficiently large numbers within 24 hours to pose a risk of infection in patients who receive inhalation therapy.[128,129,241,253,303] Sterilization or high-level disinfection of these nebulizers can eliminate vegetative bacteria from their reservoirs and make them safe for patient use.[241] Unlike nebulizers attached to IPPB machines, however, room-air "humidifiers" have a high cost-benefit ratio: evidence of clinical benefits from their use in hospitals is lacking, and the potential cost of daily sterilization or disinfection of, and use of sterile water to fill, such devices is substantial.

3. **Hand-Held Small-Volume Medication Nebulizers.** Small-volume medication nebulizers for administration of bronchodilators, including those that are hand-held, can produce bacterial aerosols. Hand-held nebulizers have been associated with nosocomial pneumonia, including Legionnaires' disease, resulting from contamination with medications from multidose vials[304] or Legionella-contaminated tap water used for rinsing and filling the reservoir.[258]

4. **Suction Catheters, Resuscitation Bags, Oxygen Analyzers, and Ventilator Spirometers.** Tracheal suction catheters can introduce microorganisms into a patient's lower respiratory tract. Currently, there are two types of suction-catheter systems used in U.S. hospitals, the open single-use catheter system and the closed multi-use catheter system. Studies comparing the two systems have involved small numbers of patients; results suggest that the risk of catheter contamination or pneumonia is not different between patients on whom the single-use suction method is used and those on whom the closed multi-use catheter system is used.[305-307] While advantages of cost and decreased environmental contamination have been attributed to the use of the closed-suction system,[308,309] larger studies are needed to weigh the advantages and disadvantages of one system over the other.[310]

Reusable resuscitation bags are particularly difficult to clean and dry between uses; microorganisms in secretions or fluid left in the bag may be aerosolized and/or sprayed into the lower respiratory tract of the patient on whom the bag is used; in addition, contaminating microorganisms may be transmitted from one patient to another via hands of staff members.[311-313] Oxygen analyzers and ventilator spirometers have been associated with outbreaks of gram-negative respiratory tract colonization and pneumonia resulting from patient-to-patient transmission of organisms via hands of personnel.[233,245] These devices require sterilization or high-level disinfection between uses on different patients. Education of physicians, respiratory therapists, and nursing staff regarding the associated risks and appropriate care of these devices is essential.

5. **Anesthesia Equipment**. The contributory role of anesthesia equipment in outbreaks of nosocomial pneumonia were reported before hospitals implemented routine after-use cleaning and disinfection/sterilization of reusable anesthesia-equipment components that may become contaminated with pathogens during use.[314,315]

a. *Anesthesia machine.* The internal components of anesthesia machines, which include the gas sources and outlets, gas valves, pressure regulators, flowmeters, and vaporizers, are not considered an important source of bacterial contamination of inhaled gases.[316] Thus, routine sterilization or high-level disinfection of the internal machinery is considered unnecessary.

b. *Breathing system or patient circuit.* The breathing system or patient circuit, through which inhaled and/or exhaled gases flow to and from a patient (and may include the tracheal tube or face mask; inspiratory and expiratory tubing; Y-piece; CO_2 absorber and its chamber; the anesthesia ventilator bellows and tubing; humidifier; adjustable pressure-limiting valve; and other devices and accessories), can become contaminated with microorganisms that may originate from the patient's oropharynx or trachea. Recommendations for in-use care, maintenance, and reprocessing (ie, cleaning and disinfection or sterilization) of these components of the breathing system have been published.[317,318] In general, reusable components that directly touch a patient's mucous membranes (eg, face

mask or tracheal tube) or become readily contaminated with a patient's respiratory secretions (eg, Y-piece, inspiratory and expiratory tubing, and attached sensors) are cleaned and subjected to high-level disinfection or sterilization between patients. The other parts of the breathing system (eg, carbon dioxide absorber and its chamber), for which an appropriate and cost-effective schedule of reprocessing has not been firmly determined,[319] are changed, cleaned, and sterilized or subjected to high-level disinfection periodically, according to published guidelines[317,318] and/or their manufacturers' instructions.

Using high-efficiency bacterial filters at various positions in the patient circuit, eg, at the Y-piece or on the inspiratory and expiratory sides of the patient circuit, has been advocated[1,317,320,321] and shown to decrease contamination of the circuit.[321-323] However, the use of bacterial filters to prevent nosocomial pulmonary infections has not been shown effective and needs further study.[324-326]

6. Pulmonary Function Testing Apparatus

a. *Internal parts of pulmonary function testing apparatus.* In general, the internal parts of pulmonary function testing apparatus are not considered an important source of bacterial contamination of inhaled gas.[327] However, because of concern about possible carry-over of bacterial aerosols from an infectious patient- user of the apparatus to the next patient,[246,328] placement of bacterial filters (that remove exhaled bacteria) between the patient and the testing equipment has been recently advocated.[246,329] More studies are needed to evaluate the need for and efficacy of these filters in preventing nosocomial pneumonia.[330]

b. *Tubing, rebreathing valves, and mouthpieces.* Tubing, connectors, rebreathing valves, and mouthpieces may become contaminated with patient secretions during use of the pulmonary function testing apparatus. Thus, they are cleaned and subjected to high-level disinfection or sterilization between uses on different patients.

F. Thoracoabdominal Surgical Procedures

Certain patients are at high risk of developing postoperative pulmonary complications, including pneumonia. These persons include those who are more than 70 years of age, are obese, or have chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.[331-334] Abnormal pulmonary function tests (especially decreased maximum expiration flow rate), a history of smoking, the presence of tracheostomy or prolonged intubation, or protein depletion that can cause respiratory-muscle weakness are also risk factors.[62,68,136] Patients who undergo surgery of the head, neck, thorax, or abdomen may suffer from impairment of normal swallowing and respiratory clearance mechanisms as a result of instrumentation of the respiratory tract, anesthesia, or increased use of narcotics and sedatives;[332,335,336] patients who undergo upper abdominal surgery usually suffer from diaphragmatic dysfunction that results in decreased functional residual capacity of the lungs, closure of airways, and atelectasis.[337,338] Interventions aimed at reducing the postoperative patient's risk of pneumonia have been developed.[339] These include deep breathing exercises, chest physiotherapy, use of incentive spirometry, IPPB, and continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) by face mask.[339-349] Studies evaluating the relative efficacy of these modalities have shown variable results, and have been difficult to compare because of differences in outcome variables assessed, patient populations studied, and study design.[339,341,342,348-350] Nevertheless, many studies have found deep breathing exercises, use of incentive spirometry, and IPPB as advantageous maneuvers, especially in patients with preoperative pulmonary dysfunction.[342,343,345,346,348-350] In addition, control of pain that interferes with cough and deep breathing during the immediate postoperative period has been shown to decrease the incidence of pulmonary complications after surgery; several methods of controlling pain have been used; these include intramuscular or intravenous (including patient-controlled) administration, or regional (eg, epidural) analgesia.[351-358]

G. Other Prophylactic Measures

1. **Vaccination of Patients.** Although pneumococci are not a major cause of nosocomial pneumonia, they have been identified as etiologic agents of serious nosocomial pulmonary infection and bacteremia.[359-361] The following factors render patients at high risk of complications from pneumococcal infections: ≥ 65 years of age, chronic cardiovascular or pulmonary disease, diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, cirrhosis, cerebrospinal fluid leaks, immunosuppression, functional or anatomic asplenia, or HIV infection. Pneumococcal vaccine is effective in preventing pneumococcal disease.[362,363] Because two thirds or more of patients with serious pneumococcal disease have been hospitalized at least once within 5 years before their pneumococcal illness, offering pneumococcal vaccine in hospitals, eg, at the time of patient discharge, should contribute substantially to preventing the disease.[362,364]

2. **Prophylaxis with Systemic Antimicrobial Agents.** Systemic antimicrobial administration has been a prevalent practice in the prevention of nosocomial infections,[365] including pneumonia,[366] especially in patients who are weaned off mechanical ventilators, postoperative, and/or critically ill.[367] However, the efficacy of such practice is questionable and the potential for superinfection, which may result from any antimicrobial therapy, is a problem.[74,91,366-371]

3. **Use of "Kinetic Beds" or Continuous Lateral Rotational Therapy (CLRT) for the Immobilized State.** Use of kinetic beds or CLRT is a maneuver for prevention of pulmonary and other complications from prolonged immobilization or bed rest, such as in patients with acute stroke, critical illness, head injury or traction, blunt chest trauma, and/or mechanically assisted ventilation.[372-377] This involves the use of a bed that turns continuously and slowly (from ≤ 40° for CLRT to ≥ 40° for kinetic therapy) along its longitudinal axis. Among the hypothesized benefits are improved drainage of secretions within the lungs and lower airways, increased tidal volume, and reduction of venous thrombosis with resultant pulmonary embolization.[378-381] However, the efficacy in preventing pneumonia needs further evaluation because studies have yielded variable results.[372-376] In addition, the studies either involved small numbers of patients,[373] lacked adequate randomization,[372] had no clear definition of pneumonia,[372] did not distinguish between community-acquired and nosocomial pneumonia,[373,377] or did not adjust for possible confounding factors such as mechanical ventilation, endotracheal intubation, nasogastric intubation, and enteral feeding.[372]

LEGIONNAIRES' DISEASE

Legionnaires' disease is a multisystem illness, with pneumonia, caused by

Legionella spp. In contrast, Pontiac fever is a self-limited influenza-like illness, without pneumonia, that is associated with *Legionella* spp.[382]

I. Epidemiology

Since identification of the etiologic agent, numerous outbreaks of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease have been reported and have provided the opportunity to study the epidemiology of epidemic legionellosis. In contrast, the epidemiology of sporadic (ie, nonout break-related) nosocomial Legionnaires' disease has not been well elucidated. However, data suggest that when one case is recognized, the presence of additional cases should be suspected. Of 196 cases of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease reported in England and Wales during 1980 to 1992, 69% occurred during 22 nosocomial outbreaks (defined as two or more cases occurring at an institution during a 6-month period).[383] Nine per cent of cases occurred > 6 months before or after a hospital outbreak. Another 13% were in hospitals where other sporadic cases (but no outbreaks) were identified. Only 9% occurred at institutions where no outbreaks or additional sporadic cases were identified.

The overall proportion of nosocomial pneumonias due to *Legionella* spp. in North America has not been determined, although individual hospitals have reported ranges of 0%-14%.[384-386] Because diagnostic tests for *Legionella* spp. infection are not routinely performed on all patients with hospital-acquired pneumonia in most U.S. hospitals, these ranges probably underestimate the incidence of Legionnaires' disease.

Legionella spp. are commonly found in a variety of natural and man-made aquatic environments[387,388] and may enter hospital water systems in low or undetectable numbers.[389,390] Cooling towers, evaporative condensers, heated potable-water-distribution systems within hospitals, and locally produced distilled water can provide a suitable environment for legionellae to multiply. Factors known to enhance colonization and amplification of legionellae in man-made water environments include temperatures of 25-42°C,[392-396] stagnation,[397] scale and sediment,[393] and the presence of certain free-living aquatic amoebae that are capable of supporting intracellular growth of legionellae.[398,399]

A person's risk of acquiring legionellosis following exposure to contaminated water depends on a number of factors, including the type and intensity of exposure and the exposed person's health status.[400-402] Persons with severe immunosuppression or chronic underlying illnesses, such as hematologic malignancy or end-stage renal disease, are at markedly increased risk for legionellosis.[402-405] Persons in the later stages of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome are also probably at increased risk of legionellosis, but data are limited because of infrequent testing of patients.[402] Persons with diabetes mellitus, chronic lung disease, or non-hematologic malignancy, those who smoke cigarettes, and the elderly are at moderately increased risk.[382] Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease has also been reported among patients at children's hospitals.[406,407]

Underlying disease and advanced age are not only risk factors for acquiring Legionnaires' disease but also for dying from the illness. In a multivariate analysis of 3,524 cases reported to CDC from 1980 through 1989, immunosuppression, advanced age, end-stage renal disease, cancer, and nosocomial acquisition of disease were each independently associated with a fatal outcome.[402] The mortality rate among 803 persons with nosocomially acquired cases was 40% compared with 20% among 2,721 persons with community-acquired cases,[402] probably reflecting increased severity of underlying disease in hospitalized patients.

II. Diagnosis

The clinical spectrum of disease due to *Legionella* spp. is broad and ranges from asymptomatic infection to rapidly progressive pneumonia. Legionnaires' disease cannot be distinguished clinically or radiographically from pneumonia caused by other agents,[408,409] and evidence of infection with other respiratory pathogens does not rule out the possibility of concomitant *Legionella* spp. infection.[410-412]

The diagnosis of legionellosis may be confirmed by any one of the following: culture isolation of *Legionella* from respiratory secretions or tissues, or microscopic visualization of the bacterium in respiratory secretions or tissue by immunofluorescent microscopy; and, for legionellosis due to *L pneumophila* serogroup 1, detection of *L pneumophila* serogroup-1 antigens in urine by radioimmunoassay, or observation of a fourfold rise in *L pneumophila* serogroup-1 antibody titer to ≥ 1:128 in paired acute and convalescent serum specimens by use of an indirect immunofluorescent antibody test (IFA).[413,419] A single elevated antibody titer does not confirm a case of Legionnaires' disease because IFA titers ≥ 1:256 are found in 1-16% of healthy adults.[411,414-417]

Because the above tests complement each other, performing each test when Legionnaires' disease is suspected increases the probability of confirming the diagnosis.[418] However, because none of the laboratory tests is 100% sensitive, the diagnosis of legionellosis is not ruled out even if one or more of the tests are negative.[418,419] Of the available tests, the most specific is culture isolation of *Legionella* spp. from any respiratory tract specimen.[420,421]

III. Modes of Transmission

Inhalation of aerosols of water contaminated with *Legionella* spp. is believed to be the primary mechanism of entry of these organisms into a patient's respiratory tract.[382] In several hospital outbreaks, patients were considered to be infected through exposure to contaminated aerosols generated by cooling towers, showers, faucets, respiratory therapy equipment, and room-air humidifiers.[11,241,258,422-428] In other studies, aspiration of contaminated potable water or pharyngeal colonizers has been proposed as the mode of transmission to certain patients.[426,429-431] Person-to-person transmission, however, has not been observed.

IV. Definition of Nosocomial Legionnaires' Disease

The incubation period for Legionnaires' disease is generally 2-10 days;[432] thus, for epidemiologic purposes, in this document and in the accompanying recommendations by the HICPAC, laboratory-confirmed legionellosis that occurs in a patient who has spent ≥ 10 days continuously in the hospital prior to onset of illness is considered *definite* nosocomial Legionnaires' disease, and laboratory-confirmed infection that occurs 2-9 days after hospitalization is *possible* nosocomial infection.

V. Prevention and Control Measures

A. Prevention of Legionnaires' Disease in Hospitals with No Identified Cases (Primary Prevention)

Prevention strategies in health-care facilities with no cases of nosocomial legionellosis have varied by institution, depending on the immunologic status of the patients, the design and construction of the facility, resources available for implementation of prevention strategies, and state and local regulations.

There are at least two schools of thought regarding the most appropriate and cost-effective approach to prevent nosocomial legionellosis, especially in hospitals where no cases or only sporadic cases of the illness are detected. However, a study comparing the cost-benefit ratios of these strategies has not been done.

The first approach is based on periodic, routine culturing of water samples from the hospital's potable water system, for *Legionella* spp.[433,434] When ≥ 30% of the samples obtained are culture-positive for *Legionella* spp., the hospital's potable water system is decontaminated[434] and diagnostic laboratory tests for legionellosis are made available to clinicians in the hospital's microbiology department so that active surveillance for cases can be instituted.[434,435] This approach is based on the premise that no cases of nosocomial legionellosis can occur in the absence of *Legionella* spp. from the potable water system, and, conversely, once *Legionella* spp. are cultured from the water, cases of nosocomial legionellosis may occur.[429,436] Proponents of this strategy indicate that when physicians are informed that the potable water system of the hospital is culture-positive for *Legionella* spp., they are more inclined to conduct the necessary tests for legionellosis.[435] A potential advantage of this approach is the lower cost of culturing a limited number of water samples, if the testing is done infrequently, compared with the cost of routine laboratory diagnostic testing for legionellosis in all patients with nosocomial pneumonia in hospitals that have had no cases of nosocomial legionellosis.

The main argument against this approach is that in the absence of cases, the relationship between the results of water cultures and the risk of legionellosis remains undefined. The bacterium has been frequently present in hospital water systems,[437] often without being associated with known cases of disease.[271,385,438,439] In a study of 84 hospitals in Quebec, 68% were found to be colonized with *Legionella* spp., and 26% were colonized at > 30% of sites sampled; however, cases of Legionnaires' disease were rarely reported from these hospitals.[271] Similarly, at one hospital where active surveillance for legionellosis and environmental culturing for *Legionella* spp. were done, no cases of legionellosis occurred in a urology ward during a 3.5-month period when 70% of water samples from the ward were culture-positive for *L pneumophila* serogroup 1.[385] Interpretation of the results of routine culturing of water may be confounded by variable culture results among sites sampled within a single water system and by fluctuations in the concentration of *Legionella* spp. in the same site.[440,441] In addition, the risk of illness following exposure to a given source may be influenced by a number of factors other than the presence or concentration of organisms; these include the degree to which contaminated water is aerosolized into respirable droplets, the proximity of the infectious aerosol to potential host, the susceptibility of the host, and the virulence properties of the contaminating strain.[442-444] Thus, data are insufficient to assign a level of risk of disease even on the basis of the number of colony-forming units detected in samples from the hospital environment. By routinely culturing water samples, many hospitals will have to be committed to water-decontamination programs to eradicate *Legionella* spp. Because of this problem, routine monitoring of water from the hospital's potable water system and from aerosol-producing devices is not widely recommended.[445]

The second approach to prevent and control nosocomial legionellosis is by (a) maintaining a high index of suspicion for legionellosis and appropriately using diagnostic tests for legionellosis in patients with nosocomial pneumonia who are at high risk of developing the disease and dying from the infection,[385,446] (b) initiating an investigation for a hospital source of *Legionella* spp. upon identification of one case of definite or two cases of possible nosocomial Legionnaires' disease, and (c) routinely maintaining cooling towers and using only sterile water for filling and terminal rinsing of nebulization devices.

Measures aimed at creating an environment that is not conducive to survival or multiplication of *Legionella* spp. have been advocated and utilized in hospitals where cases of nosocomial legionellosis have been identified; these include routine maintenance of potable water at ≥ 50°C or < 20°C at the tap or chlorination of heated water to achieve 1-2 mg/L free residual chlorine at the tap, especially in areas where immunosuppressed and other high-risk patients are located.[385,429,440,447-450] However, the cost-benefit ratio of such measures in hospitals with no identified cases of legionellosis needs further study.

B. Prevention of Legionnaires' Disease in Hospitals with Identified Cases (Secondary Prevention)

The indications for a full-scale environmental investigation to search for and subsequently decontaminate identified sources of *Legionella* spp. in hospital environments remain to be elucidated, and probably vary from hospital to hospital. In institutions where as few as 1-3 nosocomial cases are identified over a period of up to several months, intensified surveillance for Legionnaires' disease has frequently detected numerous additional cases.[404,423,426,448] This suggests the need for a low threshold for initiating an investigation following the identification of nosocomial, laboratory-confirmed cases of legionellosis. However, when developing a strategy to respond to such an identification, infection-control personnel should consider the level of risk of nosocomial acquisition of, and mortality from, *Legionella* spp. infection at their particular hospital.

An epidemiologic investigation of the source of *Legionella* spp. involves several important steps, including retrospective review of microbiologic and medical records; active surveillance to identify all recent or ongoing cases of legionellosis; identification of potential risk factors (including environmental exposures for infection, such as showering or use of respiratory therapy equipment) by line listing of cases, analysis by time, place, and person, and comparison with appropriate controls; collection of water samples from environmental sources implicated by the epidemiologic investigation and from other potential sources of aerosolized water; and subtype-matching between legionellae isolated from patients and environmental samples.[428,452-454] The latter step can be crucial in supporting epidemiologic evidence of a link between human illness and a specific source.[455]

In hospitals where the heated-water system has been identified as the source of the organism, the system has been decontaminated by pulse (one-time) thermal disinfection or superheating (ie, flushing for at least 5 minutes each distal outlet of the hot-water system with

water at ≥ 65°C) and hyperchlorination (flushing all outlets of the hot-water system with water containing ≥ 10 mg/L free residual chlorine).[450,456-458] Following either of these procedures, most hospitals maintain heated water at ≥ 50°C or < 20°C at the tap or chlorinate heated water to achieve 1-2 mg/L free residual chlorine at the tap.[385,429,440,447-450] Additional measures, such as physical cleaning or replacement of hot-water storage tanks, water-heaters, faucets, and showerheads, may be required because scale and sediment that provide organisms protection from the biocidal effects of heat and chlorine, may accumulate in them.[393,450] Alternative methods for control and eradication of legionellae in water systems, such as treatment of water with ozone, ultraviolet light, or heavy metal ions, have limited the growth of legionellae under laboratory and/or operating conditions.[391,459-463] However, further data are needed regarding the efficacy of these methods before they can be considered standard. In hospitals where the cooling towers are contaminated, measures for decontamination have been previously published.[464]

For highly immunocompromised patients, other preventive measures have been used. At one hospital, immunosuppressed patients were restricted from taking showers, and, for these patients, only sterile water was used for drinking or flushing nasogastric tubes.[430] In another hospital, a combined approach, consisting of continuous heating, particulate filtration, ultraviolet treatment, and monthly pulse hyperchlorination of the water supply of the bone-marrow transplant unit, was used to decrease the incidence of Legionnaires' disease.[459]

In view of the high cost of an environmental investigation and of instituting control measures to eradicate *Legionella* spp. from sources in the hospital[465,466] and the differential risk, based on host factors, for acquiring nosocomial legionellosis and of having severe and fatal infection with the microorganism, the decision to search for and the choice of procedures to eradicate hospital environmental sources of *Legionella* spp. should take into account the type of patient population served by the hospital.

ASPERGILLOSIS

I. Epidemiology

Aspergillus spp. are ubiquitous fungi, commonly occurring in soil, water, and decaying vegetation. *Aspergillus* spp. have been cultured from unfiltered air, ventilation systems, contaminated dust dislodged during hospital renovation and construction, horizontal surfaces, food, and ornamental plants.[467]

A fumigatus and *A flavus* are the most frequently isolated *Aspergillus* spp. in patients with proven aspergillosis.[468] Nosocomial aspergillosis has been recognized increasingly as a cause of severe illness and mortality in highly immunocompromised patients, eg, patients undergoing chemotherapy and/or organ transplantation, including bone-marrow transplantation for hematologic and other malignant neoplasms.[469-473]

The most important nosocomial infection due to *Aspergillus* spp. is pneumonia.[474,495] Hospital outbreaks of pulmonary aspergillosis have occurred mainly in granulocytopenic patients, especially in bone-marrow transplant units.[474-480] Although invasive aspergillosis has been reported in recipients of solid-organ transplants (eg, heart or kidney),[481-485] the incidence of *Aspergillus* spp. infections in these patients has been lower than in recipients of bone-marrow transplants, probably because granulocytopenia is less severe in solid-organ transplant recipients and the use of corticosteroids has decreased with the introduction of cyclosporine.[483,486] In solid-organ transplant recipients, the efficacy of infection control measures, such as provision of protected environments and prophylaxis with antifungal agents, in preventing aspergillosis has not been well evaluated.[483,484,486,489] In one study of heart-transplant recipients, protective isolation of patients alone failed to prevent fungal infections.[490]

The reported attributable mortality from invasive pulmonary aspergillosis has varied, depending on the patient population studied. Rates have been as high as 95% in recipients of allogeneic bone-marrow transplants and patients with aplastic anemia, compared with rates of 13-80% in leukemic patients.[491-493]

II. Pathogenesis

In contrast to most bacterial pneumonias, the primary route of acquiring *Aspergillus* spp. infection is by inhalation of the fungal spores. In severely immunocompromised patients, primary *Aspergillus* spp. pneumonia results from local lung tissue invasion.[468,494,495] Subsequently, the fungus may disseminate via the bloodstream to involve multiple other deep organs.[468,495,496] A role for nasopharyngeal colonization with *Aspergillus* spp., as an intermediate step before invasive pulmonary disease, has been proposed, but remains to be elucidated.[488,497,498] On the other hand, colonization of the lower respiratory tract by *Aspergillus* spp., especially in patients with preexisting lung disease such as chronic obstructive lung disease, cystic fibrosis, or inactive tuberculosis, has predisposed patients to invasive pulmonary and/or disseminated infection.[468,495,499]

III. Diagnosis

Diagnosing pneumonia due to *Aspergillus* spp. is often difficult without performing invasive procedures. Bronchoalveolar lavage has been a useful screening test,[500-502] but lung biopsy is still considered the most reliable technique.[503] Histopathologic demonstration of tissue invasion by fungal hyphae has been required in addition to isolation of *Aspergillus* spp. from respiratory tract secretions because the latter, by itself, may indicate colonization.[504] However, when *Aspergillus* spp. is grown from the sputum of a febrile, granulocytopenic patient with a new pulmonary infiltrate, it is highly likely that the patient has pulmonary aspergillosis.[497,505] Routine blood cultures are remarkably insensitive for detecting *Aspergillus* spp.,[506] and systemic antibody responses in immunocompromised patients are likely to be unreliable indicators of infection.[507-509] Antigen-based serologic assays are now being developed in an attempt to allow for the rapid and specific diagnosis of *Aspergillus* spp. infections; however, their clinical usefulness is presently undefined.[510,511]

IV. Risk Factors and Control Measures

The major risk factor for invasive aspergillosis is severe and prolonged granulocytopenia, both disease- and therapy-induced.[512] Since bone-marrow transplant recipients experience the most severe degree of granulocytopenia, they probably constitute the population at highest risk of developing invasive aspergillosis.[492,513] The tendency of bone-marrow transplant recipients to develop severe granulocytopenia (< 1,000 polymorphonucleaur/μL) is associated with the type of graft they receive. While both autologous and allogeneic bone-marrow transplant recipients are severely granulocy-

topenic for up to 4 weeks after the transplant procedure, allogeneic-transplant recipients may, in addition, develop acute or chronic graft-versus-host disease. The latter may occur up to several months after the procedure, and the disease and/or its therapy (often with high doses of corticosteroids, cyclosporine, and other immunosuppressive agents) may result in severe granulocytopenia. Consequently, in developing strategies to prevent invasive *Aspergillus* spp. infection in bone-marrow-transplant patients, infection control personnel should consider exposures of the patient to the fungus not only during the patient's immediate post-transplantation period but also other exposures (eg, at home or in an ambulatory-care setting) subsequent to the immediate post-transplant period, when the patient (especially allogeneic-transplant recipients) may again manifest severe granulocytopenia. To help address this problem, various studies are now in progress to evaluate newer methods of enhancing host resistance to invasive fungal (and other) infections, and of eliminating or suppressing respiratory fungal colonization of the upper respiratory tract. These methods include, respectively, the use of granulocyte-colony-stimulating factors and intranasal application of amphotericin B, or oral or systemic antifungal drug prophylaxis.[467,514-517] For solid-organ transplant recipients, risk factors for invasive aspergillosis have not been as extensively studied. In one study of liver-transplant recipients, risk factors for invasive infection with *Aspergillus* spp. identified by univariate analysis included preoperative and postoperative receipt of steroids and antimicrobial agents, and prolonged duration of transplant surgery.[518]

The presence of aspergilli in the hospital environment is the major extrinsic risk factor for the occurrence of opportunistic invasive *Aspergillus* spp. infection.[487,519] Environmental disturbances due to construction and/or renovation activities in and around hospitals markedly raise the airborne *Aspergillus* spp. spore counts in such hospitals and have been associated with nosocomial aspergillosis.[476,478,479,520-523] In addition, aspergillosis in high-risk immunosuppressed patients has been associated with other hospital environmental reservoirs, including bird droppings in air ducts supplying high-risk patient areas,[524] and contaminated fireproofing material or damp wood.[478,525]

A single case of nosocomial *Aspergillus* spp. pneumonia is often difficult to link to a specific environmental exposure. However, additional cases may remain undetected without an active search that includes an intensive retrospective review of microbiologic, histopathologic, and postmortem records; notification of clinicians caring for high-risk patients; and establishment of a system for prospective surveillance for additional cases. When additional cases are detected, the likelihood is increased that a hospital environmental source of *Aspergillus* spp. can be identified.[476,478,520-525] Previous investigations have shown the importance of construction activities and/or fungal "contamination" of hospital air-handling systems as major sources for outbreaks.[474,476,478,520-524] New molecular typing techniques, namely karyotyping[526] and DNA endonuclease profiling (now available for *A fumigatus*),[527] may significantly aid in identifying the source of an outbreak.

Outbreaks of invasive aspergillosis reinforce the importance of maintaining an environment as free of *Aspergillus* spp. spores as possible for patients with severe granulocytopenia. To achieve this goal, specialized services in many large hospitals, in particular bone-marrow transplant services, have installed "protected environments" for the care of their high-risk, severely granulocytopenic patients, and increased their vigilance during hospital construction and routine maintenance of hospital air-filtration and ventilation systems, to prevent exposing high-risk patients to bursts of fungal spores.[476,478,520-524,528-533]

While the exact configuration and specifications of the protected environments may vary between hospitals, these patient-care areas are built to minimize fungal spore counts in air by maintaining (a) high-efficiency filtration of incoming air by using central or point-of-use HEPA filters that are 99.97% efficient in filtering 0.3μ-sized particles, (b) directed room airflow—from intake on one side of the room, across the patient, and out through the exhaust on the opposite side of the room, (c) positive room-air pressure relative to the corridor, (d) well-sealed rooms, and (e) high rates of room-air changes (range: 15 to > 400 per hour), although air-change rates at the higher levels may pose problems of patient comfort.[474,529-531,533-535] The oldest and most studied protected environment is a room with laminar airflow, consisting of a bank of HEPA filters along an entire wall through which air is pumped by blowers into the room at a uniform velocity (90±20 feet/minute), forcing the air to move in a laminar, or at least unidirectional, pattern.[536] The air usually exits at the opposite end of the room, and ultra-high air-change rates (100-400 per hour) are achieved.[474,528] The net effects are essentially sterile air in the room, minimal air turbulence, minimal opportunity for microorganism build-up, and a consistently clean environment.[474]

The efficacy of a laminar-airflow system in decreasing or eliminating the risk of nosocomial aspergillosis in high-risk patients has been demonstrated.[474,529,534,535] However, such a system is costly to install and maintain. Less expensive alternative systems with lower air-change rates (10-15 per hour) have been utilized in some centers.[530,531,537] However, studies comparing the efficacy of these alternative systems with laminar-airflow rooms in eliminating *Aspergillus* spp. spores and preventing nosocomial aspergillosis are limited. One institution employing cross-flow ventilation, point-of-use high-efficiency filters, and 15 air changes per hour reported that cases of nosocomial aspergillosis in patients housed in these rooms have occurred, albeit at a low rate (3.4%).[531,537] The infections, however, were due to *A flavus*—a species that was never cultured from the room air, suggesting that the patients were probably exposed to fungal spores when they were allowed outside their rooms.[531]

Copper-8-quinolinolate has been used on environmental surfaces contaminated with *Aspergillus* spp. to control a reported outbreak,[538] and incorporated in fireproofing material of a newly constructed hospital[531] to help decrease the environmental spore burden, but its general applicability is yet to be established.

VIRAL PNEUMONIAS

Viruses can be an important and often unappreciated cause of nosocomial pneumonia.[539-541] In one prospective study of endemic nosocomial infections, approximately 20% of patients with pneumonia had viral infections.[540] Although early diagnosis and treatment of viral infections have become possible in recent years,[542-545] many hospitalized patients remain at high risk for developing severe and sometimes fatal viral infections.[539,546-553] Based on these data and on

well-documented outbreaks with nosocomial viral transmission,[554-557] measures to prevent viral transmission should be instituted.

Nosocomial respiratory viral infections (1) usually follow community outbreaks that occur during a particular period every year,[556,558-561] (2) confer only short-term immunity,[562] (3) affect healthy and ill persons,[548,549,555,563-565] and (4) have exogenous sources. A number of viruses, including adenoviruses, influenza virus, measles virus, parainfluenza viruses, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), rhinoviruses, and varicella-zoster virus can cause nosocomial pneumonia;[549,556,557,566-572,574] however, adenoviruses, influenza viruses, parainfluenza viruses, and RSV have been reported to account for most (70%) of nosocomial pneumonias due to viruses.[573]

Because influenza and RSV infections substantially contribute to patient morbidity and mortality associated with viral pneumonia and have been well studied epidemiologically, this section focuses on the principles and approaches to control these infections. Prevention of nosocomial infections due to other viral pathogens are addressed in another document.[224]

RSV INFECTION

I. Epidemiology

RSV infection is most common during infancy and early childhood, but may also occur in adults.[563,566,575,576] Infection usually causes mild or moderately severe upper respiratory illness. However, life-threatening pneumonia or bronchiolitis has been reported in children with chronic cardiac and pulmonary disease, immunocompromised patients, and the elderly.[548,550,565,566,577,578]

Recent surveillance of 10 U.S. hospital laboratories performing cultures for RSV suggests that community outbreaks occur yearly between December and March, last from 3-5 months, and are associated with increased hospitalization and deaths among infants and young children.[579] During community outbreaks of RSV, children admitted to the hospital with respiratory symptoms often serve as reservoirs for RSV.[554,556]

II. Diagnosis

The clinical characteristics of RSV infection, especially in neonates, are often indistinguishable from those of other viral respiratory tract infections.[566,567] Culture of RSV from respiratory secretions remains the "gold standard" for diagnosis. Although rapid antigen-detection kits utilizing direct immunofluorescence or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay are available and can provide results within hours, the benefit of using these tests to identify infected patients depends on the sensitivity and specificity of the test. The reported sensitivity and specificity of RSV enzyme immunoassays vary between 80% and 95%, and may even be lower in actual practice.[580-583] In general, once laboratory-confirmed cases of RSV infection are identified in a hospital, a presumptive diagnosis of RSV infection in subsequent cases with manifestations suggestive of RSV infection may be acceptable for infection control purposes.

III. Modes of Transmission

RSV is present in large numbers in the respiratory secretions of symptomatic persons infected with the virus and can be transmitted directly via large droplets during close contact with such persons, or indirectly via RSV-contaminated hands or fomites.[554,584,585] The portal of entry is usually the conjunctiva or the nasal mucosa.[586] Inoculation by RSV-contaminated hands is the usual way of depositing the virus onto the eyes or nose.[554,584-586] Hands can become contaminated through handling of infected persons' respiratory secretions or contaminated fomites.[584,585]

In nosocomial RSV outbreaks in which the viral isolates were typed, more than one strain of RSV has often been identified,[555,564,587] suggesting multiple sources of the virus. Potential sources include patients, hospital staff, and visitors. Because infected infants shed large amounts of virus in their respiratory secretions and easily contaminate their immediate surroundings, they are a major reservoir for RSV.[588] Hospital staff may become infected after exposure in the community[589] or in the hospital and, in turn, infect patients, other health-care workers, or hospital visitors.[567,590]

IV. Control Measures

Various combinations of control measures ranging from the simple to the complex have been effective, to some degree or other, in preventing and controlling nosocomial RSV infection.[226,590-597] Successful programs have had two elements in common: implementation of contact isolation precautions, and compliance with these precautions by health-care personnel. In theory, strict handwashing should prevent most nosocomial RSV infections. However, health-care workers' handwashing practices have always been poor.[221,222] Thus, other preventive measures are usually relied upon to prevent RSV infection.

The basic precautions that have been associated with decreased incidence of nosocomial RSV infections are gloving and gowning.[226] Gloving has helped decrease transmission probably because gloves remind patient-care personnel to comply with handwashing and other precautions, and deter persons from touching their eyes or noses. The benefits from gloving, however, are offset if gloves are not changed between patients or after contact with contaminated fomites, and if hands are not adequately washed after glove removal.[229] Gowning, in combination with gloving, during contact with RSV-infected infants or their immediate environment has been used successfully to prevent infection.[226] In addition, the use of eye-nose goggles rather than masks has protected health-care workers from infection; however, eye-nose goggles are not widely available and are inconvenient to wear.[594,598]

Additional measures may be indicated to control ongoing nosocomial transmission of RSV or to prevent transmission to patients at high risk for serious complications of infections, such as those with compromised cardiac, pulmonary, or immune systems. The following additional control measures have been used in various combinations: (1) use of private rooms for infected patients OR cohorting of infected patients, with or without pre-admission screening by rapid laboratory diagnostic tests; (2) cohorting of personnel; (3) exclusion of health-care workers who have symptoms of upper respiratory tract infection from the care of uninfected patients at high risk of severe or fatal RSV infection, eg, infants; (4) limiting visitors; and (5) postponing admission of patients at high risk of complications from RSV infection.[224,591,593,595,597] Although the exact role of each of these measures has not been fully elucidated, their use for control of outbreaks seems prudent.

INFLUENZA

I. Epidemiology

Pneumonia in patients with influenza

may be due to the influenza virus itself, secondary bacterial infection, or a combination of both.[599-601] Influenza-associated pneumonia can occur in any person, but is more common in the very young or old and in persons in any age group with immunosuppression or certain chronic medical conditions such as severe underlying heart or lung disease.[576,602-604]

Influenza typically occurs annually in the winter between December and April; peak activity in a community usually lasts from 6 to 8 weeks during this period.[605,606] During influenza epidemics in the community, nosocomial outbreaks can occur and are often characterized by abrupt onset and rapid transmission.[607-609] Most reported institutional outbreaks of influenza have occurred in nursing homes; however, hospital outbreaks have been reported on pediatric and chronic-care wards, as well as on medical and neonatal intensive care units.[557,610-613]

Influenza is believed to be spread from person to person by direct deposition of virus-laden large droplets onto the mucosal surfaces of the upper respiratory tract of an individual during close contact with an infected person, as well as by droplet nuclei or small-particle aerosols.[614-617] The extent to which transmission may occur by virus-contaminated hands or fomites is unknown; however, it is not the primary mode of spread.[618]

The most important reservoirs of influenza virus are infected persons, and the period of greatest communicability is during the first 3 days of illness; however, the virus can be shed before onset of symptoms, and up to 7 or more days after illness onset.[351,557,605]

II. Diagnosis

Influenza is clinically indistinguishable from other febrile respiratory illnesses, but during outbreaks with laboratory-confirmed cases, a presumptive diagnosis of the infection can be made in cases with similar manifestations.[619] In the past, diagnosis of influenza was made by virus isolation from nasopharyngeal secretions or by serologic conversion, but recently developed rapid diagnostic tests that are similar to culture in sensitivity and specificity allow early diagnosis and treatment of cases and provide a basis for prompt initiation of antiviral prophylaxis as part of outbreak control.[620-625]

III. Prevention and Control of Influenza

Vaccination of persons at high risk for complications of influenza is currently the most effective measure for reducing the impact of influenza, and should be done before the influenza season each year. High-risk persons include those ≥ 65 years of age; those in long-term-care units; those with chronic disorders of the pulmonary or cardiovascular systems; those with diabetes mellitus, renal dysfunction, hemoglobinopathies, or immunosuppression; and children 6 months-18 years of age who are receiving long-term aspirin therapy.[612,626-628] Patients with musculo-skeletal disorders that impede adequate respiration may also be at high risk of developing complications of influenza. When high vaccination rates are achieved in closed or semi-closed settings, the risk of outbreaks is reduced because of induction of herd immunity.[629,630]

When an institutional outbreak is caused by influenza type A, antiviral agents may be used both for treatment of ill persons and as prophylaxis for others.[642] Two related antiviral agents, amantadine hydrochloride and rimantadine hydrochloride, are effective against influenza type A, but not influenza type B, virus.[544,632-634] These agents can be used to prevent influenza type A (1) as short-term prophylaxis after late vaccination of high-risk persons; (2) as prophylaxis for persons for whom vaccination is contraindicated; (3) as prophylaxis for immunocompromised persons who may not produce protective levels of antibody in response to vaccination; (4) as prophylaxis for unvaccinated health-care workers who provide care to high-risk patients, either for the duration of influenza activity in the community or until immunity develops after vaccination; and (5) when vaccine strains do not closely match the epidemic virus strain.[642]

Amantadine has been available in the United States for many years; rimantadine has been approved for use since 1993. Both drugs protect against all naturally-occurring strains of type A influenza virus; thus, antigenic changes in the virus that may reduce vaccine efficacy do not alter the effectiveness of amantadine or rimantadine. Both drugs are 70-90% effective in preventing illness if taken before exposure to influenza A virus.[632,635] In addition, they can reduce the severity and duration of illness due to influenza type A when administered within 24-48 hours after onset of symptoms.[636,637] These drugs can limit nosocomial spread of influenza type A if they are administered to all or most patients when influenza type A illnesses begin in a facility.[610,638,639]

Compared to rimantadine, amantadine has been associated with a higher incidence of adverse central nervous system (CNS) reactions such as mild and transitory nervousness, insomnia, impaired concentration, mood changes, and light-headedness. These symptoms have been reported in 5%-10% of healthy young adults receiving 200 mg of amantadine per day.[544,632] In the elderly, CNS side effects may be more severe; in addition, dizziness and ataxia are more common in this age group.[640,641] Dose reductions of both amantadine and rimantadine are recommended for certain patient groups, such as persons ≥ 65 years of age and/or those who have renal insufficiency. The drug package insert for amantadine or rimantadine contains important information regarding administration of either drug. Guidelines for the use of these drugs and considerations for the selection of amantadine or rimantadine have been developed by the Advisory Committee for Immunization Practices.[642]

Emergence of amantadine- and rimantadine-resistant strains of influenza A virus has been observed in persons who have received these drugs for treatment of the infection.[643,644] Because of the potential risk of transmission of resistant viral strains to contacts of persons receiving amantadine or rimantadine for treatment,[644,645] to the extent possible, infected persons taking either drug should avoid contact with others during treatment and for 2 days after discontinuing treatment.[645,646] This is particularly important if the contacts are uninfected high-risk persons.[645,647]

Vaccination of high-risk patients and of hospital personnel before the influenza season is the primary focus of efforts to prevent and control nosocomial influenza.[628,631,648] The decision to use amantadine or rimantadine as an adjunct to vaccination in the prevention and control of nosocomial influenza is based in part on results of virologic and epidemiologic surveillance in the hospital and the community. When outbreaks of influenza type A occur in a hospital, and antiviral prophylaxis of high-risk persons and/or treatment of cases is undertaken, administration of amantadine or rimantadine

is begun as early in the outbreak as possible to reduce transmission.[610,631,642,647]

Measures other than vaccination and chemoprophylaxis have been recommended for control of nosocomial influenza outbreaks. Because influenza can be transmitted during contact with an infected person, contact isolation precautions, placing a patient symptomatic with influenza in a private room, cohorting of patients with influenza-like illness, and masking upon entering a room with persons with suspected or proven influenza have been recommended.[224] Handwashing, gloving, and gowning by health-care workers during the patient's symptomatic period have also been recommended, but the exact role of these measures in preventing influenza transmission remains to be elucidated.[224,609,649] Although influenza can be transmitted via the airborne route, the efficacy of placing infected persons in rooms with negative pressure in relation to their immediate environment has not been assessed. In addition, this measure may be impractical during institutional outbreaks that occur in the midst of a community epidemic of influenza because many newly admitted patients and health-care workers may be infected with the virus; thus, the hospital would face the logistical problem of accommodating all ill persons in rooms with special ventilation. Although controlled studies are not available to measure their effectiveness, the following additional measures have been recommended for consideration, particularly during severe outbreaks: (1) curtailment or elimination of elective admissions, both medical and surgical; (2) restriction of cardiovascular and pulmonary surgery; (3) restriction of hospital visitors, especially those with acute respiratory illnesses; and (4) work restriction for health-care workers with acute respiratory illness.[649]

PART II. RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PREVENTION OF NOSOCOMIAL PNEUMONIA

The Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee

INTRODUCTION

The recommendations are presented according to the etiology of the infection, in the following order: bacterial pneumonia, including Legionnaires' disease; fungal pneumonia (aspergillosis); and virus-associated pneumonia (respiratory syncytial virus [RSV] and influenza infections). Each topic is subdivided according to the following general approaches for nosocomial infection control, as applicable to the infection:

1. staff education and infection surveillance;
2. interruption of transmission of microorganisms by eradicating infecting microorganisms from their epidemiologically important reservoirs, and/or preventing person-to-person transmission; and
3. modifying host risk for infection.

As in previous CDC guidelines, each recommendation is categorized on the basis of existing scientific evidence, theoretical rationale, applicability, and economic impact.[224,225,650-654] However, the previous CDC system of categorizing recommendations has been modified as follows:

CATEGORY IA. Strongly recommended for all hospitals and strongly supported by well-designed experimental or epidemiologic studies.

CATEGORY IB. Strongly recommended for all hospitals and viewed as effective by experts in the field and a consensus of HICPAC based on strong rationale and suggestive evidence, even though definitive scientific studies may not have been done.

CATEGORY II. Suggested for implementation in many hospitals. Recommendations may be supported by suggestive clinical or epidemiologic studies, a strong theoretical rationale, or definitive studies applicable to some but not all hospitals.

NO RECOMMENDATION; UNRESOLVED ISSUE. Practices for which insufficient evidence or consensus regarding efficacy exists.

BACTERIAL PNEUMONIA

I. Staff Education and Infection Surveillance

A. Staff Education

Educate health-care workers regarding nosocomial bacterial pneumonias and infection control procedures to prevent their occurrence.[655-661] ***CATEGORY IA***

B. Surveillance

1. Conduct surveillance for bacterial pneumonia in ICU patients at high risk for nosocomial bacterial pneumonia (eg, patients with mechanically assisted ventilation, selected postoperative patients) to determine trends and identify potential problems.[6,34,35,62,63,662-664] Include data regarding the causative microorganisms and their antimicrobial susceptibility patterns.[2,3] Express data as rates (eg, number of infected patients or infections per 100 ICU days or per 1,000 ventilator-days) to facilitate intra-hospital comparisons and determine trends.[66,665-667] ***CATEGORY IA***

2. Do not routinely perform surveillance cultures of patients or of equipment or devices used for respiratory therapy, pulmonary-function testing, or delivery of inhalation anesthesia.[65,668,669] ***CATEGORY IA***

II. Interruption of Transmission of Microorganisms

A. Sterilization or Disinfection and Maintenance of Equipment and Devices

1. General Measures

a. Thoroughly clean all equipment and devices to be sterilized or disinfected.[266,267,670] ***CATEGORY IA***

b. Sterilize or use high-level disinfection for semicritical equipment or devices, ie, items that come into direct or indirect contact with mucous membranes of the lower respiratory tract (See examples, Appendix A). High-level disinfection can be achieved either by wet-heat pasteurization at 76°C for 30 minutes or by using liquid chemical disinfectants approved as sterilants/disinfectants by the Environmental Protection Agency and cleared for marketing for use on medical instruments by the Office of Device Evaluation, Center for Devices and Radiologic Health, Food and Drug Administration.[260,262,264-267,671] Follow disinfection with appropriate rinsing, drying, and packaging, taking care not to contaminate the items in the process. ***CATEGORY IB***

c. (1) Use sterile (not distilled, nonsterile) water for rinsing reusable semicritical equipment and devices used on the respiratory tract after they have been chemically disinfected.[241,249,250,258,269] ***CATEGORY IB***

(2) *No recommendation* for using tap water (as an alternative to sterile water) to rinse reusable semicritical equipment and devices used on the respiratory tract after they have been subjected to high-level disinfection, whether or not rinsing is followed by drying with or without the use of alcohol.[241,249,250,258,269,273,277] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

d. Do not reprocess an equipment or device that is manufactured for single use only,

unless data show that reprocessing the equipment or device poses no threat to the patient, is cost-effective, and does not change the structural integrity or function of the equipment or device.[672,673] ***CATEGORY IB***

2. Mechanical Ventilators, Breathing Circuits, Humidifiers, and Heat-Moisture Exchangers

a. Mechanical Ventilators

Do not routinely sterilize or disinfect the internal machinery of mechanical ventilators.[126,128,674] ***CATEGORY IA***

b. Ventilator Circuits with Humidifiers

(1) Do not routinely change more frequently than every 48 hours the breathing circuit, including tubing and exhalation valve, and the attached bubbling or wick humidifier of a ventilator that is in use on an individual patient.[34,283,288] ***CATEGORY IA***

(2) *No recommendation* for the maximum length of time after which the breathing circuit and the attached bubbling or wick humidifier of a ventilator in use on a patient should be changed.[289] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

(3) Sterilize reusable breathing circuits and bubbling or wick humidifiers, or subject them to high-level disinfection between their uses on different patients.[259,260,262,264,267] ***CATEGORY IB***

(4) Periodically drain and discard any condensate that collects in the tubing of a mechanical ventilator, taking precautions not to allow condensate to drain toward the patient. Wash hands after performing the procedure or handling the fluid.[215,282,296] ***CATEGORY IB***

(5) *No recommendation* for placing a filter or trap at the distal end of the expiratory-phase tubing of the breathing circuit to collect condensate.[247,282] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

(6) Do not place bacterial filters between the humidifier reservoir and the inspiratory-phase tubing of the breathing circuit of a mechanical ventilator. ***CATEGORY IB***

(7) Humidifier fluids

(a) Use sterile water to fill bubbling humidifiers.[132,241,249,250,296] ***CATEGORY II***

(b) Use sterile, distilled, or tap water to fill wick humidifiers.[249,250,296] ***CATEGORY II***

(c) *No recommendation* for the preferential use of a closed, continuous-feed humidification system. ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

c. Ventilator Breathing Circuits with Hygroscopic Condenser-Humidifiers or Heat-Moisture Exchangers

(1) *No recommendation* for the preferential use of hygroscopic condenser-humidifier or heat-moisture exchanger rather than a heated humidifier to prevent nosocomial pneumonia.[298-302] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

(2) Change the hygroscopic condenser-humidifier or heat-moisture exchanger according to manufacturer's recommendation and/or when evidence of gross contamination or mechanical dysfunction of the device is present.[298] ***CATEGORY IB***

(3) Do not routinely change the breathing circuit attached to a hygroscopic condenser-humidifier or heat-moisture exchanger while it is in use on a patient.[298,301] ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Wall Humidifiers

a. Follow manufacturers' instructions for use and maintenance of wall oxygen humidifiers unless data show that the modification in their use or maintenance poses no threat to the patient and is cost-effective.[675-679] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. Between patients, change the tubing, including any nasal prongs or mask, used to deliver oxygen from a wall outlet. ***CATEGORY IB***

4. Small-Volume Medication Nebulizers: "In-line" and Hand-Held Nebulizers

a. (1) Between treatments on the same patient, disinfect, rinse with sterile water, or air-dry small-volume medication nebulizers.[242,258] ***CATEGORY IB***

(2) *No recommendation* for using tap water as an alternative to sterile water to rinse reusable small-volume medication nebulizers between treatments on the same patient.[242,258,273] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

b. Between patients, replace nebulizers with those that have undergone sterilization or high-level disinfection.[126,128,129,269,680] ***CATEGORY IB***

c. Use only sterile fluids for nebulization, and dispense these fluids aseptically.[238, 241,249,250,258,269,304] ***CATEGORY IA***

d. If multidose medication vials are used, handle, dispense, and store them according to manufacturers' instructions.[238,304,680-682] ***CATEGORY IB***

5. Large-Volume Nebulizers and Mist Tents

a. Do not use large-volume room-air humidifiers that create aerosols (eg, by venturi principle, ultrasound, or spinning disk) and thus are really nebulizers, unless they can be sterilized or subjected to high-level disinfection at least daily and filled only with sterile water.[239-241,252,303,683] ***CATEGORY IA***

b. Sterilize large-volume nebulizers that are used for inhalation therapy, eg, for tracheostomized patients, or subject them to high-level disinfection between patients and after every 24 hours of use on the same patient.[126,128,129] ***CATEGORY IB***

c. (1) Use mist-tent nebulizers and reservoirs that have undergone sterilization or high-level disinfection and replace them between patients.[684] ***CATEGORY IB***

(2) *No recommendation* regarding the frequency of changing mist-tent nebulizers and reservoirs while in use on one patient. ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

6. Other Devices Used in Association with Respiratory Therapy

a. Between patients, sterilize or subject to high-level disinfection portable respirometers, oxygen sensors, and other respiratory devices used on multiple patients.[233,245] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. (1) Between patients, sterilize or subject to high-level disinfection reusable hand-powered resuscitation bags (for example, Ambu bags).[255,311-313] ***CATEGORY IA***

(2) *No recommendation* regarding the frequency of changing hydrophobic filters placed on the connection port of resuscitation bags. ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

7. Anesthesia Machines and Breathing Systems or Patient Circuits

a. Do not routinely sterilize or disinfect the internal machinery of anesthesia equipment.[316] ***CATEGORY IA***

b. Clean and then sterilize or subject to high-level liquid chemical disinfection or pasteurization reusable components of the breathing system or patient circuit (eg, tracheal tube or face mask; inspiratory and expiratory breathing tubing; Y-piece; reservoir bag; humidifier and tubing) between uses on different patients, by following the device manufacturer's instructions for their reprocessing.[260,264,267,317,685] ***CATEGORY IB***

c. *No recommendation* for the frequency of routinely cleaning and disinfecting unidirectional valves and carbon dioxide absorber chambers.[317-319] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

d. Follow published guidelines and/or manufacturers' instructions regarding in-use maintenance, cleaning, and disinfection or sterilization of other components or attachments of the breathing system or patient circuit of anesthesia equipment.[317,318] ***CATEGORY IB***

e. Periodically drain and discard any condensate that collects in the tubing of a breathing circuit, taking precautions not to allow condensate to drain toward the patient. After performing the procedure or handling the fluid, wash hands with soap and water or with a waterless handwashing preparation.[218,219,686,687] ***CATEGORY IB***

f. *No recommendation* for placing a bacterial filter in the breathing system or patient circuit of anesthesia equipment.[1,317,318,321-326,688] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

8. Pulmonary-Function Testing Equipment

a. Do not routinely sterilize or disinfect the internal machinery of pulmonary-function testing machines between uses on different patients.[327,328] ***CATEGORY II***

b. Sterilize or subject to high-level liquid chemical disinfection or pasteurization reusable mouthpieces and tubings or connectors between uses on different patients, OR follow device manufacturer's instructions for their reprocessing.[260,261,263-267] ***CATEGORY IB***

B. Interruption of Person-to-Person Transmission of Bacteria

1. Handwashing. Wash hands after contact with mucous membranes, respiratory secretions, or objects contaminated with respiratory secretions, whether or not gloves are worn. Wash hands before and after contact with a patient who has an endotracheal or tracheostomy tube in place, and before and after contact with any respiratory device that is used on the patient, whether or not gloves are worn.[210,212,218,219,231,689,690] ***CATEGORY IA***

2. Barrier Precautions

a. Wear gloves for handling respiratory secretions or objects contaminated with respiratory secretions of any patient.[226,227] ***CATEGORY IA***

b. Change gloves and wash hands between patients; after handling respiratory secretions or objects contaminated with secretions from one patient and before contact with another patient, object, or environmental surface; and between contacts with a contaminated body site and respiratory tract of, or respiratory device on, the same patient.[226,228-230] ***CATEGORY IA***

c. Wear a gown when soiling with respiratory secretions from a patient is anticipated, and change the gown after such contact and before providing care to another patient.[226] ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Care of Patients with Tracheostomy

a. Perform tracheostomy under sterile conditions. ***CATEGORY IB***

b. When changing a tracheostomy tube, use aseptic technique and replace the tube with one that has undergone sterilization or high-level disinfection. ***CATEGORY IB***

4. Suctioning of Respiratory Tract Secretions

a. *No recommendation* for wearing sterile rather than clean gloves when suctioning a patient's respiratory secretions. ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

b. If the open suction system is employed, use a sterile single-use catheter. ***CATEGORY II***

c. Use only sterile fluid to remove secretions from the suction catheter if the catheter is to be used for re-entry into the patient's lower respiratory tract.[691] ***CATEGORY IB***

d. *No recommendation* for preferential use of the multi-use closed-system suction catheter or the single-use open-system catheter for prevention of pneumonia.[305-308,310] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

e. Change suction collection tubing (up to the canister) between patients. ***CATEGORY IB***

f. Change suction collection canisters between uses on different patients except when used in short-term care units. ***CATEGORY IB***

III. Modifying Host Risk for Infection

A. Precautions for Prevention of Endogenous Pneumonia

Discontinue enteral-tube feeding and remove devices such as endotracheal, tracheostomy, and/or enteral (ie, oro- or nasogastric, or jejunal) tubes from patients as soon as the clinical indications for these are resolved.[6,34,35,85-87,117,183,185,186,202,692] ***CATEGORY IB***

1. Prevention of Aspiration Associated with Enteral Feeding

a. If there is no contraindication to the maneuver, elevate at an angle of 30–45° the head of the bed of a patient at high risk of aspiration pneumonia, eg, a person receiving mechanically assisted ventilation and/or has an enteral tube in place.[74,185] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. Routinely verify appropriate placement of the feeding tube.[693-695] ***CATEGORY IB***

c. Routinely assess the patient's intestinal motility (eg, by auscultating for bowel sounds and measuring residual gastric volume or abdominal girth) and adjust the rate and volume of enteral feeding to avoid regurgitation.[692] ***CATEGORY IB***

d. *No recommendation* for the preferential use of small-bore tubes for enteral feeding.[694] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

e. *No recommendation* for administering enteral feeding continuously or intermittently.[70,193,198] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

f. *No recommendation* for preferentially placing the feeding tubes, eg, jejunal tubes, distal to the pylorus.[199,200] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

2. Prevention of Aspiration Associated with Endotracheal Intubation

a. *No recommendation* for using orotracheal rather than nasotracheal tube to prevent nosocomial pneumonia.[699] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

b. *No recommendation* for routinely using an endotracheal tube with a dorsal lumen above the endotracheal cuff to allow drainage (by suctioning) of tracheal secretions that accumulate in the patient's subglottic area.[206] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

c. Before deflating the cuff of an endotracheal tube in preparation for tube removal, or before moving the tube, ensure that secretions are cleared from above the tube cuff. ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Prevention of Gastric Colonization

a. If stress-bleeding prophylaxis is needed for a patient with mechanically assisted ventilation, use an agent that does not raise the patient's gastric pH.[22,34,112,118,122,147-154] ***CATEGORY II***

b. *No recommendation* for selective decontamination of a critically ill, mechanically ventilated, or ICU patient's digestive tract with oral and/or intravenous antimicrobials to prevent gram-negative bacillary (or *Candida* spp.) pneumonia.[155-180] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

c. *No recommendation* for routine acidification of gastric feedings to prevent nosocomial pneumonia.[181] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

B. Prevention of Postoperative Pneumonia

1. Instruct preoperative patients, especially those at high risk of developing pneumonia, regarding frequent coughing, taking deep breaths, and ambulating as soon as medically indicated in the postoperative period.[346,348] High-risk patients include those who will receive anesthesia, especially those who will have an abdominal, thoracic, head, or neck operation, or who have substantial pulmonary dysfunction, such as patients with chronic obstructive lung disease, a musculoskeletal abnormality of the chest, or abnormal pulmonary function tests.[331-334, 337,338] ***CATEGORY IB***

2. Encourage postoperative patients to cough frequently, take deep breaths, move about the bed, and ambulate unless it is medically contraindicated.[345,346,348] ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Control pain that interferes with coughing and deep breathing during the immediate

postoperative period by using systemic analgesia.[352,701] including patient-controlled analgesia,[353-355] with as little cough-suppressant effect as possible; appropriate support for abdominal wounds, such as tightly placing a pillow across the abdomen; or regional (eg, epidural) analgesia.[356-358] ***CATEGORY IB***

4. Use an incentive spirometer or intermittent positive pressure breathing on patients at high risk of developing postoperative pneumonia.[339,342,343,346,348,349] (See III-B-1 above for definition of high-risk patients.) ***CATEGORY II***

C. Other Prophylactic Procedures for Pneumonia

1. Vaccination of Patients. Vaccinate patients at high risk for complications of pneumococcal infections with pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine. High-risk patients include persons ≥ 65 years old; adults with chronic cardiovascular or pulmonary disease, diabetes mellitus, alcoholism, cirrhosis, or cerebrospinal fluid leaks; and children and adults with immunosuppression, functional or anatomic asplenia, or HIV infection.[362-364] ***CATEGORY IA***

2. Antimicrobial Prophylaxis. Do not routinely administer systemic antimicrobial agents to prevent nosocomial pneumonia.[74,91,201,366-370,702] ***CATEGORY IA***

3. Use of Rotating "Kinetic" Beds or Continuous Lateral Rotational Therapy. No recommendation for the routine use of "kinetic" beds or continuous lateral rotational therapy (ie, placing patients on beds that turn on their longitudinal axes intermittently or continuously) for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia in patients in the ICU, critically ill patients, or patients immobilized by illness and/or trauma.[372-377,703] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF LEGIONNAIRES' DISEASE

I. Staff Education and Infection Surveillance

A. Staff Education

Educate (1) physicians to heighten their suspicion for cases of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease and to use appropriate methods for its diagnosis, and (2) patient-care, infection-control, and engineering personnel about measures to control nosocomial legionellosis.[659-661] ***CATEGORY IA***

B. Surveillance

1. Establish mechanism(s) to provide clinicians with appropriate laboratory tests for the diagnosis of Legionnaires' disease.[386,414,415,419,704] ***CATEGORY IA***

2. Maintain a high index of suspicion for the diagnosis of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease, especially in patients who are at high-risk of acquiring the disease (patients who are immunosuppressed, including organ-transplant patients, patients with AIDS, and patients receiving systemic steroids; are ≥ 65 years of age; or have chronic underlying disease such as diabetes mellitus, congestive heart failure, and chronic obstructive lung disease).[385,386,400,402-406,412] Refer to the accompanying background document for definition of nosocomial legionellosis. ***CATEGORY II***

3. *No recommendation* for routinely culturing water systems for Legionella spp.[271,385,429,433,435,436,438-440,456,705] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

II. Interruption of Transmission of Legionella Spp.

A. Primary Prevention (Preventing Nosocomial Legionnaires' Disease When No Cases Have Been Documented)

1. Nebulization and Other Devices

a. (1) Use sterile (not distilled, nonsterile) water for rinsing nebulization devices and other semicritical respiratory-care equipment after they have been cleaned and/or disinfected.[258,271,706] ***CATEGORY IB***

(2) *No recommendation* for using tap water as an alternative to sterile water to rinse reusable semicritical equipment and devices used on the respiratory tract, after they have been subjected to high-level disinfection, whether or not rinsing is followed by drying with or without the use of alcohol. ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

b. Use only sterile (not distilled, nonsterile) water to fill reservoirs of devices used for nebulization.[241,252,258,271,706] ***CATEGORY IA***

c. Do not use large-volume room-air humidifiers that create aerosols (eg, by venturi principle, ultrasound, or spinning disk) and thus are really nebulizers, unless they can be sterilized or subjected to high-level disinfection daily and filled only with sterile water.[252,706] ***CATEGORY IA***

2. Cooling Towers

a. When a new hospital building is constructed, place cooling tower(s) in such a way that the tower drift is directed away from the hospital's air-intake system, and design the cooling towers such that the volume of aerosol drift is minimized.[422,707] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. For operational cooling towers, install drift eliminators, regularly use an effective biocide, maintain the tower according to manufacturers' recommendations, and keep adequate maintenance records. (See Appendix D.)[422,464,708] ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Water-Distribution System

a. *No recommendation* for routinely maintaining potable water at the outlet at ≥ 50°C or < 20°C, or chlorinating heated water to achieve 1-2 mg/L free residual chlorine at the tap.[385,429,440,447-450] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

b. *No recommendation* for treatment of water with ozone, ultraviolet light, or heavy-metal ions.[391,460-463,466] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

B. Secondary Prevention (Response to Identification of Laboratory-Confirmed Nosocomial Legionellosis)

When a single case of laboratory-confirmed, *definite* nosocomial Legionnaires' disease is identified, OR if two or more cases of laboratory-confirmed, *possible* nosocomial Legionnaires' disease occur within 6 months of each other (refer to background document for definition of definite and possible nosocomial Legionnaires' disease.):

1. Contact the local or state health department or the CDC if the disease is reportable in the state or if assistance is needed. ***CATEGORY IB***

2. If a case is identified in a severely immunocompromised patient such as an organ-transplant recipient, OR if the hospital houses severely immunocompromised patients, conduct a combined epidemiologic and environmental investigation (as outlined from II-B-3-b-1 through II-B-5, below) to determine the source(s) of *Legionella* spp. ***CATEGORY IB***

3. If the hospital does not house severely immunocompromised patients, conduct an epidemiologic investigation via a retrospective review of microbiologic, serologic, and postmortem data to identify previous cases, and begin an intensive prospective surveillance for additional cases of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease. ***CATEGORY IB***

a. If there is no evidence of continued nosocomial transmission, continue the intensive prospective surveillance (as in II-B-3, above) for at least 2 months after surveillance was begun. ***CATEGORY II***

b. If there is evidence of continued transmission:

(1) Conduct an environmental investigation to determine the source(s) of *Legionella* spp. by collecting water samples from potential sources of aerosolized water, following the methods described in Appendix C and saving and subtyping isolates of *Legionella* spp. obtained from patients and environment.[241,258,422-428,452,454] ***CATEGORY IB***

(2) If a source is not identified, continue surveillance for new cases for at least 2 months, and, depending on the scope of the outbreak, decide on either deferring decontamination pending identification of the source(s) of *Legionella* spp., or proceeding with decontamination of the hospital's water distribution system, with special attention to the specific hospital areas involved in the outbreak. ***CATEGORY II***

(3) If a source of infection is identified by epidemiologic and environmental investigation, promptly decontaminate it.[466] ***CATEGORY IB***

(a) If the heated-water system is implicated:

i. Decontaminate the heated-water system either by superheating (flushing for at least 5 minutes each distal outlet of the system with water at ≥ 65°C), OR by hyperchlorination (flushing for at least 5 minutes all outlets of the system with water containing ≥ 10 mg/L free residual chlorine).[450,452,456,457] Post warning signs at each outlet being flushed to prevent scald injury to patients, staff, or visitors. ***CATEGORY IB***

ii. Depending on local and state regulations regarding potable water temperature in public buildings,[458] maintain potable water at the outlet at ≥ 50°C or < 20°C, or chlorinate heated water to achieve 1-2 mg/L free residual chlorine at the tap in hospitals housing patients who are at high risk of acquiring nosocomial legionellosis (eg, immunocompromised patients).[385,429,440,447-450] (See Appendix B.) ***CATEGORY II***

iii. *No recommendation* for treatment of water with ozone, ultraviolet light, or heavy-metal ions.[391,460-463,466] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

iv. Clean hot-water storage tanks and waterheaters to remove accumulated scale and sediment.[393] ***CATEGORY IB***

v. Restrict immunocompromised patients from taking showers, and use only sterile water for their oral consumption until *Legionella* spp. become undetectable by culture in the hospital water.[430] ***CATEGORY II***

(b) If cooling towers or evaporative condensers are implicated, decontaminate the cooling-tower system using the protocol outlined in Appendix D.[464] ***CATEGORY IB***

(4) Assess the efficacy of implemented measures in reducing or eliminating *Legionella* spp. by collecting specimens for culture at 2-week intervals for 3 months. ***CATEGORY II***

(a) If *Legionella* spp. are not detected in cultures during 3 months of monitoring, collect cultures monthly for another 3 months. ***CATEGORY II***

(b) If *Legionella* spp. are detected in one or more cultures, reassess the implemented control measures, modify them accordingly, and repeat decontamination procedures. Options for repeat decontamination include the intensive use of the same technique utilized for initial decontamination, or a combination of superheating and hyperchlorination. ***CATEGORY II***

(5) Keep adequate records of all infection control measures, including maintenance procedures, and of environmental test results for cooling towers and potable-water systems. ***CATEGORY II***

PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF NOSOCOMIAL PULMONARY ASPERGILLOSIS

I. Staff Education and Infection Surveillance

A. Staff Education

Educate health-care workers regarding nosocomial pulmonary aspergillosis especially in immunocompromised patients, and about infection control procedures to decrease its occurrence.[659-661] ***CATEGORY IA***

B. Surveillance

1. Maintain a high index of suspicion for the diagnosis of nosocomial pulmonary aspergillosis in high-risk patients, ie, patients with prolonged, severe granulocytopenia (< 1,000 polymorphonuclear cells/mm^3 for 2 weeks or < 100 polymorphonuclear cells/mm^3 for 1 week), most notably bone-marrow transplant recipients.[512,513,709] Consider solid-organ transplant recipients and patients with hematologic malignancies who are receiving chemotherapy also to be at high risk of developing the infection when they are severely granulocytopenic as defined above.[473,485,512,710] ***CATEGORY IB***

2. Maintain surveillance for cases of nosocomial pulmonary aspergillosis by periodically reviewing the hospital's microbiologic, histopathologic, and postmortem data. ***CATEGORY IB***

3. *No recommendation* for performing routine, periodic cultures of the nasopharynx of high-risk patients, or devices, air samples, dust, ventilation ducts, and filters in rooms occupied by high-risk patients.[457,478,487,488,521-523] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

II. Interruption of Transmission of Aspergillus Spp. Spores

A. Planning New Specialized-Care Units for High-Risk Patients

1. When constructing new specialized-care units for high-risk patients, ensure that patient rooms have adequate capacity to minimize fungal spore counts via maintenance of (a) high-efficiency air filtration, (b) directed room airflow, (c) positive air pressure in patient's room in relation to the corridor, (d) properly sealed room, and (e) high rates of room-air changes.[474,529-531,534,538,711,712] ***CATEGORY IB***

a. Air filtration. Install high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters that are 99.97% efficient in filtering 0.3μ-sized particles, either centrally or at the point of use, ie, at the room-air intake site.[474,529-531,534,538,711,712] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. Directed room airflow. Place air-intake and exhaust ports such that room air comes in from one side of the room, flows across the patient's bed, and exits on the opposite side of the room.[530,531] ***CATEGORY IB***

c. Well-sealed room. Construct windows, doors, and intake and exhaust ports to achieve complete sealing of the room against air leaks.[530,531] ***CATEGORY IB***

d. Room-air pressure. Ensure that room-air pressure can be maintained continuously above that of corridor, eg, as can be demonstrated by performance of the smoke-tube test, unless there are clinical-care or infection-control contraindications to doing so.[530,531] ***CATEGORY IB***

(1) To maintain positive room-air pressure in relation to the corridor, supply room air at a rate that is 10-20% more than the rate of exhausting air from the room.[530,531] ***CATEGORY IB***

(2) For placement of patients at high risk of aspergillosis who also have an infection (eg, varicella or infectious tuberculosis) requiring negative room-air pressure in relation

to the corridor, provide optimal conditions to prevent the spread of the airborne infection from and acquisition of aspergillosis by the patient, eg, by providing anterooms with an independent exhaust.[530] ***CATEGORY II***

e. Room-air changes. Maintain room-air changes at ≥ 12 per hour.[1,530,536,537] ***CATEGORY II***

2. *No recommendation* for the preferential installation of a particular system, such as one with ultra-high air change rates (100-400 per hour), eg, laminar airflow, over other systems that meet the conditions in II-A-1-a through II-A-1-e above.[474,529-531,534,538,711,712] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

3. Formulate hospital policies to minimize exposures of high-risk patients to potential sources of *Aspergillus* spp., such as hospital construction and renovation, cleaning activities, carpets, food, potted plants, and flower arrangements.[467,487,523,538,713-715] ***CATEGORY IB***

4. *No recommendation* for prophylactic use of copper-8-quinolinolate biocide in fireproofing material.[467,477,531,538] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

B. In Existing Facilities with No Cases of Nosocomial Aspergillosis

1. Place high-risk patients in protected environment that meets the conditions outlined in Section II-A-1-a through II-A-1-e above.[474,487,529,538,711,712,716] ***CATEGORY IB***

2. Routinely inspect air-handling systems in high-risk patient-care areas, maintain adequate air exchanges and pressure differentials, and eliminate air leakages. Coordinate repairs of the system with relocation of high-risk patients to other areas with optimal air-handling capabilities.[467,478,487] ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Minimize the time high-risk patients spend outside their rooms for diagnostic procedures and other activities; and when high-risk patients leave their rooms, require them to wear well-fitting masks capable of filtering *Aspergillus* spp. spores. ***CATEGORY IB***

4. Prevent dust accumulation by daily damp-dusting horizontal surfaces, regularly cleaning ceiling tiles and air-duct grates when the rooms are not occupied by patients, and maintaining adequate seals on windows to prevent room infiltration by outside air, especially in areas occupied by patients at high-risk for developing aspergillosis.[487] ***CATEGORY IB***

5. Systematically review and coordinate infection-control strategies with personnel in charge of hospital engineering, maintenance, central supply and distribution, and catering.[467,523] ***CATEGORY IB***

6. When planning hospital construction and renovation activities, assess whether patients at high-risk for aspergillosis are likely to be exposed to high ambient-air spore counts of *Aspergillus* spp. from construction and renovation sites, and develop a plan to prevent such exposures.[467,523] ***CATEGORY IB***

7. During construction or renovation activities:

(a) Construct barriers between patient-care and construction areas to prevent dust from entering patient-care areas; these barriers, (eg, plastic or drywall) should be impermeable to *Aspergillus* spp.[467,478,522,523] ***CATEGORY IB***

(b) In construction/renovation areas inside the hospital, create and maintain negative pressure relative to that in adjacent patient-care areas if there are no contraindications for such pressure differential, eg, there are patients with infectious tuberculosis in the adjacent patient-care areas.[467,478,522,523,538] ***CATEGORY II***

(c) Direct pedestrian traffic from construction areas away from patient-care areas to limit opening and closing of doors (or other barriers) that may cause dust dispersion, entry of contaminated air, or tracking of dust into patient areas.[467,478,522,523] ***CATEGORY IB***

(d) Clean newly constructed areas before allowing patients to enter the areas.[467,523] ***CATEGORY IB***

8. Eliminate exposures of patients at high-risk for aspergillosis to activities, such as floor or carpet vacuuming, that may cause spores of *Aspergillus* spp. and other fungi to be aerosolized.[467,487,523] ***CATEGORY IB***

9. Eliminate exposures of patients at high-risk for aspergillosis to potential environmental sources of *Aspergillus* spp., such as *Aspergillus*-contaminated food, potted plants, or flower arrangements.[467,487,523,713-715] ***CATEGORY II***

10. Prevent birds from gaining access to hospital air-intake ducts.[524] ***CATEGORY IB***

C. When a Case of Nosocomial Aspergillosis Occurs

1. Begin a prospective search for additional cases in hospitalized patients and an intensified retrospective review of the hospital's microbiologic, histopathologic, and postmortem records. ***CATEGORY IB***

2. If there is no evidence of continuing transmission, continue routine maintenance procedures to prevent nosocomial aspergillosis, as in Section II-B-1 through II-B-10 above. ***CATEGORY IB***

3. If evidence of continuing *Aspergillus* spp. infection exists, conduct an environmental investigation to determine and eliminate the source. If assistance is needed, contact the local or state health department.[474,477,478,522,534,538] ***CATEGORY IB***

a. Collect environmental samples from potential sources of *Aspergillus* spp., especially those sources implicated in the epidemiologic investigation, by using appropriate methods,[474,477,478,522,534,538,717] eg, use of a high-volume air sampler rather than settle plates.[474] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. Perform molecular subtyping of *Aspergillus* spp. obtained from patients and the environment to establish strain identity, depending on test availability.[526,527] ***CATEGORY IB***

c. If air-handling systems supplying high-risk patient-care areas are not optimal, consider temporary deployment of portable HEPA filters until rooms with optimal air-handling systems are available for all patients at high risk of invasive aspergillosis. ***CATEGORY II***

d. If an environmental source is identified, perform corrective measures as needed to eliminate the source from the high-risk patients' environment. ***CATEGORY IB***

e. If an environmental source is not identified, review existing infection-control measures, including engineering aspects, to identify potential areas that can be corrected or improved. ***CATEGORY IB***

III. Modifying Host Risk for Infection

A. Administer cytokines, including granulocyte colony-stimulating factor and granulocyte-macrophage stimulating factor, to increase host resistance to aspergillosis by decreasing the duration and severity of chemotherapy-induced granulocytopenia.[514,515] ***CATEGORY II***

B. *No recommendation* for administration of intranasal amphotericin B or oral antifungal agents (including amphotericin B and triazole compounds) in high-risk patients for prophylaxis against aspergillosis.[516,517,718] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF RESPIRATORY SYNCYTIAL VIRUS INFECTION

I. Staff Education and Infection Surveillance

A. Staff Education

Educate personnel about the epidemiology, modes of transmission and means of preventing spread of respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).[226,659-661] ***CATEGORY IA***

B. Surveillance

1. Establish mechanism(s) by which the appropriate hospital personnel are promptly alerted to any increase in RSV activity in the local community. ***CATEGORY IB***

2. During periods of increased prevalence of RSV in the community (and during December-March), attempt prompt diagnosis of RSV infection by using rapid diagnostic techniques as clinically indicated in pediatric patients, especially infants, and in immunocompromised adults admitted to the hospital with respiratory illness.[593,597] ***CATEGORY IB***

II. Interruption of Transmission of RSV

A. Prevention of Person-to-Person Transmission

1. Primary measures for contact isolation

a. Handwashing

Wash hands after contact with a patient, or after touching respiratory secretions or fomites potentially contaminated with respiratory secretions, whether or not gloves are worn.[218,231,554,584-586,595] ***CATEGORY IA***

b. Gloving

(1) Wear gloves for handling patients or respiratory secretions of patients with proven or suspected RSV infection, or fomites potentially contaminated with patient secretions.[226,554,584,585,591,597] ***CATEGORY IA***

(2) Change gloves between patients, or after handling respiratory secretions or fomites contaminated with secretions from one patient before contact with another patient.[226,228] Wash hands after removing gloves. (See II-A-1-a, above.) ***CATEGORY IA***

c. Gowning

Wear a gown when soiling with respiratory secretions from a patient is anticipated, eg, when handling infants with RSV infection or other viral respiratory illness, and change the gown after such contact and before caring for another patient.[226,590,592,597] ***CATEGORY IB***

d. Staffing

Restrict health-care workers in the acute stages of an upper respiratory illness (ie, those who are sneezing and/or coughing) from taking care of infants and other patients at high risk for complications from RSV infection (eg, children with severe underlying cardio-pulmonary conditions, children receiving chemotherapy for malignancy, premature infants, and patients who are otherwise immunocompromised).[595,597] ***CATEGORY IB***

e. Limiting visitors

Do not allow persons with symptoms of respiratory infection to visit pediatric, immunosuppressed, and cardiac patients.[591] ***CATEGORY II***

2. Control of RSV Outbreaks

a. Use of private room, cohorting, and patient-screening

To control ongoing RSV transmission in the hospital, admit young children with symptoms of viral respiratory illness to single rooms when possible, OR perform RSV-screening diagnostic tests on young children upon admission and cohort them according to their RSV-infection status.[591,593,595,597] ***CATEGORY II***

b. Personnel cohorting

During an outbreak of nosocomial RSV, cohort personnel as much as practical, ie, restrict personnel who give care to infected patients from giving care to uninfected patients, and vice-versa.[591,595,597] ***CATEGORY II***

c. Postponing patient admission

During outbreaks of nosocomial RSV, postpone elective admission of uninfected patients at high risk of complications from RSV infection. ***CATEGORY II***

d. Wearing eye-nose goggles

No recommendation for wearing eye-nose goggles for close contact with an RSV-infected patient.[594,598] ***UNRESOLVED ISSUE***

PREVENTION AND CONTROL OF INFLUENZA

I. Staff Education and Infection Surveillance

A. Staff Education

Educate personnel about the epidemiology, modes of transmission, and means of preventing the spread of influenza.[659-661,719,720] ***CATEGORY IA***

B. Surveillance

1. Establish mechanism(s) by which the appropriate hospital personnel are promptly alerted of any increase in influenza activity in the local community. ***CATEGORY IB***

2. Arrange for laboratory tests to be available to clinicians, for use when clinically indicated, to promptly confirm the diagnosis of influenza and other acute viral respiratory illnesses, especially during November- April.[620-625] ***CATEGORY IB***

II. Modifying Host Risk to Infection

A. Vaccination

1. Patients

Offer vaccine to outpatients and inpatients at high risk of complications from influenza, beginning in September and continuing until influenza activity has begun to decline.[628,631,648,721-723] Patients at high risk of complications from influenza include those ≥ 65 years of age; in long-term-care units; with chronic disorders of the pulmonary or cardiovascular systems, diabetes mellitus, renal dysfunction, hemoglobinopathies, or immunosuppression; and children 6 months-18 years of age who are receiving long-term aspirin therapy.[628] In addition, consider patients with musculo-skeletal disorders that impede adequate respiration to be at risk of complications from influenza. ***CATEGORY IA***

2. Personnel

Vaccinate health-care workers before the influenza season each year, preferably between mid-October and mid-November. Until influenza activity declines, continue to make vaccine available to newly hired personnel and to those who initially refuse vaccination. If vaccine supply is limited, give highest priority to staff caring for patients at greatest risk of severe complications from influenza infection, as listed in Section II-A-1 above.[628] ***CATEGORY IB***

B. Use of Antiviral Agents (See Section IV below, Control of Influenza Outbreaks)

III. Interruption of (Person-to-Person) Transmission

A. Keep a patient for whom influenza is suspected or diagnosed in a private room, or in a room with other patients with proven influenza, unless there are medical contraindications to doing so. ***CATEGORY IB***

B. As much as feasible, maintain negative air pressure in rooms of patients for whom influenza is suspected or diagnosed, or place together persons with influenza-like illness in a hospital area with an independent air-supply and exhaust system.[614,615,617,724] ***CATEGORY II***

C. Institute masking of individuals (except

those immune to the infecting strain) who enter the room of a patient with influenza.[614,615,724] ***CATEGORY IB***

D. As much as possible during periods of influenza activity in the community, have the hospital's employee health service evaluate patient-care staff who have symptoms of febrile upper respiratory tract infection suggestive of influenza for possible removal from duties that involve direct patient contact. Use more stringent guidelines for staff working in certain patient-care areas, eg, ICUs, nurseries, and units with severely immunosuppressed patients.[649,725] ***CATEGORY II***

E. When community and/or nosocomial outbreaks occur, especially if they are characterized by high attack rates and severe illness:

1. Restrict hospital visitors who have a febrile respiratory illness. ***CATEGORY IB***

2. Curtail or eliminate elective medical and surgical admissions as necessary. ***CATEGORY IB***

3. Restrict cardiovascular and pulmonary surgery to only emergency cases. ***CATEGORY IB***

IV. Control of Influenza Outbreaks

A. Determining the Outbreak Strain

Early in the outbreak, obtain nasopharyngeal-swab or nasal-wash specimens from patients with recent-onset symptoms suggestive of influenza for influenza virus culture or antigen detection. ***CATEGORY IB***

B. Vaccination of Patients and Personnel

Administer current influenza vaccine to unvaccinated patients and staff, especially if the outbreak occurs early in the influenza season.[610,628] ***CATEGORY IB***

C. Amantadine or Rimantadine Administration

1. When a nosocomial outbreak of influenza A is suspected or recognized:

a. Administer amantadine or rimantadine for prophylaxis to all uninfected patients in the involved unit for whom it is not contraindicated. Do not delay administration of amantadine or rimantadine unless the results of diagnostic tests to identify the infecting strain(s) can be obtained within 12 to 24 hours after specimen collection.[634,642] ***CATEGORY IB***

b. Administer amantadine or rimantadine for prophylaxis to unvaccinated staff members for whom it is not medically contraindicated, and who are in the involved unit or taking care of high-risk patients.[642] ***CATEGORY II***

2. Discontinue amantadine or rimantadine if laboratory tests confirm or strongly suggest that influenza type A is not the cause of the outbreak.[632] ***CATEGORY IA***

3. If the cause of the outbreak is confirmed or believed to be influenza type A AND vaccine has been administered only recently to susceptible patients and personnel, continue amantadine or rimantadine prophylaxis until 2 weeks after the vaccination.[726] ***CATEGORY IB***

4. To the extent possible, do not allow contact between those at high risk of complications from influenza and patients or staff who are taking amantadine or rimantadine for treatment of acute respiratory illness; prevent contact during and for two days after the latter discontinue treatment.[633,643-647] ***CATEGORY IB***

D. Interruption of (Person-to-Person) Transmission of Microorganisms (See Section III, A-E above.)

REVIEWERS

M. Lee Bancroft
Beth Israel Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

John Bass, MD
University of Alabama Medical Center
Mobile, Alabama

Arnold J. Berry, MD
Emory University Hospital
Atlanta, Georgia

Jean Carlet, MD
Hospital Saint-Joseph
Paris, France

Frank B. Cerra, MD
University of Minnesota Hospital and Clinic
Minneapolis, Minnesota
David W. Denning, MD
University of Manchester
Manchester, United Kingdom

Leigh G. Donowitz, MD
University of Virginia School of Medicine
Charlottesville, Virginia

Paul H. Edelstein, MD
Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Richard A. Garibaldi, MD
University of Connecticut Health Center
Farmington, Connecticut

Dean Hess, PhD, RRT
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Waldemar G. Johanson, MD
New Jersey Medical School
Newark, New Jersey

Jean R. Joly, MD, FRCP(C)
Hospital du Saint-Sacrament
Quebec, Canada

Marc F. LaForce, MD
The Genessee Hospital
Rochester, New York

G. Umberto Meduri, MD
University of Tennessee
Memphis, Tennessee

James E. Pennington, MD
University of California
San Francisco, California

Frank Rhame, MD
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, Minnesota

Andrew Streifel
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, Minnesota

Antonio Torres, MD
University of Barcelona
Barcelona, Spain

REFERENCES

1. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care facilities, 1994. MMWR 1994;43:1-32.
2. Horan TC, White JW, Jarvis WR, et al. Nosocomial infection surveillance, 1984. MMWR 1986;35:17SS-29SS.
3. Schaberg DR, Culver DH, Gaynes RP. Major trends in the microbial etiology of nosocomial infection. Am J Med 1991;91(suppl 3B):72S-75S.
4. Bartlett JG, O'Keefe P, Tally FP, et al. Bacteriology of hospital-acquired pneumonia. Arch Intern Med 1986;146:868-871.
5. Fagon JY, Chastre J, Domart Y, et al. Nosocomial pneumonia in patients receiving continuous mechanical ventilation: prospective analysis of 52 episodes with use of a protected specimen brush and quantitative culture techniques. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;139:877-884.

6. Torres A, Aznar R, Gatell JM, et al. Incidence, risk, and prognosis factors of nosocomial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142:523-528.
7. Chastre J, Fagon JY, Soler P, et al. Diagnosis of nosocomial bacterial pneumonia in intubated patients undergoing ventilation: comparison of the usefulness of bronchoalveolar lavage and the protected specimen brush. Am J Med 1988;85:499-506.
8. Fagon J, Chastre J, Hance AJ, et al. Detection of nosocomial lung infection in ventilated patients: use of a protected specimen brush and quantitative culture technique in 147 patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;138:110-116.
9. Chastre J, Viau F, Brun P, et al. Prospective evaluation of the protected specimen brush for the diagnosis of pulmonary infections in ventilated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;130:924-929.
10. Rello J, Quintana E, Ausina V, et al. Incidence, etiology, and outcome of nosocomial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients. Chest 1991;100:439-444.
11. Jimenez P, Torres A, Rodriguez-Riosin R, et al. Incidence and etiology of pneumonia acquired during mechanical ventilation. Crit Care Med 1989;17:882-885.
12. Pugin J, Auckenthaler R, Mili N, Janssens JP, Lew PD, Suter PM. Diagnosis of ventilator-associated pneumonia by bacteriologic analysis of bronchoscopic and nonbronchoscopic blind bronchoalveolar lavage fluid. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:1121-1129.
13. Torres A, De La Bellacasa JP, Rodriguez-Riosin R, De Anta MT, Agusti-Vidal A. Diagnostic value of telescoping plugged catheters in mechanically ventilated patients with bacterial pneumonia using the metras catheter. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;138:117-120.
14. Meduri GU, Beals DH, Meijub AG, Baselski V. Protected bronchoalveolar lavage: a new bronchoscopic technique to retrieve uncontaminated distal airway secretions. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:855-864.
15. De Castro FR, Violan JS, Capuz BL, Luna JC, Rodriguez BG, Alonso JLM. Reli-ability of bronchoscopic protected catheter brush in the diagnosis of pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1991;19:171-175.
16. Davidson M, Tempest B, Palmer DL. Bacteriologic diagnosis of acute pneumonia. JAMA 1976;235:158-163.
17. Fagon JY, Chastre J, Hance AJ, Montravers P, Novara A, Gilbert C. Nosocomial pneumonia in ventilated patients: a cohort study evaluating attributable mortality and hospital stay. Am J Med 1993;94:281-288.
18. Higuchi JH, Coalson JJ, Johanson WG Jr. Bacteriologic diagnosis of nosocomial pneumonia in primates: usefulness of the protected specimen brush. Am Rev Respir Dis 1982;125:53-57.
19. Bryan CS, Reynolds KL. Bacteremic nosocomial pneumonia: analysis of 172 episodes from a single metropolitan area. Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;129:668-671.
20. Espersen F, Gabrielsen J. Pneumonia due to Staphylococcus aureus during mechanical ventilation. J Infect Dis 1981;144:19-23.
21. Inglis TJJ, Sproat LJ, Hawkey PM, Gibson JS. Staphylococcal pneumonia in ventilated patients: a twelve month review of cases in an intensive care unit. J Hosp Infect 1993;25:207-210.
22. Reusser P, Zimmerli W, Scheidegger D, Marbet GA, Buser M, Gyr K. Role of gastric colonization in nosocomial infections and endotoxemia: a prospective study in neurosurgical patients on mechanical ventilation. J Infect Dis 1989;160:414-421.
23. Johanson WG Jr, Pierce AK, Sanford JP, et al. Nosocomial respiratory infections with gram-negative bacilli: the significance of colonization of the respiratory tract. Ann Intern Med 1972; 77:701-706.
24. Berger R, Arango L. Etiologic diagnosis of bacterial nosocomial pneumonia in seriously ill patients. Crit Care Med 1985;13:833-836.
25. Andrews CP, Coalson JJ, Smith JD, et al. Diagnosis of nosocomial bacterial pneumonia in acute, diffuse lung injury. Chest 1981;80:254-258.
26. Salata RA, Lederman MM, Shlaes DM, et al. Diagnosis of nosocomial pneumonia in intubated, intensive care unit patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;136:426-432.
27. Pham LH, Brun-Buisson C, Legrand P, et al. Diagnosis of nosocomial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients: comparison of a plugged telescoping catheter with the protected specimen brush. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991;143:1055-1061.
28. Meduri GU. Ventilator-associated pneumonia in patients with respiratory failure. Chest 1990;97:1208-1219.
29. Bell RC, Coalson JJ, Smith JD, Johanson WG Jr. Multiple organ system failure and infection in adult respiratory distress syndrome. Ann Intern Med 1983;99:293-298.
30. Tobin MJ, Grenvik A. Nosocomial lung infection and its diagnosis. Crit Care Med 1984;12:191-200.
31. Villers D, Deriennic M, Raffi R, et al. Reliability of the bronchoscopic protected catheter brush in intubated and ventilated patients. Chest 1985;88:527-530.
32. Guckian JC, Christensen WD. Quantitative culture and gram stain of sputum in pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;118:997-1005.
33. Lowry FD, Carlisle PS, Adams A, Feiner C. The incidence of nosocomial pneumonia following urgent endotracheal intubation. Infect Control 1987;8:245-248.
34. Craven DE, Kunches LM, Kilinsky V, Lichtenberg DA, Make BJ, McCabe WR. Risk factors for pneumonia and fatality in patients receiving continuous mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133: 792-796.
35. Celis R, Torres A, Gatell JM, et al. Nosocomial pneumonia—a multivariate analysis of risk and prognosis. Chest 1988;93:318-324.
36. Garner JS, Jarvis WR, Emori TG, Horan TC, Hughes JM. CDC definitions for nosocomial infections, 1988. Am J Infect Control 1988;16:128-140.
37. Fagon JY, Chastre J, Hance AJ, Domart Y, Trouillet JL, Gibert C. Evaluation of clinical judgment in the identification and treatment of nosocomial pneumonia in ventilated patients. Chest 1993;103:547-553.
38. Baughman RP, Thorpe JE, Staneck J, et al. Use of the protected specimen brush in patients with endotracheal or tracheostomy tubes. Chest 1987;91:233-235.
39. Meduri GU, Wunderink RG, Leeper KV, Beals DH. Management of bacterial pneumonia in ventilated patients. The role of protected bronchoalveolar lavage. Chest 1992;101:500-508.
40. Bryant LR, Trinkle JK, Mobin-Uddin K, Baker J, Griffin WO. Bacterial colonization profile with tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation. Arch Surg 1972; 104:647-651.
41. Torres A, De La Bellacasa JP, Xaubet A, et al. Diagnostic value of quantitative cultures of bronchoalveolar lavage and telescoping plugged catheter in mechanically ventilated patients with bacterial pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis 1989;140:306-310.
42. Lambert RS, Vereen LE, George RB. Comparison of tracheal aspirates and protected brush catheter specimens for identifying pathogenic bacteria in mechanically ventilated patients. Am J Med Sci 1989; 297:377-382.
43. Seidenfeld JJ, Pohl DF, Bell RC, et al. Incidence, site and outcome of infections in patients with the adult respiratory distress syndrome. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;134:12-16.
44. Meduri GU, Chastre J. The standardization of bronchoscopic techniques for ventilator-associated pneumonia. Chest 1992; 102(suppl 1):557S-563S.
45. Baselski V, El-Torky M, Coalson SS, Griffin J. The standardization of criteria for

processing and interpreting laboratory specimens. Chest 1992;102:571S-579S.
46. Wunderink RG, Mayhall G, Gibert C. Methodology for clinical investigation of ventilator-associated pneumonia: epidemiology and therapeutic intervention. Chest 1992;102(suppl 1):580S-588S.
47. Martos JA, Ferrer M, Torres A, et al. Specificity of quantitative cultures of protected specimen brush and bronchoalveolar lavage in mechanically ventilated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;141:A276. Abstract.
48. Marquette CH, Ramon P, Courcol R, et al. Bronchoscopic protected catheter brush for the diagnosis of pulmonary infections. Chest 1988;93:746-755.
49. Kahn FW, Jones JM. Diagnosing bacterial respiratory infection by bronchoalveolar lavage. J Infect Dis 1987;155:862-869.
50. Thorpe JE, Baughman RP, Frame PT, Wesseler TA, Staneck JL. Bronchoalveolar lavage for diagnosing acute bacterial pneumonia. J Infect Dis 1987;155:855-861.
51. Johanson WG Jr, Seidenfeld JJ, Gomez P, De los Santos R, Coalson JJ. Bacteriologic diagnosis of nosocomial pneumonia following prolonged mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1988;137:259-264.
52. Guerra LF, Baughman PP. Use of bronchoalveolar lavage to diagnose bacterial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients. Crit Care Med 1990;18:169-173.
53. Chastre J, Fagon JY, Soler P, et al. Quantification of BAL cells containing intracellular bacteria rapidly identifies ventilated patients with nosocomial pneumonia. Chest 1989;95:190S-192S.
54. Rouby JJ, Rossignon MD, Nicolas MH, et al. A prospective study of protected bronchoalveolar lavage in the diagnosis of nosocomial pneumonia. Anesthesiology 1989;71:679-685.
55. Trouillet JL, Guiguet M, Gibert C, et al. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy in ventilated patients. Evaluation of cardiopulmonary risk under midazolam sedation. Chest 1990;97: 927-933.
56. Lindholm CE, Ollman B, Snyder JV, et al. Cardiorespiratory effects of flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopy in critically ill patients. Chest 1978;74:362-368.
57. Rouby JJ, De lasalle EM, Poete P, et al. Nosocomial bronchopneumonia in the critically ill. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;146: 1059-1066.
58. Piperno D, Gaussorgues P, Bachmann P, Jaboulay M, Robert D. Diagnostic value of nonbronchoscopic bronchoalveolar lavage during mechanical ventilation. Chest 1988;93:223. Letter.
59. El-ebiary M, Torres A, Gonzalez J, et al. Quantitative cultures of endotracheal aspirates for the diagnosis of ventilator-associated pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148:1552-1557.
60. Marquette CH, Georges H, Wallet F, et al. Diagnostic efficiency of endotracheal aspirates with quantitative bacterial cultures in intubated patients with suspected pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148:138-144.
61. Emori TG, Gaynes RP. An overview of nosocomial infections, including the role of the microbiology laboratory. Clin Microbiol Rev 1993;6:428-442.
62. Garibaldi RA, Britt MR, Coleman ML, Reading JC, Pace NL. Risk factors for postoperative pneumonia. Am J Med 1981;70:677-680.
63. Haley RW, Hooton TM, Culver DH, et al. Nosocomial infections in U.S. hospitals, 1975-1976; estimated frequency by selected characteristics of patients. Am J Med 1981;70:947-959.
64. Emori TG, Banerjee SN, Culver DH, et al. Nosocomial infections in elderly patients in the United States, 1986-1990. Am J Med 1991;91(suppl 3B):289S-293S.
65. Cross AS, Roup B. Role of respiratory assistance device in endemic nosocomial pneumonia. Am J Med 1981;70:681-685.
66. Jarvis WR, Edwards JR, Culver DH, et al. Nosocomial infection rates in adult and pediatric intensive care units in the United States. Am J Med 1991;91 (suppl 3B):185S-191S.
67. Rello J, Quintana E, Ausina V, et al. Risk factors for Staphylococcus aureus pneumonia in critically ill patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142:1320-1324.
68. Gaynes R, Bizek B, Mowry-Hanley J, et al. Risk factors for nosocomial pneumonia after coronary artery bypass graft operations. Ann Thorac Surg 1991;51:215-218.
69. Joshi N, Localio AR, Hamory BH. A predictive risk index for nosocomial pneumonia in the intensive care unit. Am J Med 1992;93:135-142.
70. Jacobs S, Chang RWS, Lee B, Bartlett FW. Continuous enteral feeding: a major cause of pneumonia among ventilated intensive care unit patients. J Parenter Enter Nutr 1990;14:353-356.
71. Ashbaugh DC, Petty TL. Sepsis complicating the acute respiratory distress syndrome. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1972;135:865-868.
72. Chevret S, Hemmer M, Carlet J, Langer M, et al. Incidence and risk factors of pneumonia acquired in intensive care units. Intensive Care Med 1993;19:256-264.
73. Hanson LC, Wever DJ, Rutala WA. Risk factors for nosocomial pneumonia in the elderly. Am J Med 1992;92:161-166.
74. Kollef MH. Ventilator-asasociated pneumonia. JAMA 1993;270:1965-1970.
75. Craven DE, Kunches LM, Lichtenberg DA, et al. Nosocomial infection and fatality in medical and surgical intensive care unit patients. Arch Intern Med 1988;148:1161-1168.
76. Graybill JR, Marshall LW, Charache P, Wallace CK, Melvin VB. Nosocomial pneumonia—a continuing major problem. Am Rev Respir Dis 1973;108: 1130-1140.
77. Gross PA, Van Antwerpen C. Nosocomial infections and hospital deaths. Am J Med 1983;75:658-662.
78. Stevens RM, Teres D, Skillman JJ, Feingold DS. Pneumonia in an intensive care unit. A 30-month experience. Arch Intern Med 1974;134:106-111.
79. Craig CP, Connelly S. Effect of intensive care unit nosocomial pneumonia on duration of stay and mortality. Am J Infect Control 1984;4:233-238.
80. Leu HS, Kaiser DL, Mori M, Woolson RF, Wenzel RP. Hospital-acquired pneumonia: attributable mortality and morbidity. Am J Epidemiol 1989;129:1258-1267.
81. Haley RW, Schaberg DR, Crowley KH, Von Allmen SD, McGowan JE Jr. Extra charges and prolongation of stay attributable to nosocomial infections: a prospective interhospital comparison. Am J Med 1981;70:51-58.
82. Freeman J, Rosner BA, McGowan JE. Adverse effects of nosocomial infection. J Infect Dis 1979;140:732-740.
83. Martone WJ, Jarvis WR, Culver DH, Haley RW. Incidence and nature of endemic and epidemic nosocomial infections. In: Bennett JV, Brachman PS, eds. Hospital Infections. 3rd ed. Boston, MA: Little, Brown and Co; 1993:577-596.
84. Huxley EJ, Viroslav J, Gray WR, Pierce AK. Pharyngeal aspiration in normal adults and patients with depressed consciousness. Am J Med 1973;64:564-568.
85. Olivares L, Segovia A, Revuelta R. Tube feeding and lethal aspiration in neurologic patients: a review of 720 autopsy cases. Stroke 1974;5:654-657.
86. Spray SB, Zuidema GD, Cameron HL. Aspiration pneumonia: incidence of aspiration with endotracheal tubes. Am J Surg 1976;131:701-703.
87. Cameron JL, Reynolds J, Zuidema GD. Aspiration in patients with tracheostomies. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1973;136:68-70.
88. Johanson WG Jr, Pierce AK, Sanford JP. Changing pharyngeal bacterial flora of hospitalized patients. N Engl J Med 1969;281:1137-1140.
89. Niederman MS, Merrill WW, Ferranti RD. Nutritional status and bacterial binding in the lower respiratory tract in patients with chronic tracheostomy. Ann Intern Med 1984;100:795-800.
90. Reynolds HY. Bacterial adherence to respi-

ratory tract mucosa: a dynamic interaction leading to colonization. Seminars Respir Infect 1987;2:8-19.
91. Louria DB, Kanimski T. The effects of four antimicrobial drug regimens on sputum superinfection in hospitalized patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1962;85:649-665.
92. Rosenthal S, Tager IB. Prevalence of gram-negative rods in the normal pharyngeal flora. Ann Intern Med 1975; 83:355-357.
93. Mackowiak PA, Martin RM, Jones SR. Pharyngeal colonization by gram-negative bacilli in aspiration-prone persons. Arch Intern Med 1978;138:1224-1227.
94. Valenti WM, Trudell RG, Bentley DW. Factors predisposing to oropharyngeal colonization with gram-negative bacilli in the aged. N Engl J Med 1978;298:1108-1111.
95. Woods DE, Straus DC, Johanson WG, Berry VK, Bass JA. Role of pili in adherence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to mammalian buccal epithelial cells. Infect Immun 1980;29:1146-1151.
96. Niederman MS. Bacterial adherence as a mechanism of airway colonization. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 1989;8:15-20.
97. Johanson WG Jr, Higuchi JH, Chaudhuri TR. Bacterial adherence to epithelial cells in bacillary colonization of the respiratory tract. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;121:55-63.
98. Abraham SN, Beachey EH, Simpson WA, et al. Adherence of *Streptococcus* pyogenes, *Escherichia coli*, and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to fibronectin-coated and uncoated epithelial cells. Infect Immun 1983;41:1261-1268.
99. Beachey EH. Bacterial adherence: adhesin-receptor interactions mediating the attachment of bacteria to mucosal surfaces. J Infect Dis 1981;143:325-345.
100. Woods DE, Straus DC, Johanson WG, Bass JA. Role of fibronectin in the prevention of adherence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to buccal cells. J Infect Dis 1981;143:784-790.
101. Woods DE, Straus DC, Johanson WG, Bass JA. Role of salivary protease activity in adherence of gram-negative bacilli to mammalian buccal epithelial cells in vitro. J Clin Invest 1981;68:1435-1440.
102. Ramphal R, Small PM, Shands JW Jr, et al. Adherence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to tracheal cells injured by influenza infection or by endotracheal intubation. Infect Immun 1980;27:614-619.
103. Niederman MS, Merrill WW, Polomski LM, Reynolds HY, Gee JBL. Influence of sputum IgA and elastase on tracheal cell bacterial adherence. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:255-260.
104. Niederman MS, Raferty TD, Sasaki CT, et al. Comparison of bacterial adherence to ciliated and squamous epithelial cells obtained from the human respiratory tract. Am Rev Respir Dis 1983;127:85-90.
105. Franklin AL, Todd T, Gurman G, et al. Adherence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa to cilia of human tracheal epithelial cells. Infect Immun 1987;55:1523-1525.
106. Palmer LB, Merrill WW, Niederman MS, et al. Bacterial adherence to respiratory tract cells: relationships between in vivo and in vitro pH and bacterial attachments. Am Rev Respir Dis 1986;133:784-788.
107. Dal Nogare AR, Toews GB, Pierce AK. Increased salivary elastase precedes gram-negative bacillary colonization in postoperative patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;135:671-675.
108. Proctor RA. Fibronectin: a brief overview of its structure, function, and physiology. Rev Infect Dis 1987;9:S317-S321.
109. Niederman MS, Mantovani R, Schoch P, et al. Patterns and routes of tracheobronchial colonization in mechanically ventilated patients: the role of nutritional status in colonization of the lower airway by *Pseudomonas* species. Chest 1989;95:155-161.
110. Atherton ST, White DJ. Stomach as source of bacteria colonising respiratory tract during artificial ventilation. Lancet 1978;2:968-969.
111. Du Moulin GC, Paterson DG, White JH, Lisbon A. Aspiration of gastric bacteria in antacid-treated patients: a frequent cause of postoperative colonisation of the airway. Lancet 1982;2:242-245.
112. Kappstein I, Friedrich T, Hellinger P. Incidence of pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients treated with sucralfate or cimetidine as prophylaxis for stress bleeding: bacterial colonization of the stomach. Am J Med 1991;91(suppl 2A):125S-131S.
113. Daschner F, Kappstein I, Reuschen-bach K, Pfisterer J, Krieg N, Vogel W. Stress ulcer prophylaxis and ventilation pneumonia: prevention by antibacterial cytoprotective agents? Infect Control 1988;9:59-65.
114. Torres A, El-ebiary M, Gonzalez J, et al. Gastric and pharyngeal flora in nosocomial pneumonia acquired during mechanical ventilation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1993;148:352-357.
115. Martin LF, Booth FVM, Karlstadt RG, et al. Continuous intravenous cimetidine decreases stress-related upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage without promoting pneumonia. Crit Care Med 1993;21:19-29.
116. Inglis TJJ, Sherratt MJ, Sproat LJ, Gibson JS, Hawkey PM. Gastro-duodenal dysfunction and bacterial colonisation of the ventilated lung. Lancet 1993;341:911-913.
117. Pingleton SK, Hinthron DR, Liu C. Enteral nutrition in patients receiving mechanical ventilation: multiple sources of tracheal colonization include the stomach. Am J Med 1986;80:827-832.
118. Driks MR, Craven DE, Celli BR, et al. Nosocomial pneumonia in intubated patients given sucralfate as compared with antacids or histamine type 2 blockers. N Engl J Med 1987;317:1376-1382.
119. Drasar BS, Shiner M, McLeod GM. Studies of the intestinal flora. I. The bacterial flora of the gastrointestinal tract in healthy and achlorhydric persons. Gastroenterology 1969;56:71-79.
120. Garrod LP. A study of the bactericidal power of hydrochloric acid and of gastric juice. St Barth Hosp Rep 1939;72:145-167.
121. Arnold I. The bacterial flora within the stomach and small intestine: the effect of experimental alterations of acid-base balance and the age of the subject. Am J Med Sci 1933;186:471-481.
122. Ruddell WSJ, Axon ATR, Findlay JM. Effect of cimetidine on the gastric bacterial flora. Lancet 1980;1:672-674.
123. Donowitz LG, Page MC, Mileur BL, Guenthner SH. Alteration of normal gastric flora in critical patients receiving antacid and cimetidine therapy. Infect Control 1986;7:23-26.
124. Priebe HJ, Skillman JJ, Bushnell LS, Long PC, Silen W. Antacid versus cimetidine in preventing acute gastrointestinal bleeding. N Engl J Med 1992;302:426-430.
125. Zinner MJ, Zuidema GD, Smith PL, Mignosa M. The prevention of upper gastrointestinal tract bleeding in patients in an intensive care unit. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1981;153:214-220.
126. Reinarz JA, Pierce AK, Mays BB, Sanford JP. The potential role of inhalation therapy equipment in nosocomial pulmonary infection. J Clin Invest 1965;44:831-839.
127. Schulze T, Edmondson EB, Pierce AK, Sanford JP. Studies on a new humidifying device as a potential source of bacterial aerosol. Am Rev Respir Dis 1967;96: 517-519.
128. Pierce AK, Sanford JP, Thomas GD, Leonard JS. Long-term evaluation of decontamination of inhalation-therapy equipment and the occurrence of necrotizing pneumonia. N Engl J Med 1970; 292:528-531.
129. Edmondson EB, Reinarz JA, Pierce AK, Sanford JP. Nebulization equipment: a potential source of infection in gram-negative pneumonias. Am J Dis Child 1966;111:357-360.
130. Pierce AK, Sanford JP. Bacterial contamination of aerosols. Arch Intern Med 1973;131:156-159.
131. Brain JD, Valberg PA. Deposition of aerosol in the respiratory tract. Am Rev

Respir Dis 1979;120:1325-1373.
132. Rhame FS, Streifel A, McComb C, Boyle M. Bubbling humidifiers produce microaerosols which can carry bacteria. Infect Control 1986;7:403–407.
133. Deitch EA, Berg R. Bacterial translocation from the gut: a mechanism of infection. J Burn Care Rehab 1987;8:475-482.
134. Fiddian-Green RG, Baker S. Nosoco-mial pneumonia in the critically ill: product of aspiration or translocation? Crit Care Med 1991;19:763-769.
135. Harkness GA, Bentley DW, Roghmann KJ. Risk factors for nosocomial pneumonia in the elderly. Am J Med 1990; 89:457–463.
136. Windsor JA, Hill GL. Risk factors for postoperative pneumonia. Ann Surg 1988;208:209-214.
137. Penn RG, Sanders WE, Sanders CC. Colonization of the oropharynx with gram-negative bacilli: a major antecedent to nosocomial pneumonia. Am J Infect Control 1981;9:25-34.
138. Lepper MH, Kofman S, Blatt N, et al. Effect of eight antibiotics used singly and in combination on the tracheal flora following tracheostomy in poliomyelitis. Antibio Chemother 1954;4:829-833.
139. Klick JM, Du Moulin GC, Hedley-Whyte J, Teres D, Bushnell LS, Feingold DS. Prevention of gram-negative bacillary pneumonia using polymyxin aerosol as prophylaxis. J Clin Invest 1975;55:514-519.
140. Feeley TW, Du Moulin GC, Hedley-Whyte J, Bushnell LS, Gilbert JP, Feingold DS. Aerosol polymyxin and pneumonia in seriously ill patients. N Engl J Med 1975;293:471–475.
141. Sprunt K, Redman W. Evidence suggesting importance of role of interbacterial inhibition in maintaining balance of normal flora. Ann Intern Med 1968;68:579-590.
142. Sprunt K, Leidy G, Redman W. Abnormal colonization of neonates in an ICU: conversion to normal colonization by pharyngeal implantation of alpha hemolytic streptococcus strain 215. Pediatr Res 1980;14:308-313.
143. Klastersky J, Huysmans E, Werts D, Hensgens C, Daneau D. Endotracheally administered gentamicin for the prevention of infections of the respiratory tract in patients with tracheostomy: a double-blind study. Chest 1974;65:650-654.
144. Greenfield S, Teres D, Bushnell LS, Hedley-Whyte J, Feingold DS. Prevention of gram-negative bacillary pneumonia using aerosol polymyxin as prophylaxis. J Clin Invest 1973;52:2935-2940.
145. Daschner F. Stress ulcer prophylaxis and the risk of nosocomial pneumonia in artificially ventilated patients. Eur J Clin Microbiol 1987;6:129-131.
146. Goularte TA, Lichtenberg DA, Craven DE. Gastric colonization in patients receiving antacids and mechanical ventilation: a mechanism for pharyngeal colonization. Am J Infect Control 1986;14:88. Abstract.
147. Prod'hom G, Leuenberger PH, Koerfer J, et al. Nosocomial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated patients receiving antacid, ranitidine, or sucralfate as prophylaxis for stress ulcer. Ann Intern Med 1994;120:653-662.
148. Tryba M. Risk of acute stress bleeding and nosocomial pneumonia in ventilated intensive care unit patients: sucralfate versus antacids. Am J Med 1987;83(suppl 3B):117-124.
149. Tryba M, Mantey-Stiers F. Antibacterial activity of sucralfate in human gastric juice. Am J Med 1987;83(suppl 3B):125-127.
150. Lacroix J, Infante-Rivard C, Jenicek M, Gauthier M. Prophylaxis of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in intensive care units: a meta-analysis. Crit Care Med 1991;19:942-949.
151. Laggner AN, Lenz K, Base W, Druml WC, Schneweiss B, Grimm G. Prevention of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in long-term ventilated patients. Sucralfate versus ranitidine. Am J Med 1989;86(suppl 6A):81-84.
152. Ryan P, Dawson J, Teres D, Navab F. Continuous infusion of cimetidine versus sucralfate: incidence of pneumonia and bleeding compared. Crit Care Med 1990;18(suppl):253. Abstract.
153. Pickworth KK, Falcone RE, Hooge-boom JE, Santanello SA. Occurrence of nosocomial pneumonia in mechanically ventilated trauma patients: a comparison of sucralfate and ranitidine. Crit Care Med 1993;21:1856-1862.
154. Cook DJ, Laine LA, Guyatt GH, Raffin TA. Nosocomial pneumonia and the role of gastric pH. A meta-analysis. Chest 1991;100:7-13.
155. Stoutenbeek CP, Van Saene HKF, Miranda DR, Zandstra DF. The effect of selective decontamination of the digestive tract on colonisation and infection rate in multiple trauma patients. Intensive Care Med 1984;10:185-192.
156. Unertl K, Ruckdeschel G, Selbmann K, et al. Prevention of colonization and respiratory infections in long-term ventilated patients by local antimicrobial prophylaxis. Intensive Care Med 1987;13:106-113.
157. Kerver JH, Rommes JH, Mevissen-Verhage EAE, et al. Prevention of colonization and infection in critically ill patients: a prospective study. Crit Care Med 1988;16:1087-1093.
158. Ledingham IM, Alcock SR, Eastaway AT, McDonald JG, Mckay I, Ramsay G. Triple regimen of selective decontamination of the digestive tract, systemic cefotaxime, and microbiological surveillance for prevention of acquired infection in intensive care. Lancet 1988;1:785-790.
159. Brun-Buisson C, Legrand P, Rauss A, et al. Intestinal decontamination for control of nosocomial multiresistant gram-negative bacilli: study of an outbreak in an intensive care unit. Ann Intern Med 1989;110:873-881.
160. Ulrich C, Harinck-de Weerd JE, Bakker NC, Jacz K, Doombos L, de Ridder VA. Selective decontamination of the digestive tract with norfloxacin in the prevention of ICU-acquired infections: a prospective randomized study. Intensive Care Med 1989;15:424-431.
161. Flaherty J, Nathan C, Kabins SA, Weinstein RA. Pilot trial of selective decontamination for prevention of bacterial infection in an intensive care unit. J Infect Dis 1990;162:1393-1397.
162. Godard J, Guillaume C, Reverdy ME, et al. Intestinal decontamination in a polyvalent ICU. Intensive Care Med 1990;16:307-311.
163. McClelland P, Murray AE, Williams PS, et al. Reducing sepsis in severe combined acute renal and respiratory failure by selective decontamination of the digestive tract. Crit Care Med 1990;18:935-939.
164. Rodriguez-Roldan JM, Altuna-Cuesta A, Lopez A, et al. Prevention of nosocomial lung infection in ventilated patients: use of an antimicrobial pharyngeal nonabsorbable paste. Crit Care Med 1990;180:1239-1242.
165. Tetteroo GWM, Wagenvoort JHT, Casterlein A, Tilanus HW, Ince C, Buining HA. Selective decontamination to reduce gram-negative colonisation and infections after oesophageal resection. Lancet 1990;335:704-707.
166. Aerdts SJA, van Daelen R, Clasener HAL, Festen J, Van Lier HJJ, Vollaard EJ. Antibiotic prophylaxis of respiratory tract infection in mechanically ventilated patients: a prospective, blinded, randomized trial of the effect of a novel regimen. Chest 1991;100:783-791.
167. Blair P, Rowlands BJ, Lowry K, Webb H, Armstrong P, Smilie J. Selective decontamination of the digestive tract: a stratified, randomized, prospective study in a mixed intensive care unit. Surgery 1991;110:303-310.
168. Fox MA, Peterson S, Fabri BM, Van Saene HKF, Willicts T. Selective decontamination of the digestive tract in cardiac surgical patients. Crit Care Med 1991;19:1486-1490.
169. Hautenauer U, Thulig B, Diemer W, et al. Effect of selective flora suppression on colonization, infection, and mortality in critically ill patients: a one-year, prospective consecutive study. Crit Care Med

1991;19:463-473.
170. Pugin J, Auckenthaler R, Lew DP, Suter PM. Oropharyngeal decontamination decreases incidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial. JAMA 1991;265:2704-2710.
171. Vandenbroucke-Grauls CMJE, Vandenbroucke JP. Effect of selective decontamination of the digestive tract on respiratory tract infections and mortality in the intensive care unit. Lancet 1991;338:859-862.
172. Cockerill FR, Muller SM, Anhalt JP, et al. Prevention of infection on critically ill patients by selective decontamination of the digestive tract. Ann Intern Med 1992;117:545-553.
173. Gastinne H, Wolff M, Destour F, Faurisson F, Chevret S. A controlled trial in intensive care units of selective decontamination of the digestive tract with nonabsorbable antibiotics. N Engl J Med 1992;326:594-599.
174. Hammond JMJ, Potgieter PD, Saunders GL, Forder AA. A double blind study of selective decontamination in Intensive Care. Lancet 1992;340:5-9.
175. Rocha LA, Martin MJ, Pita S, et al. Prevention of nosocomial infection in critically ill patients by selective decontamination of the digestive tract. Intensive Care Med 1992;18:398-404.
176. Winter R, Humphreys H, Pick A, MacGowan P, Wilatts SM, Speller DCE. A controlled trial of selective decontamination of the digestive tract in intensive care and its effect on nosocomial infection. J Antimicrob Chemother 1992;30:73-87.
177. Korinek AM, Laisne MJ, Nicolas MH, Raskine S, Deroin V, Sanson-Lepors MJ. Selective decontamination of the digestive tract in neurosurgical intensive care unit patients: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study. Crit Care Med 1993;21:1466-1473.
178. Selective Decontamination of the Digestive Tract Trialists' Collaborative Group. Meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials of selective decontamination of the digestive tract. Br Med J 1993;307:525-532.
179. Ferrer M, Torres A, Gonzalez J, et al. Utility of selective decontamination in mechanically ventilated patients. Ann Intern Med 1994;120:389-395.
180. Nau R, Ruchel R, Mergerian H, Wegener U, Winkelmann T, Prange HW. Emergence of antibiotic-resistant bacteria during selective decontamination of the digestive tract. J Antimicrob Chemother 1990;25:881-883.
181. Heyland D, Bradley C, Mandell LA. Effect of acidified enteral feedings on gastric colonization in the critically ill patient. Crit Care Med 1992;20:1388-1394.
182. Bartlett JG, Gorbach SL. The triple threat of aspiration pneumonia. Chest 1975;68:560-566.
183. Winterbauer RH, Durning RB, Barron E, McFadden MC. Aspirated nasogastric feeding solution detected by glucose strips. Ann Intern Med 1981;95:67-68.
184. Nair P, Jani K, Sanderson PJ. Transfer of oropharyngeal bacteria into the trachea during endotracheal intubation. J Hosp Infect 1986;8:96-103.
185. Treolar DM, Stechmiller J. Pulmonary aspiration of tube-fed patients with artificial airways. Heart Lung 1984;13:667-671.
186. Metheny NA, Eisenberg P, Spies M. Aspiration pneumonia in patients fed through nasoenteral tubes. Heart Lung 1986;15:256-261.
187. Cheadle WG, Vitale GC, Mackie CR, Cuschiere A. Prophylactic postoperative nasogastric decompression. Ann Surg 1985;202:361-366.
188. Ibanez J, Penafiel A, Raurich J. Gastroesophageal reflux and aspiration of gastric contents during nasogastric feeding: the effect of posture. Intensive Care Med 1988;14(suppl 2):296. Abstract.
189. Anderson KR, Norris DJ, Godfrey LB, et al. Bacterial contamination of the tube-feeding formulas. J Parenter Enter Nutr 1984;8:673-678.
190. Schroeder P, Fisher D, Volz M. Microbial contamination of enteral feeding solutions in a community hospital. J Parent Enter Nutr 1983;7:459- 461.
191. Thurn J, Crossley K, Gerdts A, et al. Enteral hyperalimentation as a source of nosocomial infection. J Hosp Infect 1990;15:203-217.
192. Civil ID, Schwab CW. The effect of enteral feeding on gastric pH. Am Surg 1987;12:688-690.
193. Lee B, Chang RWS, Jacobs S. Intermittent nasogastric feeding: a simple and effective method to reduce pneumonia among ventilated ICU patients. Clin Intensive Care 1990;1:100- 102.
194. Torres A, Serra-Battles J, Ros E, et al. Pulmonary aspiration of gastric contents in patients receiving mechanical ventilation: the effect of body position. Ann Intern Med 1992;116:540-542.
195. Wynne JW, Modell JH. Respiratory aspiration of stomach contents. Ann Intern Med 1977;87:466-474.
196. Betcher E, Seltzer M, Slocum M, et al. Complications occurring during enteral nutritional support: a prospective study. J Parent Enter Nutr 1983;7:546-552.
197. Bernard M, Forlaw L. Complications and their prevention. In: Rombeau J, Caldwell M, eds. Clinical Nutrition. Vol I: Enteral and Tube Feeding. Philadelphia, PA: WB Saunders Co, 1984:534.
198. Dohbie RP, Hoffmeister JA. Continuous pump-tube enteric hyperalimentation. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1976;143:273-276.
199. Strong RM, Condon SC, Solinger MR, et al. Equal aspiration rates from postpylorus and intragastric-placed feeding tubes: a randomized, prospective study. J Parent Enter Nutr 1992;16:59-63.
200. Montecalvo M, Steger KA, Farber HW, et al. Nutritional outcome and pneumonia in critical care patients randomized to gastric versus jejunal tube feedings. Crit Care Med 1992;20:1377-1387.
201. Sanderson PJ. Colonisation of the trachea in ventilated patients. What is the bacterial pathway? J Hosp Infect 1983;4:15-18.
202. Sottile FD, Marrie TJ, Prough DS, et al. Nosocomial pulmonary infection: possible etiologic significance of bacterial adhesion to endotracheal tubes. Crit Care Med 1986;14:265-270.
203. Inglis TJJ, Jones JG, Newman SP. Gas-liquid interaction with tracheal tube biofilm: a means of bacterial colonisation of the lung. Br J Hosp Med 1989;42: 141-142.
204. Inglis TJJ, Millar MR, Jones JG, Robinson DA. Tracheal tube biofilm as a source of bacterial colonisation of the lung. J Clin Microbiol 1989;27:2014-2018.
205. McCrae W, Wallace P. Aspiration around high volume, low pressure endotracheal cuff. Br Med J 1981;2:1220-1221.
206. Mahul Ph, Auboyer C, Jospe R, et al. Prevention of nosocomial pneumonia in intubated patients: respective role of mechanical subglottic drainage and stress ulcer prophylaxis. Intensive Care Med 1992;18:20-25.
207. Weinstein RA, Nathan C, Gruensfelder R. Endemic aminoglycoside resistance in gram-negative bacilli: epidemiology and mechanisms. J Infect Dis 1980;141: 338-345.
208. Maki DG. Control of colonization and transmission of pathogenic bacteria in the hospital. Ann Intern Med 1979;89:777-780.
209. Larson E. Persistent carriage of gram-negative bacteria on hands. Am J Infect Control 1981;9:112-119.
210. Adams BG, Marrie TJ. Hand carriage of gram-negative rods may not be transient. J Hyg 1982;89:33-46.
211. Daschner FD. The transmission of infections in hospitals by staff carriers, methods of prevention and control. Infect Control 1985;6:97-98.
212. Adams BG, Marrie TJ. Hand carriage of aerobic gram-negative rods by health care personnel. J Hyg 1982;89:23-31.
213. Marples RR, Towers AG. A laboratory model for the investigation of contact transfer of micro-organisms. J Hyg

1979;82:237-248.
214. Casewell M, Phillips I. Hands as a route of transmission of *Klebsiella* species. Br Med J 1977;2:1315-1317.
215. Gorman LJ, Sanai L, Notman AW, Grant IS, Masterton RG. Cross infection in an intensive care unit by *Klebsiella pneumoniae* from ventilator condensate. J Hosp Infect 1993;23:27-34.
216. Cadwallader HL, Bradley CR, Ayliffe GAJ. Bacterial contamination and frequency of changing ventilator circuitry. J Hosp Infect 1990;15:65-72.
217. Mortimer EA, Lipsitz PJ, Wolinsky E, et al. Transmission of staphylococci between newborns. Am J Dis Child 1962; 104:289-295.
218. Lowbury EJL, Lilly HA, Bull JP. Disinfection of hands: removal of transient organisms. Br Med J 1964;2:230- 233.
219. Sprunt K, Redman W, Leidy G. Antibacterial effectiveness of routine handwashing. Pediatrics 1973;52:264-271.
220. Steere AC, Mallison GF. Handwashing practices for the prevention of nosocomial infections. Ann Intern Med 1975; 83:683-690.
221. Albert RK, Condie F. Hand-washing patterns in medical intensive care units. N Engl J Med 1981;304:146-147.
222. Doebbeling BN, Stanley GL, Sheetz CT, et al. Comparative efficacy of alternative hand-washing agents in reducing nosocomial infections in intensive care units. N Engl J Med 1992;327:88-93.
223. Simmons B, Bryant J, Neiman K, Spencer L, Arheart K. The role of handwashing in prevention of endemic intensive care unit infections. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1990;11:589- 594.
224. Garner JS, HICPAC. Draft guideline for isolation precautions in hospitals. Federal Register 1994;59(part 5):55552-55570.
225. Garner JS, Simmons BP. Guideline for handwashing and environmental control. Infect Control 1986;7:231-242.
226. LeClair JM, Freeman J, Sullivan BF, Crowley CM, Goldmann DA. Prevention of nosocomial respiratory syncytial virus infections through compliance with glove and gown isolation precautions. N Engl J Med 1987;317:329-333.
227. Klein BS, Perloff WH, Maki DG, et al. Reduction of nosocomial infection during pediatric intensive care by protective isolation. N Engl J Med 1989;320:1714-1721.
228. Doebbeling BN, Pfaller MA, Houston AK, Wenzel RP. Removal of nosocomial pathogens from the contaminated glove. Ann Intern Med 1988;109:394-398.
229. Maki DG, McCormick RD, Zilz MA, et al. An MRSA outbreak in a SICU during universal precautions: new epidemiology for nosocomial MRSA; downside for universal precautions (UPs). Abstracts of the 30th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy 1990;165. Abstract.
230. Patterson JE, Vecchio J, Pantelick EL, et al. Association of contaminated gloves with transmission of *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* var. *anitratus* in an intensive care unit. Am J Med 1991;91:479-483.
231. Korniewicz DM, Laughon BE, Cyr WH, Lytle CD, Larson E. Leakage of virus through used vinyl and latex examination gloves. J Clin Microbiol 1990;28:787-788.
232. Pandit SK, Mehta S, Agarwal SC. Risk of cross-infection from inhalation anesthetic equipment. Br J Anaesth 1967; 39:838-844.
233. Cunha BA, Klimek JJ, Gracewski J, McLaughlin JC, Quintiliani R. A common source outbreak of *Acinetobacter* pulmonary infection traced to Wright respirometers. Postgrad Med J 1980; 56:169-172.
234. Phillips J. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* respiratory tract infections in patients receiving mechanical ventilation. J Hyg 1967;65:229-235.
235. Wheeler PW, Lancaster D, Kaiser AB. Bronchopulmonary cross-colonization and infection related to mycobacterial contamination of suction valves of bronchoscopes. J Infect Dis 1989;159:954-958.
236. Fraser VJ, Jones M, Murray PR, Medoff F, Zhang Y, Wallace RJ. Contamination of flexible fiberoptic bronchoscopes with *Mycobacterium chelonae* linked to an automated bronchoscope disinfection machine. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992;145:853-855.
237. Grieble HG, Colton FR, Thomas MS, et al. Fine particle humidifiers: source of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* infections in a respiratory-disease unit. N Engl J Med 1970:282:531-533.
238. Mertz JJ, Scharer L, McClement JH. A hospital outbreak of *Klebsiella* pneumonia from inhalation therapy with contaminated aerosols. Am Rev Respir Dis 1967;95:454-460.
239. Ringrose RE, McKown B, Felton FG, Barclay BO, Muchmore HG, Rhoades ER. A hospital outbreak of *Serratia marcescens* associated with ultrasonic nebulizers. Ann Intern Med 1968;69:719-729.
240. Rhoades ER, Ringrose R, Mohr JA, Brooks L, McKown BA, Felton F. Contamination of ultrasonic nebulization equipment with gram negative bacteria. Arch Intern Med 1971;127:228-232.
241. Arnow PM, Chou T, Weil D, Shapiro EN, Kretzschmar C. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease caused by aerosolized tap water from respiratory devices. J Infect Dis 1982; 146:460-467.
242. Craven DE, Lichtenberg DA, Goularte TA, Make BJ, McCabe WR. Contaminated medication nebulizers in mechanical ventilator circuits. Am J Med 1984;77:834-838.
243. Babington PCB, Baker AB, Johnson HH. Retrograde spread of organisms from ventilator to patient via the expiratory limb. Lancet 1971;1:61-63.
244. Smith JR, Howland WS. Endotracheal tube as a source of infection. JAMA 1959;169:343-345.
245. Irwin RS, Demers RR, Pratter MR. An outbreak of *Acinetobacter* infection associated with the use of a ventilator spirometer. Respir Care 1980;25:232-237.
246. Gough J, Kraak WAG, Anderson EC, Nichols WW, Slack MPE, McGhie D. Cross-infection by non-encapsulated *Haemophilus influenzae*. Lancet 1990; 336:159-160.
247. Dyer ED, Peterson DE. How far do bacteria travel from the exhalation valve of IPPB equipment? Anesth Analg 1972; 51:516-519.
248. Hovig B. Lower respiratory tract infections associated with respiratory therapy and anesthesia equipment. J Hosp Infect 1981;2:301-315.
249. Carson LA, Favero MS, Bond WW, Petersen NJ. Morphological, biochemical, and growth characteristics of *Pseudomonas cepacia* from distilled water. Appl Microbiol 1973;25:476-483.
250. Favero MS, et al. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*: growth in distilled water from hospitals. Science 1971;173:836-838.
251. Carson LA, Petersen NJ, Favero MS, Aguero SM. Growth characteristics of atypical mycobacteria in water and their comparative resistance to disinfectants. Appl Environ Microbiol 1978;36:839-846.
252. Zuravleff JJ, Yu VL, Shonnard JW, Best M. *Legionella pneumophila* contamination of a hospital humidifier: demonstration of aerosol transmission and subsequent subclinical infection in exposed guinea pigs. Am Rev Respir Dis 1983;128:657-661.
253. Gorman GW, Yu VL, Brown A. Isolation of Pittsburgh pneumonia agent from nebulizers used in respiratory therapy. Ann Intern Med 1980;93:572-573.
254. Habeeb AFSA, Hiramoto R. Reaction of proteins with glutaraldehyde. Arch Biochem 1968;126:16.
255. Fierer J, Taylor PM, Gezon HM. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* epidemic traced to delivery-room resuscitators. N Engl J Med 1967;276:991-996.
256. Berthelot P, Grattard F, Mahul P, et al. Ventilator temperature sensors: an unusual source of *Pseudomonas cepacia* in nosocomial infection. J Hosp Infect 1993;25:33-43.

257. Weems JJ. Nosocomial outbreak of *Pseudomonas cepacia* associated with contamination of reusable electronic ventilator temperature probes. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1993;14:583-586.
258. Mastro TD, Fields BS, Breiman RF, Campbell J, Plikaytis BD, Spika JS. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease and use of medication nebulizers. J Infect Dis 1991;163:667-670.
259. Cefai C, Richards J, Gould FK, McPeake P. An outbreak of *Acineto-bacter* respiratory tract infection resulting from incomplete disinfection of ventilatory equipment. J Hosp Infect 1990;15:177-182.
260. Spaulding EH. Chemical sterilization of surgical instruments. Surg Gynecol Obstet 1939;69:738-744.
261. Snow JC, Mangiaracine AB, Anderson ML. Sterilization of anesthesia equipment with ethylene oxide. N Engl J Med 1962;266:443-445.
262. Roberts FJ, Cockcroft WH, Johnson HE. A hot water disinifection method for inhalation therapy equipment. Can Med Assoc J 1969;101:30-32.
263. Nelson EJ, Ryan KJ. A new use for pasteurization: disinfection of inhalation therapy equipment. Respir Care 1971;16:97-103.
264. Craig DB, Cowan SA, Forsyth W, Parker SE. Disinfection of anesthesia equipment by a mechanical pasteurization method. Anaesth Soc J 1975;22:219-223.
265. Smith MD, Box T, Pocklington ML, Kelsey MC. An evaluation of the Hamo LS-76 washing, drying and disinfecting machine for anaesthetic equipment. J Hosp Infect 1992;22:149-157.
266. Favero MS. Principles of sterilization and disinfection. Anesth Clin N Am 1989; 7:941-949.
267. Favero MS, Bond WW. Clinical disinfection of medical and surgical materials. In: Block S, ed. Disinfection, Sterilization, and Preservation. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lea and Febiger, 1991:617-641.
268. Haselhuhn DH, Brason FW, Borick PM. "In-use study" of buffered glutaraldehyde for cold sterilization of anesthesia equipment. Anesth Analg 1967;46:468-474.
269. Moffet HL, Williams T. Bacteria recovered from distilled water and inhalation therapy equipment. Am J Dis Child 1967;114:7-12.
270. Highsmith AK, Emori TG, Aguero SM, Favero MS, Hughes JM. Heterotrophic bacteria isolated from hospital water system. International Symposium on Water-Related Health Issues, 1986:181-187.
271. Alary MA, Joly JR. Factors contributing to the contamination of hospital water distribution systems by Legionellae. J Infect Dis 1992;165:565-569.
272. Olson BH, Nagy LA. Microbiology of potable water. In: Laskin AI, ed. Advances in Applied Microbiology. Orlando, FL: Academic Press Inc; 1984:73-132.
273. Rutala WA, Clontz EP, Weber DJ, Hoffman KK. Disinfection practices for endoscopes and other semicritical items. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1991; 12:282-288.
274. Gerding DN, Peterson LR, Vennes JA. Cleaning and disinfection of fiberoptic endoscopes: evaluation of glutaraldehyde exposure time and forced-air drying. Gastroenterology 1982;83:613-618.
275. Alfa MJ, Sitter DL. In-hospital evaluation of contamination of duodenoscopes: a quantitative assessment of the effect of drying. J Hosp Infect 1991;19:89-98.
276. Ansari SA, Springhope VS, Sattar SA, Tostowaryk W, Wells GA. Comparison of cloth, paper, and warm air drying in eliminating viruses and bacteria from washed hands. Am J Infect Control 1991; 19:243-249.
277. Martin MA, Reichelderfer M, Association for Practitioners in Infection Control. 1991, 1992, and 1993 APIC Guidelines Committee. APIC guideline for infection prevention and control in flexible endoscopy. Am J Infect Control 1994; 22:19-38.
278. Holdcroft A, Lumley J, Gaya H, et al. Why disinfect ventilators? Lancet 1973; 1:240-242.
279. Bishop C, Roper WAG, Williams SR. The use of an absolute filter to sterilize the inspiratory air during intermittent positive pressure respiration. Br J Anaesth 1963; 35:32-34.
280. Hellewell J. The Williams bacterial filter, use in the intensive care unit. Anaesthesia 1967;22:497-503.
281. Buckley PM. Increase in resistance of in-line breathing filters in humidified air. Br J Anaesth 1984;56:637-643.
282. Christopher KL, Saravolatz LD, Bush TL. Cross-infection: a study using a canine model for pneumonia. Am Rev Respir Dis 1983;128:271-275.
283. Goularte TA, Manning M, Craven DE. Bacterial colonization in humidifying cascade reservoirs after 24 and 48 hours of continuous mechanical ventilation. Infect Control 1987;8:200-203.
284. Vesley D, Anderson J, Halbert MM, Wyman L. Bacterial output from three respiratory therapy humidifying devices. Respir Care 1979;24:228-234.
285. Boyce JM, White RL, Spruill EY, Wall M. Cost-effective application of the Centers for Disease Control guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Am J Infect Control 1985;13:228-232.
286. Craven DE, Goularte TA, Make BA. Contaminated condensate in mechanical ventilator circuits—risk factor for nosocomial pneumonia? Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;129:625-628.
287. Lareau SC, Ryan KJ, Diener CF. The relationship between frequency of ventilator circuit changes and infectious hazard. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;118:493-496.
288. Craven DE, Connolly MG, Lichtenberg DA, Primeau PJ, McCabe WR. Contamination of mechanical ventilators with tubing changes every 24 or 48 hours. N Engl J Med 1982;306:1505-1509.
289. Dreyfuss D, Djedaini K, Weber P, et al. Prospective study of nosocomial pneumonia and of patient and circuit colonization during mechanical ventilation with circuit changes every 48 hours vs no change. Am Rev Respir Dis 1991; 143:738-743.
290. Miyao H, Hirokawa T, Miyasaka K, Kawazoe T. Relative humidity, not absolute humidity, is of great importance when using a humidifier with a heating wire. Crit Care Med 1992;20:674-679.
291. MacIntyre NR, Anderson HR, Silver RM. Pulmonary function in mechanically-ventilated patients using 24-hour use of a hygroscopic condenser humidifier. Chest 1983;84:560-564.
292. Make BJ, Craven DE, O'Donnell C. Clinical and bacteriologic comparison of hygroscopic and cascade humidifiers in ventilated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987;135:A212. Abstract.
293. Suzukawa M, Usuda Y, Numata K. The effects on sputum characteristics of combining an unheated humidifier with a heat-moisture exchanging filter. Respir Care 1989;34:976-984.
294. Hay R, Millar WC. Efficacy of a new hygroscopic condenser humidifier. Crit Care Med 1982;10:49-51.
295. Mebius C. A comparative study of disposable humidifiers. Acta Anaesth Scand 1983;27:403-409.
296. Shelly MP, Bethune DW, Latimer RD. A comparison of five heat and moisture exchangers. Anaesthesia 1986;41:527-532.
297. Branson RD, Hurst JM. Laboratory evaluation of moisture output of seven airway heat and moisture exchangers. Respir Care 1987;32:741-747.
298. Branson RD, Campbell RS, Davis KJ, Johnson DJ, Porombka D. Humidifi-cation in the intensive care unit. Prospective study of a new protocol utilizing heated humidification and a hygroscopic condenser humidifier. Chest 1993;104:1800-1805.
299. Roustan JP, Kienlen J, Aubas P, Aubas S, du Cailar J. Comparison of hydrophobic heat and moisture exchanger with heated humidifier during prolonged mechanical

ventilation. Intensive Care Med 1992; 18:97-100.
300. Misset B, Escudier B, Rivara D, Leclercq B, Nitenberg G. Heat and moisture exchanger vs heated humidifier during long-term mechanical ventilation: a prospective randomized study. Chest 1991;100:160-163.
301. Gallagher J, Strangeways JE, Allt- Graham J. Contamination control in long term ventilation: a clinical study using heat and moisture exchanging filter. Anaesthesia 1987;42:476-481.
302. Martin C, Perrin G, Gevaudan MJ, Saux P, Gouin F. Heat and moisture exchangers and vaporizing humidifiers in the intensive care unit. Chest 1990;97:144-149.
303. Kaan JA, Simoons-Smit AM, MacLaren DM. Another source of aerosol causing nosocomial Legionnaire's disease. J Infect 1985;11:145-148.
304. Sanders CV, Luby JP, Johanson WG, Barnett JA, Sanford JP. *Serratia marcescens* infections from inhalation therapy medications: nosocomial outbreak. Ann Intern Med 1970;73:15-21.
305. Decker MD, Lancaster AD, Latham RH, Bunce CP, Becker NR, Burns K. Influence of closed suctioning system on ventilator-associated pneumonias. Abstracts of the Third Annual Meeting of the Society for Hospital Epidemiology of America, 1993:A6. Abstract.
306. Deppe SA, Kelly JW, Thoi LL, et al. Incidence of colonization, nosocomial pneumonia, and mortality in critically ill patients using Trach Care closed-suction system versus open-suction system: prospective, randomized study. Crit Care Med 1990;18:1389-1393.
307. Ritz R, Scott LR, Coyle MB, Pierson DJ. Contamination of a multiple-use suction catheter in a closed-circuit system compared to contamination of a disposable, single-use suction catheter. Respir Care 1986;31:1087-1091.
308. Johnson KL, Kearney PA, Johnson SB, Niblett JB, Mcmillan NL, McClain RE. Closed versus open endotracheal suctioning: costs and physiologic consequences. Crit Care Med 1994;22: 658-666.
309. Cobley M, Atkins M, Jones FL. Environmental contamination during tracheal suction. A comparison of disposable conventional catheters with a multiple-use closed system device. Anaesthesia 1991; 46:957-961.
310. Mayhall CCG. The Trach Care closed tracheal suction system: a new medical device to permit tracheal suctioning without interruption of ventilatory assistance. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1988;9:125-126.
311. Stone JW, Das BC. Investigation of an outbreak of infection with *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* in a special care baby unit. J Hosp Infect 1986;7:42-48.
312. Thompson AC, Wilder BJ, Powner DJ. Bedside resuscitation bags: a source of bacterial contamination. Infect Control 1985;6:231-232.
313. Weber DJ, Wilson MB, Rutala WA, Thomann CA. Manual ventilation bags as a source for bacterial colonization of intubated patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1990;142:892-894.
314. Olds JW, Kisch AL, Eberle BS, Wilson JN. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* respiratory tract infection acquired from a contaminated anesthesia machine. Am Rev Respir Dis 1972;105:628-632.
315. Albrecht WH, Dryden GE. Five-year experience with development of an individually clean anesthesia system. Anesth Analg 1974;52:24-28.
316. Du Moulin GC, Sauberman AJ. The anesthesia machine and circle system are not likely to be sources of bacterial contamination. Anesthesiology 1977;47:353-358.
317. American Association of Nurse Anesthetists. Infection Control Guide. 2nd ed. Chicago, IL: American Association of Nurse Anesthetists, 1993:12-28.
318. American Society for Anesthesiologists. Prevention of nosocomial infections in patients. In: Recommendations for Infection Control for the Practice of Anesthesiology. Park Ridge, IL: American Society of Anesthesiologists;1991:1-9.
319. Bengtson JP, Brandberg A, Brinkhoff B, Sonander H, Stenqvist O. Low-flow anesthesia does not increase the risk of microbial contamination through the circle absorber system. Acta Anaesth Scand 1989;33:89-92.
320. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Draft guidelines for preventing the transmission of tuberculosis in health-care facilities. Federal Register 1993;58:52810-52854.
321. Parmley JB, Tahir AH, Dascomb HE, Adriani J. Disposable versus reusable rebreathing circuits: advantages, disadvantages, hazards and bacteriologic studies. Anesth Analg 1972;51:888- 894.
322. Shiotani GM, Nicholes P, Ballinger CM, et al. Prevention of contamination of the circle system and ventilators with a new disposable filter. Anesth Analg 1971;50:844-855.
323. Luttropp HH, Berntman L. Bacterial filters protect anaesthetic equipment in a low-flow system. Anaesthesia 1993;48:520-523.
324. Garibaldi RA, Britt MR, Webster C, Pace NL. Failure of bacterial filters to reduce the incidence of pneumonia after inhalation anesthesia. Anesthesiology 1981;54: 364-368.
325. Feeley TW, Hamilton WK, Xavier B, Moyers J. Sterile anesthesia breathing circuits do not prevent postoperative pulmonary infection. Anesthesiology 1981;54:369-372.
326. Berry AJ, Nolte FS. An alternative strategy for infection control of anesthesia breathing circuits: a laboratory assessment of the Pall HME filter. Anesth Analg 1991;72: 651-655.
327. Rutala DR, Rutala WA, Weber DJ, Thomann CA. Infection risks associated with spirometry. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1991;12:89-92.
328. Hazaleus RE, Cole J, Berdischewsky M. Tuberculin skin test conversion from exposure to contaminated pulmonary function testing apparatus. Respir Care 1980;26: 53-55.
329. Kirk YL, Kendall K, Ashworth HA, Hunter PR. Laboratory evaluation of a filter for the control of cross-infection during pulmonary function testing. J Hosp Infect 1992; 20:193-198.
330. Leeming JP, Kendrick AH, Pryce- Roberts D, Smith DR, Smith EC. Use of filters for the control of cross-infection during pulmonary function testing. J Hosp Infect 1992;20:245-246. Letter.
331. Djokovic JL, Hedley-White J. Prediction of outcome of surgery and anesthesia in patients over 80. JAMA 1979;242:2301-2306.
332. Tisi GM. Preoperative evaluation of pulmonary function: validity, indications and benefits. Am Rev Respir Dis 1979;119: 293-310.
333. Gould AB. Effect of obesity in respiratory complications following general anesthesia. Anesth Analg 1962;41:448- 452.
334. Cain HD, Stevens PM. Preoperative pulmonary function and complications after cardiovascular surgery. Chest 1979;76: 130-135.
335. Wightman JAK. A prospective study of the incidence of postoperative pulmonary complications. Br J Surg 1968;55:85-91.
336. Culver GA, Makel HP, Beecher HK. Frequency of aspiration of gastric contents by lungs during anesthesia and surgery. Ann Surg 1961;133:289-292.
337. Rigg JDA. Pulmonary atelectasis after anaesthesia: pathophysiology and management. Anaesth Soc J 1981;28:306-311.
338. Simonneau G, Vivien A, Sartene R, et al. Diaphragm dysfunction induced by upper abdominal surgery. Am Rev Respir Dis 1983;128:899-903.
339. Bartlett RH, Gazzaniga AB, Geraghty TR. Respiratory maneuvers to prevent postoperative pulmonary complications. JAMA 1973;234:1017-1021.
340. Ali J, Serette C, Wood LDM, et al. Effect of

postoperative intermittent positive pressure breathing on lung function. Chest 1984;85: 192-196.

341. Pontoppidan H. Mechanical aids to lung expansion in non-intubated surgical patients. Am Rev Respir Dis 1980;122 (suppl):109-119.
342. Morran CG, Finlay IG, Mithieson M, McKay AJ, Wilson N, McArdle CS. Randomized controlled trial of physiotherapy for postoperative pulmonary complications. Br J Anaesth 1983;55:1113-1116.
343. Castillo R, Haas A. Chest physical therapy: comparative efficacy of preoperative and postoperative in the elderly. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 1985;66:376-379.
344. Cordier P, Squifflet JP, Carlier M, Alexandre GPJ. Postoperative continuous positive airway pressure helps to prevent pulmonary infection after human renal transplantation. Transplant Proc 1984; 16:1337-1339.
345. Vraciu JK. Effectiveness of breathing exercises in preventing pulmonary complications following open heart surgery. Phys Ther 1977;57:1367-1371.
346. Celli BR, Rodriguez KS, Snider GL. A controlled trial of intermittent positive pressure breathing, incentive spirometry, and deep breathing exercises in preventing pulmonary complications after abdominal surgery. Am Rev Respir Dis 1984;130 (4):12-15.
347. Schwieger I, Gamulin ZB, Forster A, Meyer P, Gemperle MB, Suter PM. Absence of benefit of incentive spirometry in low-risk patients undergoing elective cholecystectomy: a controlled randomized study. Chest 1986;89:652-656.
348. Roukema JA, Carol EJ, Prins JG. The prevention of pulmonary complications after upper abdominal surgery in patients with noncompromised pulmonary status. Arch Surg 1988;123:30-34.
349. Stock MC, Downs JB, Gauer PK, Alster JM, Imrey PB. Prevention of postoperative pulmonary complications with CPAP, incentive spirometry, and conservative therapy. Chest 1985;87:151-157.
350. Stein M, Cassara EL. Preoperative pulmonary evaluation and therapy for surgery patients. JAMA 1970;211:787- 790.
351. Yeager MP, Glass DD, Neff RK, Brinck-Johnsen T. Epidural anesthesia and analgesia in high-risk surgical patients. Anesthesiology 1987;66:729-736.
352. Rutter PC, Murphy D, Dudley HAF. Morphine: controlled trial of different methods of administration for postoperative pain. Br Med J 1980;280:12-13.
353. Wasylak TJC, Abbott FV, English MJM, Jeans ME. Reduction of postoperative morbidity following patient-controlled morphine. Can J Anaesth 1990;37:726-731.
354. Egbert AM, Leland HP, Short LM, Burnett ML. Randomized trial of postoperative patient-controlled analgesia vs. intramuscular narcotics in frail elderly men. Arch Intern Med 1990;150:1897-1903.
355. Lange MP, Dahn MS, Jacobs LA. Patient-controlled analgesia versus intermittent analgesia dosing. Heart Lung 1988;17:495-498.
356. Addison NV, Brear FA, Budd K, Whitaker M. Epidural analgesia following cholecystectomy. Br J Surg 1974;61:850-852.
357. Rawal N, Shostrand U, Christofferson E, Dahlstrom B, Arvill A, Rydman H. Comparison of intramuscular and epidural morphine for postoperative analgesia in the grossly obese: influence on postoperative ambulation and pulmonary function. Anesth Analg 1984;63:583-592.
358. Cushieri RJ, Morran CG, Howie JC, McArtle CS. Postoperative pain and pulmonary complications: comparison of three analgesic regimens. Br J Surg 1985; 72:495-498.
359. Gould FK, Magee JG, Ingham HR. A hospital outbreak of antibiotic-resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Infect 1987;15:77-79.
360. Moore EP, Williams EW. Hospital transmission of multiply antibiotic resistant *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. J Infect 1988;16:199-208.
361. Alvarez S, Shell CG, Wooley TW, et al. Nosocomial infections in long-term care facilities. J Gerontol 1992;43:M9-M12.
362. Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine. MMWR 1989;38:64-76.
363. Shapiro ED, Clemens JD. A controlled evaluation of the protective efficacy of pneumococcal vaccine for patients at high risk of serious pneumococcal infections. Ann Intern Med 1984;101: 325-330.
364. Williams WW, Hickson MA, Kane MA, Kendal AP, Spika JS, Hinman AR. Immunization policies and vaccine coverage among adults: the risk for missed opportunities. Ann Intern Med 1988;108: 616-625.
365. Langer M, Cigada M, Mandelli M, et al. Early onset pneumonia: a multicenter study in intensive care units. Intensive Care Med 1987;13:342-346.
366. Mandelli M, Mosconi P, Langer M, Cigada M. Prevention of pneumonia in an intensive care unit: a randomized multicenter clinical trial. Crit Care Med 1989;17:501-505.
367. Petersdorf RG, Curtin JA, Hoeprich PD, Peeler RN, Bennet LL. A study of antibiotic prophylaxis in unconscious patients. N Engl J Med 1957;257:1001-1009.
368. Tillotson JR, Finland M. Bacterial colonization and clinical superinfection of the respiratory tract complicating antibiotic treatment of pneumonia. J Infect Dis 1969;119:597-624.
369. Sen P, Kapila P, Chmel H, Armstrong DA, Louria DB. Superinfection: another look. Am J Med 1982;73:706-718.
370. Nord CE, Kager L, Hemdahl A. Impact of antimicrobial agents on the gastrointestinal microflora and the risk of infections. Am J Med 1984;80:99-106.
371. Goodpasture HC, Romig DA, Voth DW. A prospective study of tracheobronchial bacterial flora in acute brain-injured patients with and without antibiotic prophylaxis. J Neurosurg 1977;47:228-235.
372. Kelley RE, Vibulsresth S, Bell L, Duncan RC. Evaluation of kinetic therapy in the prevention of complications of prolonged bed rest secondary to stroke. Stroke 1987; 18:638-642.
373. Gentilello L, Thompson DA, Tonnesen AS, et al. Effect of a rotating bed on the incidence of pulmonary complications in critically ill patients. Crit Care Med 1988; 16:783-786.
374. Summer WR, Curry P, Haponik EF, Nelson S, Elston R. Continuous mechanical turning of intensive care unit patients shortens length of stay in some diagnostic-related groups. J Crit Care 1989;4:45-53.
375. Fink MP, Helsmoortel CM, Stein KL, Lee PC, Cohn SM. The efficacy of an oscillating bed in the prevention of lower respiratory tract infection in critically ill victims of blunt trauma: a prospective study. Chest 1990;97:132-137.
376. Nelson LD, Choi SC. Kinetic therapy in critically ill trauma patients. Clin Intensive Care 1992;37:248-252.
377. deBoisblanc BP, Castro M, Everret B, Grender J, Walker CD, Summer WB. Effect of air-supported, continuous, postural oscillation on the risk of early ICU pneumonia in nontraumatic critical illness. Chest 1993;103:1543-1547.
378. Zack MB, Pontoppidan H, Kazemi H. The effect of lateral positions on gas exchange in pulmonary disease: a prospective evaluation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1974;110:49-54.
379. Wong JW, Keens TG, Wannamaker EM, Crozier DN, Levison H, Aspin N. The effects of gravity on tracheal mucous transport rates in normal subjects and patients with cystic fibrosis. Pediatrics 1977; 60:146-152.
380. Blake JR. On the movement of mucous in the lung. J Biochem 1975;8:175-190.
381. Becker DM, Gonzalez M, Gentili A, Eismont F, Green BA. Prevention of deep venous thrombosis in patients with acute spinal cord injuries: use of rotating treatment tables. Neurosurgery 1987;20:

675-677.
382. Hoge CW, Breiman RF. Advances in the epidemiology and control of *Legionella* infections. Epidemiol Rev 1991;13:329-340.
383. Joseph CA, Watson JM, Harrison TG, Bartlett CLR. Nosocomial Legion-naires' disease in England and Wales, 1980-92. Epidemiol Infect 1994;112:329-345.
384. Brennen C, Vickers JP, Yu VL, Puntereri A, Yee YC. Discovery of occult *Legionella* pneumonia in a long-stay hospital: results of prospective serologic survey. Br Med J 1987;295:306-307.
385. Marrie TJ, MacDonald S, Clarke K, Haldane D. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease: lessons from a four-year prospective study. Am J Infect Control 1991;19:79-85.
386. Muder RR, Yu VL, McClure JK, Kroboth FJ, Kominos SD, Lumish RN. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease uncovered in a prospective pneumonia study: implications for underdiagnosis. JAMA 1983;249: 3184-3188.
387. Fliermans CD, Cherry WB, Orrison LH, Smith SJ, Tison DL, Pope DH. Ecologic distribution of *Legionella pneumophila*. Appl Environ Microbiol 1981;41:9-16.
388. Morris GK, Patton CM, Feeley JC, et al. Isolation of the Legionnaires' disease bacterium from environmental samples. Ann Intern Med 1979;90:664-666.
389. Hsu SC, Martin R, Wentworth BB. Isolation of Legionella species from drinking water. Appl Environ Microbiol 1984; 48:830-832.
390. Tison DL, Seidler RJ. Legionella incidence and density in potable drinking water. Appl Environ Microbiol 1983;45:337-339.
391. Muraca P, Stout JE, Yu VL. Comparative assessment of chlorine, heat, ozone, and UV light for killing *Legionella pneumophila* within a model plumbing system. Appl Environ Microbiol 1987;53:447-453.
392. Farrell ID, Barker JE, Miles EP, Hutchinson JCP. A field study of the survival of *Legionella pneumophila* in a hospital hot-water system. Epidemiol Infect 1990;104:381-387.
393. Stout JE, Yu VL, Best MG. Ecology of *Legionella pneumophila* within water distribution systems. Appl Environ Microbiol 1985;49:221-228.
394. Sanden GN, Fields BS, Barbaree JM, et al. Viability of *Legionella pneumophila* in chlorine-free water at elevated temperatures. Curr Microbiol 1989;18:61-65.
395. Schulze-Robbecke R, Rodder M, Exner M. Multiplication and killing temperatures of naturally occurring legionellae. Zbl Bakt Hyg B 1987;184:495-500.
396. Habicht W, Muller HE. Occurrence and parameters of frequency of Legionella in warm water systems of hospitals and hotels in Lower Saxony. Zbl Bakt Hyg B 1988;186:79-88.
397. Ciesielski CA, Blaser MJ, Wang WL. Role of stagnation and obstruction of water flow in isolation of *Legionella pneumophila* from hospital plumbing. Appl Environ Microbiol 1984;48:984-987.
398. Rowbotham TJ. Preliminary report on the pathogenicity of *Legionella pneumophila* for freshwater and soil amoebae. J Clin Pathol 1980;33:1179-1183.
399. Fields BS, Sanden GN, Barbaree JM, et al. Intracellular multiplication of *Legionella pneumophila* in amoebae isolated from hospital hot water tanks. Curr Microbiol 1989;18:131-137.
400. Le Saux NM, Sekla L, McLeod J, et al. Epidemic of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease in renal transplant recipients: a case-control and environmental study. Can Med Assoc J 1989;140:1047-1053.
401. Berendt RF, Young HW, Allen RG, Knutsen GL. Dose-response of guinea pigs experimentally infected with aerosols of *Legionella pneumophila*. J Infect Dis 1980;141:186-192.
402. Marston BJ, Lipman HB, Breiman RF. Surveillance for Legionnaires' disease in the eighties: risk factors for morbidity and mortality related to infection with Legionella. Arch Intern Med 1994. In press.
403. Kirby BD, Snyder KM, Meyer RD, et al. Legionnaires' disease. Report of 65 nosocomially acquired cases and review of the literature. Medicine 1980; 59:188-205.
404. Haley CE, Cohen ML, Halter J, Meyer RD. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease: a continuing common-source epidemic at Wadsworth Medical Center. Medicine 1979; 90:583-586.
405. Bock BV, Kirby BD, Edelstein PH, et al. Legionnaires' disease in renal transplant recipients. Lancet 1978;1:410-413.
406. Brady MT. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease in a children's hospital. J Pediatr 1989;115:46-50.
407. Horie H, Kawakami H, Minoshima K, et al. Neonatal Legionnaires' disease: histologic findings in an autopsied neonate. Acta Pathol Jpn 1992;42:427-431.
408. Helms CM, Viner JP, Sturm RH, et al. Comparative features of pneumococcal, mycoplasma, and Legionnaires' disease pneumonias. Ann Intern Med 1979; 90:543-547.
409. Yu V, Kroboth FJ, Shonnard J, Brown A, McDearman S, Magnussen M. Legionnaires' disease: new clinical perspectives from a prospective pneumonia study. Am J Med 1982;73:357-361.
410. Marston B, Plouffe J, File T, et al. Evidence of mixed infection in patients with antibody to *Chlamydia pneumoniae*. Abstracts of the 32nd Interscience Conference on Antimierobial Agents and Chemotherapy 1992;808. Abstract.
411. Ussery XT, Butler JC, Breiman R, et al. Outbreak of Legionnaires' disease associated with *Mycoplasma* infection. Abstracts of the 32nd Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy 1992;815. Abstract.
412. Jimenez ML, Aspa J, Padilla B, et al. Fiberoptic bronchoscopic diagnosis of pulmonary disease in 151 HIV-infected patients with pneumonitis. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 1991;10:491-497.
413. Centers for Disease Control. Case definitions for public health surveillance. MMWR 1990; 39(RR-13):18.
414. Helms CM, Renner ED, Viner JP, Hierholzer WJ, Wintermeyer LA, Johnson W. Indirect immunofluorescence antibodies to *Legionella pneumophila*: frequency in a rural community. J Clin Microbiol 1980;12:326-328.
415. Wilkerson HW, Reingold AL, Brake BJ, McGiboney DL, Gorman GW, Broome CV. Reactivity of serum from patients with suspected legionellosis against 29 antigens of Legionellaceae and *Legionella*-like organisms by indirect immunofluorescence assay. J Infect Dis 1983;147:23-31.
416. Nichol KL, Parenti CM, Johnson JE. High prevalence of positive antibodies to *Legionella pneumophila* among outpatients. Chest 1991;100:663-666.
417. Storch G, Hayes PS, Hill DL, Baine W. Prevalence of antibody to *Legionella pneumophila* in middle-aged and elderly Americans. J Infect Dis 1979;140:784-788.
418. Plouffe J, Marston B, Straus W, Breiman R, Hackman B, Moyenuddin M. Utility of diagnostic studies in Legionnaires' disease: Franklin County. Abstracts of the 32nd Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy 1992:817. Abstract.
419. Edelstein PH. The laboratory diagnosis of Legionnaires' disease. Seminars Respir Infect 1987;2:235-241.
420. Bridge JA, Edelstein PH. Oropharyngeal colonization with *Legionella pneumophila*. J Clin Microbiol 1983;18:1108-1112.
421. Fukunaga H, Akagi K, Yabuchi E. Asymptomatic infection of *Legionella pneumophila* in four cases with pulmonary disease in Japanese. Nippon Saikingaku Zasshi 1990;45:833-840.
422. Dondero TJ, Rendtorff RC, Mallison GF, et al. An outbreak of Legionnaires' disease associated with a contaminated air-conditioning cooling tower. N Engl J Med 1980; 302:365-370.
423. Garbe PL, Davis BJ, Weisfield JS, et al. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease: epi-

demiologic demonstration of cooling towers as a source. JAMA 1985;254:521-524.
424. O'Mahony MC, Stanwell-Smith RE, Tillett HE, et al. The Stafford outbreak of Legionnaires' disease. Epidemiol Infect 1990;104:361-380.
425. Breiman RF, Fields BS, Sanden G, Volmer L, Meier A, Spika J. An outbreak of Legionnaires' disease associated with shower use: possible role of amoebae. JAMA 1990;263:2924-2926.
426. Hanrahan JP, Morse DL, Scharf VB, et al. A community hospital outbreak of Legionellosis: transmission by potable hot water. Am J Epidemiol 1987;125: 639-649.
427. Breiman RF, VanLoock FL, Sion JP, et al. Association of "sink bathing" and Legionnaires' disease. Abstracts of the 91st Meeting of the American Society for Microbiology 1991; L18. Abstract.
428. Struelens MJ, Maes N, Rost F, et al. Genotypic and phenotypic methods for the investigation of a nosocomial *Legionella pneumophila* outbreak and efficacy of control measures. J Infect Dis 1992;166:22-30.
429. Johnson JT, Yu VL, Best MG, et al. Nosocomial legionellosis in surgical patients with head and neck cancer: implications for epidemiological reservoir and mode of transmission. Lancet 1985; 2:298-300.
430. Marrie TJ, Haldane D, MacDonald S, et al. Control of endemic nosocomial Legionnaires' disease by using sterile potable water for high risk patients. Epidemiol Infect 1991;107:591-605.
431. Blatt SP, Parkinson MD, Pace E, et al. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease: aspiration as a primary mode of disease acquisition. Am J Med 1993;95:16-22.
432. Fraser DW, Tsai TR, Orenstein W, et al. Legionnaires' disease: description of an epidemic of pneumonia. N Engl J Med 1977;297:1189-1197.
433. Yu VL. Routiné culturing for Legionella in the hospital environment may be a good idea: a three-hospital prospective study. Am J Med 1987;294:97-99.
434. Allegheny County Health Department. Approaches to Prevention and Control of Legionella Infection in Allegheny County Health Care Facilities. Pittsburgh: Allegheny County Health Department; 1993:1-13.
435. Goetz A, Yu VL. Screening for nosocomial legionellosis by culture of the water supply and targeting of high-risk patients for specialized laboratory testing. Am J Infect Control 1991;19:63-66.
436. Yu VL. Nosocomial legionellosis: current epidemiologic issues. In: Remington JS, Swartz MN, eds. Current Clinical Topics in Infectious Diseases. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 1986:239-253.
437. Vickers RM, Yu VL, Hanna SS. Determinants of *Legionella pneumophila* contamination of water distribution systems: 15-hospital prospective study. Infect Control 1987;8:357-363.
438. Tobin JO, Swann RA, Bartlett CLR. Isolation of *Legionella pneumophila* from water systems: methods and preliminary results. Br Med J 1981;282:515-517.
439. Dennis PJ, Fltzgeorge RB, Taylor JA, et al. *Legionella pneumophila* in water plumbing systems. Lancet 1982;1:949-951.
440. Marrie TJ, Haldane D, Bezanson G, Peppard R. Each water outlet is a unique ecologic niche for *Legionella pneumophila*. Epidemiol Infect 1992;108:261-270.
441. Marrie TJ, Berzcason G, Fox J, Kuehn R, Haldane D, Birbridge S. Dynamics of *Legionella pneumophila* in the potable water of one floor of a hospital. In: Barbaree JM, Breiman RF, Dufow AP, eds. Legionella: Current Status and Emerging Perspectives. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology, 1993:238-240.
442. Plouffe JF, Para MF, Maher WE, Hackman B, Webster L. Subtypes of *Legionella pneumophila* serogroup 1 associated with different attack rates. Lancet 1983; 2:649-650.
443. Fraser DW. Sources of legionellosis. In: Thornsberry C, Balows A, Feeley JC, Jakubowski W, eds. Legionella: Proceedings of the 2nd International Symposium. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology; 1984:277-280.
444. Dourmon E, Bibb WF, Rajagopalan P, Desplaces N, McKinney RM. Monoclonal antibody reactivity as a virulence marker for *Legionella pneumophila* serogroup 1 strain. J Infect Dis 1992;165:569-573.
445. Brundrett GW. Guides on avoiding Legionnaires' disease. In: Legionella and Building Services. Oxford, England: Butterworth Heineman; 1992:346-373.
446. Kugler JW, Armitage JO, Helms CM, et al. Nosocomial Legionnaires' disease. Occurrence in recipients of bone marrow transplants. Am J Med 1983;74:281-288.
447. Department of Health. The Control of Legionella in Health Care Premises: A Code of Practice. London, England: HMSO, 1991.
448. Helms CM, Massanari RM, Wenzel RP, et al. Legionnaires' disease associated with a hospital water system: a five-year progress report on continuous hyperchlorination. JAMA 1988;259:2423-2427.
449. Snyder MB, Siwicki M, Wireman J, et al. Reduction of *Legionella pneumophila* through heat flushing followed by continuous supplemental chlorination of hospital hot water. J Infect Dis 1990;162:127-132.
450. Ezzeddine H, Van Ossel C, Delmee M, Wauters G. *Legionella* spp. in a hospital hot water system: effect of control measures. J Hosp Infect 1989;13:121-131.
451. Kilbourne ED. Influenza. New York, NY: Plenum Publishing, 1987.
452. Johnston JM, Latham RH, Meier FA, et al. Nosocomial outbreak of Legion-naires' disease: molecular epidemiology and disease control measures. Infect Control 1987;8:53-58.
453. Joly JR, McKinney RM, Tobin JO, Bibb WF, Watkins ID, Ramsay D. Development of a standardized subgrouping scheme for *Legionella pneumophila* serogroup 1 using monoclonal antibodies. J Clin Microbiol 1986;23:768-771.
454. Schoonmaker D, Helmberger T, Birkhead G. Comparison of ribotyping and restriction enzyme analysis using pulsed-field gel electrophoresis for distinguishing *Legionella pneumophila* isolates obtained during a nosocomial outbreak. J Clin Microbiol 1992;30: 1491-1498.
455. Barbaree JM. Selecting a subtyping technique for use in investigations of legionellosis epidemics. In: Barbaree JM, Breiman RF, Dufow AP, eds. Legionella: Current Status and Emerging Perspectives. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology, 1993.
456. Best M, Yu VL, Stout J, Goetz A, Muder RR, Taylor F. Legionellaceae in the hospital water supply: epidemiologic link with disease and evaluation of a method for control of nosocomial Legionnaires' disease and Pittsburgh pneumonia. Lancet 1983;2:307-310.
457. Meenhorst PL, Reingold AL, Groothuis DG, et al. Water-related nosocomial pneumonia caused by *Legionella pneumophila* serogroups 1 and 10. J Infect Dis 1985; 152:356-364.
458. Mandel AS, Sprauer MA, Sniadack DH, Ostroff SM. State regulation of hospital water temperature. Infect Control & Hosp Epidemiol 1993;14:642-645.
459. Matulonis U, Rosenfeld CS, Shadduck RK. Prevention of Legionella infections in a bone marrow transplant unit: multifaceted approach to decontamination of a water system. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1993;14:571-583.
460. Domingue EL, Tyndall RL, Mayberry WR, Pancorbo OC. Effects of three oxidizing biocides of *Legionella pneumophila* serogroup 1. Appl Environ Microbiol 1988;54:741-747.
461. Landeen LK, Yahya MT, Gerba CP. Efficacy of copper and silver ions and reduced levels of free chlorine in inactivation of *Legionella pneumophila*. Appl Environ Microbiol 1989;55:3045-3050.

462. Liu Z, Stout JE, Tedesco L, et al. Controlled evaluation of copper-silver ionization in eradicating *Legionella pneumophila* from a hospital water distribution system. J Infect Dis 1994;169: 919-922.
463. Edelstein PH, Whittaker RE, Kreiling RL, Howell CL. Efficacy of ozone in eradication of *Legionella pneumophila* from hospital fixtures. Appl Environ Microbiol 1982;44:1330-1334.
464. Wisconsin Department of Health and Social Services. Control of Legionella in Cooling Towers: Summary Guidelines. Madison, WI: Wisconsin Division of Health, 1987.
465. Best MG, Goetz A, Yu VL. Heat eradication measures for control of nosocomial Legionnaire's disease: implementation, education, and cost analysis. Infect Control 1984;12:26-30.
466. Muraca PW, Yu VL, Goetz A. Disinfection of water distribution systems for *Legionella*: a review of application procedures and methodologies. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1990; 11:79-88.
467. Walsh TJ, Dixon DM. Nosocomial aspergillosis: environmental microbiology, hospital epidemiology, diagnosis and treatment. Eur J Epidemiol 1989;5:131-142.
468. Bodey GP, Vartivarian S. Aspergil-losis. Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis 1989; 8:413-437.
469. Fraser DW, Ward JL, Ajello L, Plikaytis BD. Aspergillosis and other systemic mycoses: the growing problem. JAMA 1979;242:1631-1635.
470. Iwen PC, Reed EC, Armitage JO, et al. Nosocomial invasive aspergillosis in lymphoma patients treated with bone marrow or peripheral stem cell transplants. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1993;14:131-139.
471. Cordonnier C, Bernaudin JF, Bierling P, Huet Y, Vernant JP. Pulmonary complications occurring after allogeneic bone marrow transplantation: a study of 130 consecutive transplanted patients. Cancer 1986;58:1047-1054.
472. Klimowski LL, Rotstein C, Cummings KM. Incidence of nosocomial aspergillosis in patients with leukemia over a twenty-year period. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1989;10:299-305.
473. Walmsley S, Devi S, King S, Schneider R, Richardson S, Ford-Jones L. Invasive *Aspergillus* infections in a pediatric hospital: a ten-year review. Pediatr Infect Dis 1993;12:673-682.
474. Sherertz RJ, Belani A, Kramer BS, et al. Impact of air filtration on nosocomial aspergillus infections. Unique risk of bone marrow transplant recipients. Am J Med 1987;83:709-718.
475. Rhame FS. Lessons from the Roswell Park bone marrow transplant aspergillosis outbreak. Infect Control 1985;6:345-346.
476. Rotstein C, Cummings KM, Tiddings J, et al. An outbreak of invasive aspergillosis among bone marrow transplants: a case-control study. Infect Control 1985;6:347-355.
477. Aisner J, Schimpff SC, Bennett JE, et al. Aspergillus infections in cancer patients. Association with fireproofing materials in a new hospital. JAMA 1976;235:411-412.
478. Arnow PM, Anderson RI, Mainous PD, Smith EJ. Pulmonary aspergillosis during hospital renovation. Am Rev Respir Dis 1978;118:49-53.
479. Streifel AJ, Laner JL, Vesley D, et al. *Aspergillus fumigatus* and other thermotolerant fungi generated by hospital building demolition. Appl Environ Microbiol 1983;46:375-378.
480. Hopkins CC, Weber DJ, Rubin RH. Invasive aspergillosis infection: possible non-ward common source within the hospital environment. J Hosp Infect 1989; 13:19-25.
481. Gurwith MJ, Stinson EB, Remington JS. Aspergillus infection complicating cardiac transplantation: report of five cases. Arch Intern Med 1971;128:541- 545.
482. Weiland D, Ferguson RM, Peterson PK, Snover DC, Simmons RL, Najarian JS. Aspergillosis in 25 renal transplant patients. Ann Surg 1983; 198:622-629.
483. Hofflin JM, Potasman I, Baldwin JC, Oyster PE, Stinson EB, Remington JS. Infectious complications in heart transplant recipients receiving cyclosporine and corticosteroids. Ann Intern Med 1987; 106:209-216.
484. Schulman LL, Smith CR, Drusin R, Rose EA, Enson Y, Reemtsma K. Respiratory complications of cardiac transplantation. Am J Med Sci 1988;296:1-10.
485. Gustafson TL, Schaffner W, Lavely GB, Stratton CW, Johnson HK, Hutcheson RH. Invasive aspergillosis in renal transplant recipients: correlation with corticosteroid therapy. J Infect Dis 1983;148:230-238.
486. Ho M, Dummer JS. Risk factors and approaches to infections in transplant recipients. In: Mandell GL, Douglas RG Jr, Bennett JE, eds. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases. 3rd ed. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone, 1990:2284-2291.
487. Rhame FS, Streifel AJ, Kersey JH, Extrinsic risk factors for pneumonia in the patient at high risk for infection. Am J Med 1984;76:42-52.
488. Aisner J, Murillo J, Schimpff SC, Steere AC. Invasive aspergillosis in acute leukemia: correlation with nose cultures and antibiotic use. Ann Intern Med 1979;90:4-9.
489. Ho M, Dummer JS, Peterson PK, Simmons RL. Infections in solid organ transplant recipients. In: Mandell GL, Douglas RG Jr, Bennett JE, eds. Principles and Practice of Infectious Diseases. 3rd ed. New York, NY: Churchill Livingstone, 1990:2294-2303.
490. Walsh TR, Guttendorf J, Dummer S, et al. The value of protective isolation procedures in cardiac transplant recipients. Ann Thorac Surg 1989;47:539-545.
491. Denning DW, Stevens DA. Antifungal and surgical treatment of invasive aspergillosis: review of 2121 published cases. Rev Infect Dis 1990;12:1147-1201.
492. Pannuti CS, Pfaller MA, Wenzel RP. Nosocomial pneumonia in adult patients undergoing bone marrow transplantation: a 9-year study. J Clin Oncol 1991;9:77-84.
493. Weinberger M, Elattaar I, Marshall D, et al. Patterns of infection in patients with aplastic anaemia and the emergence of aspergillus as a major cause of death. Medicine 1992;71:24-43.
494. Orr DP, Myerowitz RL, Jemkins R, et al. Pathoradiologic correlation of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis in the compromised host. Case report and review of literature. Cancer 1978;41:2028-2039.
495. Young RC, Bennett JE, Vogel CL, Carbone PP, DeVita VT. Aspergillosis: the spectrum of the disease in 98 patients. Medicine 1970;49:147-173.
496. Meyer RD, Young LS, Armstrong D, et al. Aspergillosis complicating neoplastic disease. Am J Med 1973;54:6-15.
497. Yu VL, Muder RR, Poorsattar A. Significance of isolation of *Aspergillus* from the respiratory tract in diagnosis of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis. Results of a three-year prospective study. Am J Med 1986;81:249-254.
498. Martino P, Raccah R, Gentile G, Venditti M, Girmenea C, Mandelli F. *Aspergillus* colonization of the nose and pulmonary aspergillosis in neutropenic patients: a retrospective study. Hematologica 1989; 74:263-265.
499. Richet HM, McNeil MM, Davis BJ, et al. *Aspergillus fumigatus* sternal wound infections in patients undergoing open heart surgery. Am J Epidemiol 1992;135:48-58.
500. Albelda SM, Talbot GH, Gerson SL, Miller WT, Cassileth PA. Role of fiberoptic bronchoscopy in the diagnosis of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis in patients with acute leukemia. Am J Med 1984;76:1027-1034.
501. Kahn FW, Jones JM, England DM. The role of bronchoalveolar lavage in the diagnosis of invasive pulmonary aspergillosis. Am J Clin Patholol 1986;86:518-523.
502. Saito H, Anaissie EJ, Morice RC,

Dekmezian R, Bodey GP. Broncho-alveolar lavage in the diagnosis of pulmonary infiltrates in patients with acute leukemia. Am J Med 1984;76:1027-1034.

503. Cohen J. Clinical manifestations and management of aspergillosis in the comprmised patient. In: Warnock DW, Richardson MD, eds. Fungal Infections in the Compromised Patient. London, England: John Wiley & Sons Ltd, 1991:117-152.
504. Pepys J, Riddell RW, Citron KM, Clayton YM, Short EI. Clinical and immunologic significance of *Aspergillus fumigatus* in the sputum. Am Rev Respir Dis 1959; 80:167-180.
505. Karam GH, Griffin JR. Invasive pulmonary aspergillosis in nonimmunocompromised, non-neutropenic hosts. Rev Infect Dis 1986;8:357-363.
506. Kammer RB, Utz JP. *Aspergillus* species endocarditis: the new face of a not so rare disease. Am J Med 1974;56:506-521.
507. Holmberg K, Berdischewsky M, Young LS. Serologic immunodiagnosis of invasive aspergillosis. J Infect Dis 1980;141: 656-664.
508. Matthews R, Burnie JP, Fox A, Tabaqchali S. Immunoblot analysis of serological responses in invasive aspergillosis. J Clin Pathol 1985;38:1300-1303.
509. Burnie JP, Matthews RC, Clark I, Milne LJ. Immunoblot fingerprinting of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. J Immunol Methods 1989; 118:179-186.
510. Talbot GH, Weiner MH, Person SL, Provencher M, Hurwitz S. Serodiag-nosis of invasive aspergillosis in patients with hematologic malignancy: validation of the *Aspergillus fumigatus* antigen radioimmunoassay. J Infect Dis 1987;155:12-27.
511. Dupont B, Huber M, Kim SJ, Bennett JE. Galactomannan antigenemia and antigenuria in aspergillosis: studies in patients and experimentally infected rabbits. J Infect Dis 1987;155:1-11.
512. Gerson SL, Talbot GH, Hurwitz S, Strom B, Lusk EJ. Prolonged granulocytopenia: the major risk factor for invasive pulmonary aspergillosis in patients with leukemia. Ann Intern Med 1984; 100:345-351.
513. Wingard JR, Beals SU, Santos GW, Mertz WG, Saral R. *Aspergillus* infections in bone marrow transplant recipients. Bone Marrow Transplant 1987;2:175-181.
514. Peters WP. Use of cytokines during prolonged neutropenia associated with autologous bone marrow transplantation. Rev Infect Dis 1991;13:993-996.
515. Lieschke GJ, Burgess AW. Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor. N Engl J Med 1992;327:28-35.
516. Karp JE, Burch PA, Merz WG, et al. An approach to intensive antileukemia therapy in patients with previous invasive aspergillosis. Am J Med 1988;85:203-206.
517. Meunier-Carpentier F, Snoeck R, Gerain J, et al. Chemoprophylaxis of fungal infections. Am J Med 1984;76:652-656.
518. Wajszczuk CP, Dummer JS, Ho M, et al. Fungal infections in liver transplant recipients. Transplantation 1985;40:347-353.
519. Rhame FS, Streifel A, Stevens P, et al. Endemic *Aspergillus* airborne spore levels are a major risk factor for aspergillosis in bone marrow transplant patients. Abstracts of the 25th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy 1985. Abstract.
520. Lentino JR, Rosenkranz MA, Michaels JA, et al. Nosocomial aspergillosis: a retrospective review of airborne disease secondary to road construction and contaminated air conditioners. Am J Epidemiol 1982; 116:430-437.
521. Sarubbi FA, Kopf HB, Brejetta Wilson M, et al. Increased recovery of *Aspergillus flavus* from respiratory specimens during hospital construction. Am Rev Respir Dis 1982;125:33-38.
522. Krasinski K, Holzman RS, Hanna B, et al. Nosocomial fungal infection during hospital renovation. Infect Control 1985; 6:278-282.
523. Weems JJ, Davis BJ, Tablan OC, Kaufman L, Martone WJ. Construction activity: an independent risk factor for invasive aspergillosis and zygomycosis in patients with hematologic malignancy. Infect Control 1987;8:71- 75.
524. Cage AA, Dean DC, Schimert G, Minsley N. *Aspergillus* infection after cardiac surgery. Arch Surg 1970;101:384-387.
525. Streifel AJ, Stevens PP, Rhame FS. In-hospital source of airborne *Penicillium* spores. J Clin Microbiol 1987;25:1-4.
526. Keller NP, Cleveland TE, Bhatnagar D. Variable electrophoretic karyotypes of members of *Aspergillus flavi*. Curr Genet 1992; 21:371-375.
527. Denning DW, Clemons KV, Hanson LH, Stevens DA. Restriction endonuclease analysis of total cellular DNA of *Aspergillus fumigatus* isolates of geographically and epidemiologically diverse origin. J Infect Dis 1990;162:1151-1158.
528. Rhame FS. Prevention of nosocomial aspergillosis. J Hosp Infect 1991;18:466-472.
529. Buckner CD, Clift RA, Sanders AJ, et al. Protective environment for marrow transplant recipients. Ann Intern Med 1978; 89:893-901.
530. Murray WA, Streifel AJ, O'Dea TJ, Rhame FS. Ventilation for protection of immune compromised patients. ASHRAE Transactions 1988;94:1185-1191.
531. Streifel AJ, Vesley D, Rhame FS, Murray B. Control of airborne fungal spores in a university hospital. Environment International 1989;12:441-444.
532. Streifel AJ, Rhame FS. Hospital air filamentous fungal spore and particle counts in a specially designed hospital. Proc Indoor Air 1993;4:161-163.
533. Perry S, Penland WZ. The portable laminar flow isolator: new unit for patient protection in a germ-free environment. In: Recent Results in Cancer Research. New York, NY: Springer- Verlag, 1970.
534. Barnes RA, Rogers TR. Control of an outbreak of nosocomial aspergillosis by laminar air-flow isolation. J Hosp Infect 1989;14:89-94.
535. Levine AS, Siegel SE, Schreiber AD, et al. Protected environments and prophylactic antibiotics. N Engl J Med 1973; 288:477-483.
536. ASHRAE. Handbook, Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning Applications. Atlanta, GA: ASHRAE, 1991:7.1-7.12.
537. Rhame FS. Nosocomial aspergillosis: how much protection for which patients? Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1989;10:296-298.
538. Opal SM, Asp AA, Cannady PB, Morse PL, Burton LJ, Hammer PG. Efficacy of infection contrul measures during a nosocomial outbreak of disseminated aspergillosis associated with hospital construction. J Infect Dis 1986;153:634-637.
539. Welliver RC, McLaughlin S. Unique epidemiology of nosocomial infections in a children's hospital. Am J Dis Child 1984;138:131-135.
540. Valenti WM, Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr, Menegus MA, Pincus PH. Nosocomial viral infections: I. Epidemiology and significance. Infect Control 1980;1:33- 37.
541. Goldwater PN, Martin AJ, Ryan B, et al. A survey of nosocomial respiratory viral infections in a children's hospital: occult respiratory infection in patients admitted during an epidemic season. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1991;12:231-238.
542. Mintz L, Ballard RA, Sniderman SH, et al. Nosocomial respiratory syncytial virus infections in an intensive care nursery: rapid diagnosis by direct immunofluorescence. Pediatrics 1979;64:149-153.
543. Hall CB, McBride JT, Walsh EE, et al. Aerosolized ribavirin treatment in infants with respiratory syncytial virus infection. N Engl J Med 1983;308:1443-1447.
544. Betts RF. Amantadine and rimantadine for the prevention of influenza A. Seminars

Respir Infect 1989;4:304- 310.
545. Rodriguez WJ, Parrott RH. Ribavirin aerosol treatment of serious respiratory syncytial virus infection in infants. Infect Dis Clin N Am 1987;2:425.
546. Krasinski K. Severe respiratory syncytial virus infection: clinical features, nosocomial acquisition and outcome. Pediatr Infect Dis 1985;4:250-256.
547. Meissner HC, Murray SA, Kiernan MA, et al. A simultaneous outbreak of respiratory syncytial virus and parainfluenza virus type 3 in a newborn nursery. J Pediatr 1984;104:680-684.
548. Hall CB, Powell KR, MacDonald NE, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus infection in children with compromised immune function. N Engl J Med 1986;315:77-81.
549. Mathur U, Bentley DW, Hall CB. Concurrent respiratory syncytial virus and influenza A infections in the institutionalized elderly and chronically ill. Ann Intern Med 1980;93:49-52.
550. MacDonald NE, Hall CB, Suffin SC, Alexon C, Harris PJ, Manning JA. Respiratory syncytial viral infection in infants with congenital heart disease. N Engl J Med 1982;307:397-400.
551. Drescher J, Zink P, Verhagen W, et al. Recent influenza virus A infections in forensic cases of sudden unexplained death. Virology 1987;92:63-76.
552. Hertz MI, Englund JA, Snover D, Bitterman PB, McGlave PB. Respiratory syncytial virus-induced acute lung injury in adult patients with bone marrow transplants: a clinical approach and review of the literature. Medicine 1989;68:269-281.
553. Baron RC, Dicker RC, Bussell KE, Herndon JL. Assessing trends in mortality in 121 U.S. cities, 1970-1979, from all causes and from pneumonia and influenza. Public Health Rep 1988;103:120-128.
554. Hall CB. The nosocomial spread of respiratory syncytial viral infections. Ann Rev Med 1983;34:311-319.
555. Finger F, Anderson LJ, Dicker RC, et al. Epidemic infections caused by respiratory syncytial virus in institutionalized young adults. J Infect Dis 1987;155:1335-1339.
556. Hall CB. Nosocomial viral infections: perennial weeds on pediatric wards. Am J Med 1981;70:670-676.
557. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr. Nosocomial influenza infection as a cause of intercurrent fevers in infants. Pediatrics 1975;55: 673-677.
558. Glezen WP. Viral pneumonia as a cause and result of hospitalization. J Infect Dis 1983;147:765-770.
559. Wenzel RP, Deal EC, Hendley JO. Hospital-acquired viral respiratory illness on a pediatric ward. Pediatrics 1977; 60:367-371.
560. Hall CB. Hospital-acquired pneumonia in children. Seminars Respir Infect 1987; 2:48-56.
561. Glezen WP, Loda FA, Clyde WA Jr, et al. Epidemiologic patterns of acute lower respiratory diseases in pediatric group practice. J Pediatr 1971;78:397-406.
562. Henderson FW, Collier AM, Clyde WA Jr, et al. Respiratory-syncytial-virus infections, reinfections and immunity: a prospective, longitudinal study in young children. N Engl J Med 1979;300:530-534.
563. Hall WJ, Hall CB, Speers DM. Respiratory syncytial virus infection in adults: clinical, virologic, and serial pulmonary function studies. Ann Intern Med 1978;88:203-205.
564. Englund JA, Anderson LJ, Rhame FS. Nosocomial transmission of respiratory syncytial virus in immunocompromised adults. J Clin Microbiol 1991;29:115-119.
565. Falsey AR, Walsh EE, Betts RF. Serologic evidence of respiratory syncytial virus infection in nursing home patients. J Infect Dis 1990;162:568- 569.
566. Hall CB, Kopelman AE, Douglas G Jr, Griman JM, Meagher MP. Neonatal respiratory syncytial virus infection. N Engl J Med 1979;300:393-396.
567. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr, Geiman JM, et al. Nosocomial respiratory syncytial virus infections. N Engl J Med 1975; 203: 1343-1346.
568. Centers for Disease Control. Para-influenza outbreaks in extended-care facilities. MMWR 1978;27:475-476.
569. De Fabritus AM, Riggio RR, David DS, et al. Parainfluenza type 3 in a transplant unit. JAMA 1979;241:384-385.
570. Mufson MA, Mocega HE, Krause HE. Acquisition of parainfluenza 3 virus infection by hospitalized children. I. Frequencies, rates, and temporal data. J Infect Dis 1973;128:141-147.
571. McNamara MJ, Phillips IA, Williams OB. Viral and *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* infections in exacerbations of chronic lung disease. Am Rev Respir Dis 1969;100:19-24.
572. Meyers JD, MacQuarrie MB, Merigan TC, Jennison MH. Nosocomial varicella, part I. Outbreak in oncology patients at a children's hospital. West J Med 1979; 130:196-199.
573. Graman PS, Hall CB. Epidemiology and control of nosocomial viral infections. Infect Dis Clin N Am 1989;3:815-841.
574. Atkinson WL, Markowitz LE, Adams NC, Seastrom GR. Transmission of measles in medical settings: United States, 1985-1989. Am J Med 1991;91(suppl 3B):252S-255S.
575. Brandt CD, Kim HW, Arrobio JO, et al. Epidemiology of respiratory syncytial virus in Washington, DC. III. Composite analysis of 11 consecutive yearly epidemics. Am J Epidemiol 1973;98:355-364.
576. Glezen WP, Denny FW. Epidemiology of acute lower respiratory disease in children. N Engl J Med 1973;288:498-505.
577. Englund JA, Sullivan CJ, Jordan C, Dehner LP, Vercellotti GM, Balfour HH. Respiratory syncytial virus infection in immunocompromised adults. Ann Intern Med 1988;109:203-208.
578. Sorvillo FJ, Huie SF, Strassburg MA, Butsumyo A, Shandera WX, Fannin SL. An outbreak of respiratory syncytial virus pneumonia in a nursing home for the elderly. J Infect 1984;9:252-256.
579. Anderson LJ, Parker RA, Strikas RL. Association between respiratory syncytial virus outbreaks and lower respiratory tract deaths in infants and young children. J Infect Dis 1990;161:640-646.
580. Waner JL, Whitehurst NJ, Todd SJ, et al. Comparison of Directigen RSV with viral isolation and direct immunofluorescence for identification of respiratory syncytial virus. J Clin Microbiol 1990;28:480-483.
581. Ray CG, Minnich LL. Efficacy of immunofluorescence for rapid diagnosis of common respiratory viruses. J Clin Microbiol 1987;25:355-357.
582. Popow-Kraupp T, Kern G, Binder C, et al. Detection of RSV in nasopharyngeal secretions by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, indirect immunofluorescence and virus isolation. J Med Virol 1986;19:123-134.
583. Kellogg JA. Culture vs direct antigen assays for detection of microbial pathogens from lower respiratory tract specimens suspected of containing the respiratory syncytial virus. Arch Pathol Lab Med 1991; 115:451-458.
584. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr. Modes of transmission of respiratory syncytial virus. J Pediatr 1981;99:100-103.
585. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr, Geiman JM. Possible transmission by fomites of respiratory syncytial virus. J Infect Dis 1980;141:98-102.
586. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr, Schnabel KC, Geiman JM. Infectivity of respiratory syncytial virus by various routes of inoculation. Infect Immun 1981;33:779-783.
587. Storch GA, Park CS, Dohner DE. RNA fingerprinting of respiratory syncytial virus using ribonuclease protection: application to molecular epidemiology. J Clin Invest 1989;83:1894-1902.
588. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr, Geiman J. Respiratory syncytial virus infections in infants: quantitation and duration of shedding. J Pediatr 1976;89:11-15.
589. Berglund M. Respiratory syncytial virus infections in families: a study of family mem-

bers of children hospitalized for acute respiratory disease. Acta Pediatr Scand 1967;56:395-404.
590. Hall CB, Douglas RG Jr. Nosocomial respiratory syncytial viral infections. Should gowns and masks be used? Am J Dis Child 1981;135:512-515.
591. Snydman DR, Greer C, Meissner HC, McIntosh K. Prevention of nosocomial transmission of respiratory syncytial virus in a newborn nursery. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1988;9:105-108.
592. Murphy D, Todd JK, Chao RK, et al. The use of gowns and masks to control respiratory illness in pediatric hospital personnel. J Pediatr 1981;99:746-750.
593. Krasinski K, LaCouture R, Holzman RS, Waithe E, Bank S, Hanna B. Screening for respiratory syncytial virus and assignment to a cohort at admission to reduce nosocomial transmission. J Pediatr 1990; 116:894-898.
594. Agah R, Cherry JD, Garakian AJ, et al. Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) infection rate in personnel caring for children with RSV infections: routine isolation procedure vs routine procedure supplemented by use of masks and goggles. Am J Dis Child 1987;141:695-697.
595. Hall CB, Geiman JM, Douglas RG. Control of nosocomial respiratory syncytial viral infections. Pediatrics 1978; 62:728-732.
596. Itano A, Sorvillo F. Infection control practices for respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) among acute care hospitals in Los Angeles County. Am J Infect Control 1991;19:107. Abstract.
597. Madge P, Paton JY, McColl JH, Mackie PLK. Prospective controlled study of four infection control procedures to prevent nosocomial infection with respiratory syncytial virus. Lancet 1992;340:1079-1083.
598. Gala CL, Hall CB, Schnabel MA, et al. The use of eye-nose goggles to control nosocomial respiratory syncytial virus infection. JAMA 1986;256:2706-2708.
599. Louria DB, Blumenfeld HL, Ellis JT, Kilbourne ED, Rogers DE. Studies on influenza in the pandemic of 1957-58. II. Pulmonary complications of influenza. J Clin Invest 1959;38:213-265.
600. Lindsay MI Jr, Herrman EC Jr, Morrow GW Jr, et al. Hong Kong influenza: clinical, microbiologic, and pathologic features of 127 cases. JAMA 1970;214:1825-1832.
601. Schwarzmann SW, Adler JL, Sullivan RJ, et al. Bacterial pneumonia during the Hong Kong influenza epidemic of 1968-1969. Arch Intern Med 1971;127:1037-1041.
602. Barker WH, Mullooly JP. Pneumonia and influenza deaths during epidemics. Arch Intern Med 1982;142:85-89.
603. Mullooly JP, Barker WH. Impact of type A influenza on children: a retrospective study. Am J Public Health 1982;72:1008-1016.
604. Eickhoff TC, Sherman IL, Serfling RE. Observations on excess mortality associated with epidemic influenza. JAMA 1961;176:104-110.
605. Noble GR. Epidemiological and clinical aspects of influenza. In: Beare AS, ed. Basic and Applied Influenza Research. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1982:11-49.
606. Monto AS, Kioumehr F. The Tecumseh study of respiratory illness, IX. Occurrence of influenza in the community, 1966-1971. Am J Epidemiol 1975;102:553-563.
607. Blumenfeld HL, Kilbourne ED, Louria DB, et al. Studies on influenza in the pandemic of 1957-1958, I. An epidemiologic, clinical, and serologic investigation of an intra-hospital epidemic, with a note on vaccine efficacy. J Clin Invest 1959; 38:199-212.
608. Bean B, Rhaine FS, Hughes RS, et al. Influenza B: hospital activity during a community epidemic. Diag Microbiol Infect Dis 1983;1:177-183.
609. Hoffman PC, Dixon RE. Control of influenza in the hospital. Ann Intern Med 1977;87:725-728.
610. Arden NH, Patriarca PA, Fasano MB, et al. The roles of vaccination and amantadine prophylaxis in controlling an outbreak of influenza A (H3N2) in a nursing home. Arch Intern Med 1988;148:865-868.
611. Arroyo JC, Postic B, Brown A, et al. Influenza A/Philippines/2/82 outbreak in a nursing home: limitations of influenza vaccination in the elderly. Am J Infect Control 1984;12:329-334.
612. Patriarca PA, Weber JA, Parker RA, et al. Efficacy of influenza vaccine in nursing homes: reduction in illness and complications during influenza A (H3N2) epidemic. JAMA 1985;253:1136-1139.
613. Saah AJ, Neufeld R, Rodstein M, et al. Influenza vaccine and pneumonia mortality in a nursing home population. Arch Intern Med 1986;146:2353-2357.
614. Alford RH, Kasel JA, Gerone PJ, Knight V. Human influenza resulting from aerosol inhalation. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1966; 122:800-804.
615. Moser MR, Bender TR, Margolis HS, Noble GR, Kendal AP, Ritter DG. An outbreak of influenza aboard a commercial airliner. Am J Epidemiol 1979;110:1-6.
616. Knight V. Airborne transmission and pulmonary deposition of respiratory viruses. In: Mulder J, Hers JFP, eds. Influenza. Gronin-gen, Netherkands: Wolters-Noordhoff, 1972:1-9.
617. Loosli CG, Lemon HM, Robertson OH, et al. Experimental air-borne influenza infection. I. Influence of humidity on survival of virus in air. Proc Soc Exp Biol Med 1943;53:205-206.
618. Bean B, Moore BM, Sterner B, et al. Survival of influenza viruses on environmental surfaces. J Infect Dis 1982; 146:47-52.
619. Glezen WP, Decker M, Joseph SW, Mercready RG Jr. Acute respiratory disease associated with influenza epidemics in Houston, 1981-1983. J Infect Dis 1987;155:1119-1126.
620. McQuillin J, Madeley CR, Kendal AP. Monoclonal antibodies for the rapid diagnosis of influenza A and B virus infections by immunofluorescence. Lancet 1985; 2:911-914.
621. Berg RA, Yolken RH, Rennard SI, et al. New enzyme immunoassay for measurement of influenza A/Victoria/3/75 virus in nasal washes. Lancet 1980;1:851-853.
622. Espy MJ, Smith TF, Harmon MW, et al. Rapid detection of influenza virus by shell vial assay with monoclonal antibodies. J Clin Microbiol 1986;24:677-679.
623. Chomel JJ, Pardon D, Thouvenot D, Allard JP, Aynard M. Comparison between three rapid methods for direct diagnosis of influenza and the conventional isolation procedure. Biologicals 1991;19:287-292.
624. Bucher DJ, Mikhail A, Popple S, et al. Rapid detection of type A influenza viruses with monoclonal antibodies to the M protein (M1) by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and time-resolved fluoroimmunoassay. J Clin Microbiol 1991; 29:2484-2488.
625. Spada B, Biehler K, Chegas P, Kaye J, Riepenhoff-Talty M. Comparison of rapid immunofluorescence assay to cell culture isolation for the detection of influenza A and B viruses in nasopharyngeal secretions from infants and children. J Virol Methods 1991;33:305-310.
626. Barker WH, Mullooly JP. Influenza vaccination of elderly persons: reduction in pneumonia and influenza hospitalizations and deaths. JAMA 1980;244:2547-2549.
627. Foster DA, Tolsma AN, Newson AF, et al. Influenza vaccine effectiveness in preventing hospitalizations for pneumonia in the elderly. Am J Epidemiol 1992;136:286-307.
628. Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. Prevention and control of influenza: part I, vaccines. Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 1993; 42(RR-6):1-14.
629. Patriarca PA, Weber JA, Parker RA, et al. Risk factors for outbreaks of influenza in nursing homes: a case control study. Am J Epidemiol 1986;124: 114-119.
630. Fox JP, Elveback L, Scott W, Gatewood L,

Ackerman E. Herd immunity: basic concept and relevance to public health immunization practices. Am J Epidemiol 1971;94:171-189.

631. Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. Prevention and control of influenza: part I, vaccines. MMWR 1994;43: (RR-9).
632. Tominack RL, Hayden FG. Rimantadine hydrochloride and amantadine hydrochloride use in influenza A virus infections. Infect Dis Clin North Am 1987;1:459-478.
633. Hall CB, Doli R, Gala CL, et al. Children with influenza A infection: treatment with rimantadine. Pediatrics 1987;80:275-282.
634. Dolin R, Reichman RC, Madore HP, et al. A controlled trial of amantadine and rimantadine prophylaxis of influenza infection. N Engl J Med 1982;307:580-584.
635. Douglas RG. Drug therapy: prophylaxis and treatment of influenza. N Engl J Med 1990; 322:443-450.
636. Younkin SW, Betts RF, Roth FK, et al. Reduction in fever and symptoms in young adults with influenza A/Brazil/78 H1N1 infection after teatment. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1983;23:577-582.
637. Van Voris LP, Betts RF, Hayden FG. Successful treatment of naturally occurring influenza A/USSR/77/H1N1. JAMA 1981;245:1128-1131.
638. Atkinson WL, Arden NH, Patriarca PA, et al. Amantadine prophylaxis during an institutional outbreak of type A(H1N1) influenza. Arch Intern Med 1986;146:1751-1756.
639. O'Donoghue JM, Ray CG, Terry DW Jr, Beaty HN. Prevention of nosocomial influenza infection with amantadine. Am J Epidemiol 1973;97:276-282.
640. Leeming JK. Amantadine hydrochloride and the elderly. Lancet 1969;1:313-314.
641. Postma JU, Tilburg WV. Visual hallucinations and delirium during treatment with amantadine (symmetrel). J Am Geriatr Soc 1975;23:212-215.
642. Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices. Prevention and control of influenza: part II. Antiviral agents. MMWR. In press.
643. Hayden FG, Sperber SJ, Belshe RB, Clover RD, Hay AJ, Pyke S. Recovery of drug-resistant influenza A virus during therapeutic use of rimantadine. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1991;35:1741-1747.
644. Mast EE, Harmon MW, Gravenstein S, et al. Emergence and possible transmission of amantadine-resistant viruses during nursing home outbeaks of influenza A(H3N2). Am J Epidemiol 1991;13:988-997.
645. Hayden FG, Blake RB, Clover RD, Hey AJ, Oakes MG, Soo W. Emergence and apparent transmission of rimantadine-resistant influenza A virus in families. N Engl J Med 1989;321:1696-1702.
646. Hayden FG, Couch RB. Clinical and epidemiological importance of influenza A viruses resistant to amantadine and rimantadine. Rev Med Virol 1992;2:89-96.
647. Monto AS, Arden NH. Implications of viral resistance to amantadine in control of influenza A. Clin Infect Dis 1992;15: 362-367.
648. Fedson DS. Immunizations for health care workers and patients in hospitals. In: Wenzel RP, ed. Prevention and Control of Nosocomial Infection. Baltimore, MD: Williams and Wilkins, 1987:116-174.
649. Valenti WM, Betts RF, Hall CB, Hruska JF, Douglas RG Jr. Nosocomial viral infections: II. Guidelines for prevention and control of respiratory viruses, her- pesviruses, and hepatitis viruses. Infect Control 1981;1:165-178.
650. Williams WW. Guideline for infection control in hospital personnel. Infect Control 1983;4:326-349.
651. Wong ES, Hooton TM. Guideline for prevention of catheter-associated urinary tract infections. Am J Infect Control 1983; 11:28- 33.
652. Simmons BP, Hooton TM, Wong ES, Allen JR. Guideline for prevention of intravascular infections. Infect Control 1982;3:61-72.
653. Simmons BP, Wong ES. Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia. Infect Control 1982;3:327-333.
654. Garner JS. Guideline for prevention of surgical wound infections. Infect Control 1986;7:193-200.
655. Britt MR, Schleupner CJ, Matsumiya S. Severity of underlying disease as a predictor of nosocomial infection. JAMA 1978;239:1047-1051.
656. Conly JM, Hill S, Ross J, Lertzman J, Louie TJ. Handwashing practices in an intensive care unit: the effects of an educational program and its relatioinship to infection rates. Am J Infect Control 1989;17:330-339.
657. Seto WH, Ching TY, Yuen KY, Chu YB, Seto WL. The enhancement of infection control in-service education by ward opinion leaders. Am J Infect Control 1991;19:86-91.
658. Haiduven DJ, DeMaiao TM, Stevens DA. A five-year study of needlestick injuries: significant reduction associated with communication, education, and convenient placement of sharps containers. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1992;13:265-271.
659. Johnson MW, Mitch WE, Heller AH, Spector R. The impact of an educational program on gentamicin use in a teaching hospital. Am J Med 1982;73:9-14.
660. Soumerai SB, Salem-Schatz S, Avorn J, Casteris CS, Ross-Degnan D, Popovsky MA. A controlled trial of educational outreach to improve blood transfusion practice. JAMA 1993;270:961-966.
661. Eisenberg JM. An education program to modify laboratory use by house staff. J Med Educ 1977;52:578-581.
662. Haley RW, Culver DH, White JW, et al. The efficacy of infection surveillance and control programs in preventing nosocomial infections in US hospitals. Am J Epidemiol 1985;121:182-205.
663. Gross AS, Roup B. Role of respiratory assistance devices in endemic nosocomial pneumonia. Am J Med 1981;70:681-685.
664. Hall JC, Tarala RA, Hall JL, Mander J. A multivariate analysis of the risk of pulmonary complications after laparotomy. Chest 1991;99:923-927.
665. Josephson A, Karanfil L, Alonso H, Watson A, Blight J. Risk-specific nosocomial infection rates. Am J Med 1991; 91(suppl 3B): 131S-137S.
666. Freeman J, McGowan JE. Methodologic issues in hospital epidemiology. 1. Rates, case finding and interpretation. Rev Infect Dis 1981;3:658-667.
667. Madison R, Afifi AA. Definition and comparability of nosocomial infection rates. Am J Infect Control 1982;10:49-52.
668. American Hospital Association Committee on Infection within Hospitals. Statement on microbiologic sampling. Hospitals 1974; 48:125-126.
669. Eickhoff TC. Microbiologic sampling. Hospitals 1970;44:86-87.
670. Bond WW, Ott BJ, Franke KA, McCracken JE. Effective use of liquid chemical germicides on medical devices: instrument design problems. In: Block SS, ed. Disinfection, Sterilization, and Preservation. 4th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Lea and Febiger, 1991:1097-1106.
671. McDonald WL, Welch HJ, Keet JE. Antisepsis of endotracheal tubes and face masks. Anesthesiology 1955;16:206.
672. Institute for Health Policy Analysis. Proceedings of International Conference on the Reuse of Disposable Medical Devices in the 1980s. Washington, DC: Georgetown University Medical Center; 1984.

673. Bosomworth PP, Hamelberg W. Effect of sterilization on safety and durability of endotracheal tubes and cuffs. Anesth Analg 1965;44:576-586.
674. Comhaire A, Lamy RM. Contamination rate of sterilized ventilators in an ICU. Crit Care Med 1981;9:546-548.
675. Seto WH, Ching TY, Yuen KY, Lam WK. Evaluating the sterility of disposable wall oxygen humidifiers, during and between use on patients. Infect Control 1990; 11:604-605.
676. Stoler BS. Sterility of a disposable oxygen humidification system. Respir Care 1972;17:572-573.
677. Meehan TP. Sterility in oxygen humidifiers. Respir Tech 1977;14:15-22.
678. Golar SD, Sutherland LLA, Ford GT. Multipatient use of prefilled disposable oxygen humidifiers for up to 30 days: patient safety and cost analysis. Respir Care 1993;38:343-347.
679. Henderson E, Ledgerwood D, Hope KM, et al. Prolonged and multipatient use of prefilled disposable oxygen humidifier bottles: safety and cost. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1993;14:463-468.
680. Cabrera HA. An outbreak of *Serratia marcescens*, and its control. Arch Intern Med 1969;123:650-655.
681. Longfield R, Longfield J, Smith LP, Hyams K, Strohmer ME. Multidose medication vial sterility: an in-use study and a review of the literature. Infect Control 1984;5:165-169.
682. Sheth NK, Post GT, Wisniewski TR, Uttech BV. Multi-dose vials versus single-dose vials: a study in sterility and cost-effectiveness. J Clin Microbiol 1983;17:377-379.
683. Smith PW, Massanari RM. Room humidifiers as the source of *Acinetobacter* infections. JAMA 1977;237:795-797.
684. Moffet HL, Allan D. Survival and dissemination of bacteria in nebulizers and incubators. Am J Dis Child 1967;114:13-20.
685. Berry AJ. Infection control in anesthesia. Anesth Clin North Am 1989;7:967.
686. Larson EL, Eke PI, Laughon BE. Efficacy of alcohol-based hand rinses under frequent-use conditions. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1986;30:542-544.
687. Jones MV, Rowe GB, Jackson B, Pritchard NJ. The use of alcohol paper wipes for routine hand cleansing: results of trials in two hospitals. J Hosp Infect 1986;8:268-274.
688. Ping FC, Oulton JL, Smith JA, Skidmore AG, Jenkins LC. Bacterial filters—are they necessary on anesthetic machines? Anaesth Soc J 1979;26:415-419.
689. Knittle MA, Eitzman DV, Baer H. Role of hand contamination of personnel in the epidemiology of gram-negative nosocomial infections. J Pediatr 1975;86:433-437.
690. Reybrouck G. Role of the hands in the spread of nosocomial infections. J Hosp Infect 1983;41:103-110.
691. Sutter VL, Hurst V, Grossman M, Calonje R. Source and significance of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* in sputum. JAMA 1966;197:854-856.
692. Bernard M, Braunstein N, Stevens R, et al. Incidence of aspiration pneumonia in enteral hyperalimentation. J Parent Enter Nutr 1982;6:588. Abstract.
693. Harvey P, Bell P, Harris O. Accidental intrapulmonary clinifeed. Anesth Analg 1981;36:518-522.
694. Hand R, Kempster M, Levy J, Rogol R, Spirin P. Inadvertent transbronchial insertion of narrow-bore feeding tubes into the pleural space. JAMA 1984;251:2396-2397.
695. Dorsey J, Cogordan J. Nasotracheal intubation and pulmonary parenchymal perforation: an unusual complication of nasoenteral feeding with small-diameter feeding tubes. Chest 1985;87:131-132.
696. Heymsfield SB, Bethel RA, Ansley JD, Nixon DW, Rudman D. Enteral hyperalimentation: an alternative to central venous hyperalimentation. Ann Intern Med 1979;90:63-71.
697. Bury KD, Jambanathan G. Effects of elemental diets on gastric emptying and gastric secretion in man. Am J Surg 1974;127:59-64.
698. Douglas RG. Influenza in man. In: Kilbourne ED, ed. The Influenza Viruses and Influenza. New York, NY: New York Academy Press, 1975.
699. Holzapfel L, Chevret S, Madinier G, et al. Influence of long-term oro- or nasotracheal intubation on nosocomial maxillary sinusitis and pneumonia: results of a prospective, randomized clinical trial. Crit Care Med 1993;21:1132-1138.
700. Cerra FB, Maddaus MA, Dunn DL, et al. Selective gut decontamination reduces nosocomial infections and length of stay but not mortality or organ failure in surgical intensive care unit patients. Arch Surg 1992;127:163-169.
701. Nayman J. Measurement and control of postoperative pain. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 1979;61:419-426.
702. Roberts NJ, Douglas RG. Gentamicin use and *Pseudomonas* and *Serratia* resistance: effect of a surgical prophylaxis regimen. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1978; 13:214-220.
703. Gentinello L, Thompson DA, Tonnesen AS, et al. Effect of a rotating bed on the incidence of pulmonary complications in critically ill patients. Crit Care Med 1988; 16:783-786.
704. Ruf B, Schurmann D, Horbach I, et al. Prevalence and diagnosis of Legionella pneumonia: a 3-year prospective study with emphasis on application of urinary antigen detection. J Infect Dis 1990;162:1341-1348.
705. Redd SC, Cohen ML. Legionella in water: what should be done? JAMA 1987;257: 1221-1222.
706. Woo AH, Yu VL, Goetz A. Potential in-hospital modes of transmission of *Legionella pneumophila*: demonstration experiments for dissemination by showers, humidifiers, and rinsing of ventilation bag apparatus. Am J Med 1986;80:567-573.
707. World Health Organization. Environmental Aspects of the Control of Legionellosis. 14th ed. Copenhagen, Denmark: World Health Organization; 1986:118-120.
708. Bhopal RS, Barr G. Maintenance of cooling towers following two outbreaks of Legionnaires' disease in a city. Epidemiol Infect 1990;104:29-38.
709. Pannuti C, Gingrich R, Pfaller MA, Kao C, Wenzel RP. Nosocomial pneumonia in patients having bone marrow transplant: attributable mortality and risk factors. Cancer 1992;69:2653-2662.
710. Mahoney DH, Steuber CP, Starling KA, Barrett FF, Goldberg J, Fernbach DJ. An outbreak of aspergillosis in children with acute leukemia. J Pediatr 1979;95:70-72.
711. Rogers TR. Infections in hematologic malignancy. Infect Control 1986;7S:124-125.
712. McWhinney PHM, Kibbler CC, Hamon MD, et al. Progress in the diagnosis and management of aspergillosis in bone marrow transplantation: 13 years. J Infect Dis 1993;17:397-404.
713. Staib F. Ecological and epidemiological aspects of aspergilli pathogenic for man and animal in Berlin (West). Zbl Bakt Hyg A 1984;257:240-245.
714. Staib F, Folkens U, Tompak B, Abel T, Thiel D. A comparative study of antigens of Aspergillus fumigatus isolates from patients and soil of ornamental plants in the immunodiffusion test. Zbl Bakt Hyg I Abt Orig A 1978;242:93-99.

715. Lie TS, Hofer M, Hohnke C, et al. Aspergillose nach lebertransplantation als hospitalismusinfekion. Dtsch Med Wschr 1987;112:297-301.
716. Bodey GP. Current status of prophylaxis of infection with protected environments. Am J Med 1984;76:678-684.
717. Grossman ME, Fithian EC, Behrens C, Bissinger J, Fracaro M, Neu HC. Primary cutaneous aspergillosis in six leukemic children. J Am Acad Dermatol 1985;12:313-318.
718. Walsh TJ, Van Cutsem J, Polak AM, Graybill JR. Immunomodulation and antifungal treatment of experimental invasive candidosis, histoplasmosis, and aspergillosis. Recent advances and concepts. J Med Vet Mycol 1992;30(suppl 1):225-240.
719. Nichol KL. Preventing influenza: the physician's role. Seminars Respir Infect 1992;7: 71-77.
720. Pachucki CT, Lentino JR, Jackson CG. Attitudes and behavior of health care personnel regarding the use and efficacy of influenza vaccine. J Infect Dis 1985; 151:1170-1171.
721. Fedson DS, Kessler HA. A hospital-based influenza immunization program, 1977-78. Am J Public Health 1983;73:442-445.
722. Williams WW, Hickson MA, Kane MA, et al. Immunization policies and vaccine coverage among adults. Ann Intern Med 1988;108:616-625.
723. Arden N, Patriarca PA, Kendal AP. Experiences in the use and efficacy of inactivated vaccines in nursing homes. In: Kendal AP, Patriarca PA, eds. Options for the Control of Influenza. New York, NY: Alan Liss, 1985:155-168.
724. Ksiazek TG, Olson JG, Irving GS, Settle CS, White R, Petrusso R. An influenza outbreak due to A/USSR/77-like (H1N1) virus aboard a US navy ship. Am J Epidemiol 1980;112:487-494.
725. Berlinberg CD, Weingarten SR, Bolton LB, Waterman SH. Occupational exposure to influenza—introduction of an index case to a hospital. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 1989;10:70-73.
726. Askonas BA, McMichael AJ, Webster RG. The immune response to influenza viruses and the problem of protection against infection. In: Beare AS, ed. Basic and Applied Influenza Research. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1982:159-182.
727. Schulze-Robbecke R, Jung KD, Pullman H, Hundgeburth J. Control of *Legionella pneumophila* in a hospital hot water system. Zbl Hyg 1990;190:84-100.
728. Groothis DG, Veenendaal HR, Dijkstra HL. Influence of temperature on the number of *Legionella pneumophila* in hot water systems. J Appl Bacteriol 1985; 59:529-536.
729. Colbourne JS, Pratt DJ, Smith MG, Fisher-Hoch SP, Harper D. Water fittings as sources of *Legionella pneumophila* in a hospital plumbing system. Lancet 1984;1:210-213.
730. Environmental Protection Agency. National interim primary drinking water regulations: control of trihalothanes in drinking water. Final rules. Federal Register 1979;44:68624-68705.
731. Environmental Protection Agency. National interim primary drinking water regulations: trihalothanes. Federal Register 1983;48:8406-8414.
732. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Procedures for the Recovery of Legionella from the Environment. Atlanta, GA: Public Health Service, 1992:1-13.
733. Alary MA, Joly JR. Comparison of culture methods and an immunofluorescence assay for the detection of *Legionella pneumophila* in domestic hot water devices. Curr Microbiol 1992;25:19-25.
734. Vickers RM, Stout JE, Yu VL. Failure of a diagnostic monoclonal immunofluorescent reagent to detect *Legionella pneumophila* in environmental samples. Appl Environ Microbiol 1990;56:2912-2914.
735. Fluornoy DJ, Belobraydic KA, Silberg SL, Lawrence CH, Guthrie PJ. False positive *Legionella pneumophila* direct immunofluorescent monoclonal antibody test caused by Bacillus cereus spores. Diag Microbiol Infect Dis 1988;9:123-125.
736. Bej AK, Mahbubani MH, Atlas RM. Detection of viable *Legionella pneumophila* in water by polymerase chain reaction and gene probe methods. Appl Environ Microbiol 1991;57:597-600.
737. Barbaree JM, Gorman GW, Martin WT, Fields BS, Morrill WE. Protocol for sampling environmental sites for Legionellae. Appl Environ Microbiol 1987;53:1454-1458.

APPENDIX A

EXAMPLES OF SEMICRITICAL ITEMS* USED ON THE RESPIRATORY TRACT

Anesthesia device or equipment including:
- face mask or tracheal tube
- inspiratory and expiratory tubing
- Y-piece
- reservoir bag
- humidifier

Breathing circuits of mechanical ventilators
Bronchoscopes and their accessories, except for biopsy forceps and specimen brush, which are considered critical items and are sterilized before reuse.
Endotracheal and endobronchial tubes
Laryngoscope blades
Mouthpieces and tubings of pulmonary function testing equipment
Nebulizers and their reservoirs
Oral and nasal airways
Probes of CO_2 analyzers, air-pressure monitors
Resuscitation bags
Stylets
Suction catheters
Temperature sensors

*Items that directly or indirectly contact mucous membranes of the respiratory tract. They are sterilized or subjected to high-level disinfection before reuse.

APPENDIX B

MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES TO DECREASE SURVIVAL AND MULTIPLICATION OF *LEGIONELLA* SPP. IN POTABLE-WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

1. Providing Water at ≥ 50°C at All Points in the Heated Water System, Including the Taps

This requires that water in calorifiers (water heaters) be maintained at ≥ 60°C. In the United Kingdom, where maintenance of tap-water temperatures at ≥ 50°C in hospitals has been mandated, installation of blending or mixing valves at or near taps to reduce the water temperature to ≤ 43°C has been recommended in certain settings to reduce the risk of scald injury to patients, visitors, and health-care workers.[447] However, *Legionella* spp. can multiply even in short segments of pipe containing water at this temperature. Increasing the flow rate from the hot-water-circulation system may help lessen the likelihood of water stagnation and cooling.[450,727] Insulation of plumbing to ensure delivery of cold (< 20°C) water to water heaters (and to cold-water outlets) may diminish the opportunity for bacterial multiplication.[392] "Dead legs" or capped spurs within the plumbing system provide areas of stagnation and cooling to < 50°C regardless of the circulating-water temperature; these segments may

need to be removed to prevent colonization.[728] Rubber fittings within plumbing systems have been associated with persistent colonization, and replacement of these fittings may be required for *Legionella* spp. eradication.[729]

II. Continuous Chlorination To Maintain Concentrations of Free Residual Chlorine at 1-2 mg/L at the Tap

This requires the placement of flow-adjusted, continuous injectors of chlorine throughout the water distribution system. Adverse effects of continuous chlorination include accelerated corrosion of plumbing resulting in system leaks and production of potentially carcinogenic trihalomethanes. However, when levels of free residual chlorine are below 3 mg/L, trihalomethane levels are kept below the maximum "safety level" recommended by the Environmental Protection Agency.[448,730,731]

APPENDIX C

CULTURING ENVIRONMENTAL SPECIMENS FOR *LEGIONELLA* SPP.

I. Recommended Procedure for Collecting and Culturing Environmental Specimens for Legionella Spp.[732]

A. Collect water (if possible, one-liter samples) in sterile, screw-top bottles, preferably containing sodium thiosulfate at a concentration of 0.5 cc of 0.1N solution of sample water. (Sodium thiosulfate inactivates any residual halogen biocide).

B. Collect culture-swabs of the internal surfaces of faucets, aerators, and showerheads; in a sterile, screw-top container, such as a 50-cc plastic centrifuge tube, submerge each swab in 5-10 cc of sample water taken from the same device from which the sample was obtained.

C. As soon as possible after collection, water samples and swabs should be transported to and processed in a laboratory proficient at culturing water specimens for *Legionella* spp. Samples may be transported at room temperature but must be protected from temperature extremes.

D. Test samples for the presence of *Legionella* spp. by using semi-selective culture media. Use standard laboratory procedures. (Detection of *Legionella* spp. antigen by the direct fluorescent antibody technique is not suitable for environmental samples.[733-735] In addition, the use of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for identification of *Legionella* spp. is not recommended until more data on the sensitivity and specificity of this procedure are available.[736]

II. Possible Samples and Sampling Sites for Legionella Spp. in the Hospital[737]

Water Samples

- Potable Water System
  - Incoming water main
  - Water softener
  - Holding tanks/cisterns
  - Water heater tanks (inflow and outflow sites)
  - Potable water outlets (faucets or taps, showers) especially outlets located in or near case-patients' rooms
- Cooling Tower/Evaporative Condenser
  - Make-up water (water added to system to replace water lost by evaporation, drift, and leakage
  - Basin (area under tower for collection of cooled water)
  - Sump (section of basin from which cooled water returns to heat source)
  - Heat source (eg, chillers)
- Other Sources
- Humidifiers (Nebulizers)
  - Bubblers for oxygen
  - Water used for respiratory therapy equipment
  - Decorative fountains
  - Irrigation equipment
  - Fire sprinkler system (if recently used)
  - Whirlpools/spas

Swabs

- Potable Water System
  - Faucets (proximal to aerators)
  - Faucet aerators
  - Shower heads
- Cooling Towers
  - Internal components (eg, splash bars and other fill surfaces)
  - Areas with visible biofilm accumulation

APPENDIX D

PROCEDURE FOR CLEANING COOLING TOWERS AND RELATED EQUIPMENT

(Adapted from the Emergency Protocol in Control of *Legionella* spp. in Cooling Towers: Summary Guidelines.[464])

I. Preparatory to Chemical Disinfection and Mechanical Cleaning

A. Provide protective equipment to workers who would perform the disinfection, to prevent their exposure to (a) chemicals used for disinfection and (b) aerosolized water containing *Legionella* spp. Protective equipment may include full-length protective clothing, boots, gloves, goggles, and a full- or half-face mask that combines high efficiency particulate air filter and chemical cartridges to protect against airborne chlorine levels of up to 10 mg/L.

B. Shut off cooling-tower.

1. If possible, shut off heat source.

2. Shut off fans, if present, on the cooling tower/evaporative condenser (CT/EC).

3. Shut off the system blowdown (purge) valve. Shut off automated blowdown controller, if present, and set system controller to manual.

4. Keep make-up water valves open.

5. Close building air-intake vents within at least 30 meters of the CT/EC until after the cleaning procedure is complete.

6. Continue operating pumps for water circulation through the CT/EC.

II. Chemical Disinfection

A. Add fast-release, chlorine-containing disinfectant in pellet, granular, or liquid form, and follow safety instructions on the product label. Examples of disinfectants include sodium hypochlorite (NaOCl) or calcium hypochlorite $Ca[OCl]_2$ calculated to achieve initial free residual chlorine (FRC) of 50 mg/L, ie, 3.0 lbs (1.4 kg) industrial grade NaOCl (12-15% available Cl) per 1,000 gallons of CT/EC water; 10.5 lbs (4.8 kg) domestic grade NaOCl (3-5% available Cl) per 1,000 gallons of CT/EC water; or 0.6 lb (0.3 kg) $Ca(OCl)_2$ per 1,000 gallons of CT/EC water. If significant biodeposits are present, additional chlorine may be required. If the volume of water in CT/EC is not known, it can be estimated (in gallons) by multiplying the recirculation rate in gallons/minute by 10, or the refrigeration capacity in tons by 30. Other appropriate compounds may be suggested by a water-treatment specialist.

B. Record the type and quality of all chemicals used for disinfection, exact time the chemicals are added to the system, and time and results of measurements of FRC and pH.

C. Add dispersant simultaneously with or within 15 minutes of adding disinfectant. The dispersant is best added by first dissolving it in water and adding the solution to a turbulent zone in the water system. Examples of low or non-foaming, silicate-based dispersants are: automatic-dishwasher compounds, such as Cascade* or Calgonite* or an equivalent product. Dispersants are added at 10-25 lbs. (4.5-11.25 kg) per 1,000 gallons of CT/EC water.

D. After adding disinfectant and dispersant, continue circulating the water through the system. Monitor FRC by using an FRC-measuring device, such as a swimming pool test kit, and measure the pH with a pH meter every 15 minutes for 2 hours.

---

*The use of product names is for identification only and does not imply endorsement by the Public Health Service or the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

Add chlorine as needed to maintain FRC at ≥ 10 mg/L. Since the biocidal effect of chlorine is reduced at higher pH, adjust pH to 7.5-8.0. The pH may be lowered by using any acid (eg, muriatic acid or sulfuric acid used for maintenance of swimming pools) that is compatible with the treatment chemicals.

E. Two hours after adding disinfectant and dispersant or after FRC level is stable at ≥ 10 mg/L, monitor at 2-hour intervals and maintain FRC at ≥ 10 mg/L for 24 hours.

F. After FRC level has been maintained at ≥ 10 mg/L for 24 hours, drain the system. CT/EC water may be safely drained to the sanitary sewer. Municipal water and sewerage authorities should be contacted regarding local regulations. If a sanitary sewer is not available, consult local or state authorities (eg, Department of Natural Resources) regarding disposal of water. If necessary, the drain-off may be dechlorinated by dissipation or by chemical neutralization with sodium bisulfite.

G. Refill system with water and repeat procedure outlined in steps 2-6 in I-B above.

III. Mechanical Cleaning

A. After water from the second chemical disinfection has been drained, shut down the CT/EC.

B. Inspect all water contact areas for sediment, sludge, and scale. Using brushes and/or a low-pressure water hose, thoroughly clean all CT/EC water contact areas including basin, sump, fill, spray nozzles, and fittings. Replace components as needed.

C. If possible, clean CT/EC water contact areas within the chillers.

IV. After Mechanical Cleaning

A. Fill the system with water, and add chlorine to achieve FRC level of 10 mg/L.

B. Circulate the water for one hour, then open blowdown valve and flush the entire system until the water is free of turbidity.

C. Drain the system.

D. Open any air intake vents that were closed prior to cleaning.

E. Fill the system with water. CT/EC may be put back into service using an effective water-treatment program.

Appreciation of Reviewers

The Editors of RESPIRATORY CARE are deeply grateful to the following persons who have contributed their expertise and time to the reviewing of manuscripts and OPEN FORUM abstracts during the past year.

Alexander B Adams MPH RRT
Robert J Albin MD
John Arnold MD
Jeanette Asselin BA RRT
R Randall Baker PhD RRT RCPT
Tom Barnes EdD RRT
Ralph E Bartel MEd RRT
David M Barton PhD RRT
DE Bebout PhD RRT
Akmil Bidani MD PhD
Morris I Bierman MD
Howard J Birenbaum MD
Paul Blanch RRT
Susan Blonshine RPFT RRT
Karen M Boudin MA RRT
Lynne Bower RRT
Richard D Branson RRT
Ralph Braunschweig MD
Robert A Brown BS RPFT RRT
James E Burchfield BS RRT RCP
William "Chuck" Burke PhD RRT
Robert S Campbell RRT
Waldemar A Carlo MD
Bartolome R Celli MD
Robert L Chatburn RRT
Michelle Cloutier MD
Sherry E Courtney MD MS
Jack Covington RRT
Joseph Custer MD
Robert Czachowski PhD
Michael Czervinske RRT
Michael Decker CRTT
Bryan DeHaven RRT
Daniel A Detwiler PhD
Patricia Ann Doorley MS RRT
Crystal L Dunlevy EdD RRT
Patrick J Dunne MEd RRT
David J Durand MD
Charles G Durbin Jr MD
Thomas D East PhD
Nemir Eid MD
Donald R Elton MD
Thomas W Feeley MD
Robert R Fluck Jr MS RRT
Sam P Giordano MBA RRT
Wesley M Granger PhD RRT
John M Graybeal CRTT
Christopher G Green MD
Ken Hargett RRT
Robert Harwood MSA RRT
Zvi J Herschman MD
Dean Hess PhD RRT
Mark Heulitt MD
Nicholas S Hill MD
Christopher Hirsch MPH RRT
James M Hurst MD
Charles G Irvin PhD
Kelly Jager RRT
Michael Jastremski MD
Jay A Johannigman MD
Arthur Jones EdD RRT
Michael R Jones RRT
Robert M Kacmarek PhD RRT
Thomas J Kallstrom RRT
Marcia Kemper BA CRTT
Lucy Kester MBA RRT
Michael T Kochansky RPFT
Anthony L Kovac MD
Monica Kraft MD
Bruce Krieger MD
Gretchen Lawrence RRT
Robert M Lewis BA RRT
John A Lund BA RRT
Neil R MacIntyre MD
Michael J Mahlmeister MS RCP RRT
Barry Make MD
Cindy Malinowski MA RRT
Harald Mang MD
John J Marini MD
Hugh S Mathewson MD
Michael McPeck BS RRT
Jon Meliones MD
Shelley C Mishoe PhD RRT
Frank Monaco BA RRT
Jon Nilsestuen PhD RRT
Walter J O'Donohue MD
Nathan Pace MD
John M Palmisano RRT
Shirley M Pfister RN MS RRT
Stephen Picca MD
Fran Piedalue BS RRT
David J Pierson MD
Alan Plummer MD
Joseph L Rau Jr PhD RRT
Robert J Richards MD
David Romagnoli MS RRT
Bonnie Rosolowski RRT
Gregg Ruppel MEd RRT
John Sabo MS RRT
H Steven Sadowsky RRT MS PT CCS
John Salyer BS RRT
Gerardo S San Pedro MD
Warren G Sanborn PhD
Allan B Saposnick MS RRT
Catherine SH Sassoon MD
Paul A Selecky MD
Richard Sheldon MD
John W Shigeoka MD
Gerard A Silvestri MD
Mark Simmons MSEd RPFT RRT
Joseph G Sorbello MS RRT
Peter Southorn MD
Alex Stenzler RRT
Dennis C Stevens MD MS
Paul C Stillwell MD
James K Stoller MD
Jon L Swegarden BS RRT
Arthur A Taft MHS RRT
Rozanna Templin
John E Thompson RRT
Antonius L Van Kessel BSc RCP
Jeffrey S Vender MD
James Volpe III MEd RRT
Jack Wanger MBA RRT RPFT
Jeffrey J Ward MEd RRT
Robert H Warren MD
Ken Watson RRT
Robert R Weilacher RRT
Martin C Wilkins BS RRT
Barbara G Wilson MEd RRT
Mark Wilson MD
Theodore J Witek DrPH RPFT
Robert Wolfe PhD

Author Index to Volume 39 (1994)

Abbasi A, *coauthor*: Blonshine **39(4):585**

Adams AB: Work of breathing—how to define and when to measure? **39(9):883** *editorial*

Akingbola OA, *coauthor*: Palmisano **39(7):725**

Amundson DE: Nosocomial cutaneous mucormycosis at the site of endotracheal tube taping **39(9):917** *letter*

Anderson SM, *coauthor*: Chatburn **39(11):1039** *research article*

Bach JR & Saporito LR: Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*

Banner MJ, *coauthor*: Blanch **39(9):897**

Barnes TA & Durbin CG Jr: Research on resuscitation by RCPs is long overdue **39(7):712** *editorial*

Becker E: A "statistically significant" response **39(2):153** *letter*

Benton G: review of Physiotherapy in Respiratory Care—A Problem-Solving Approach [Hough] **39(5):584** *book review*

Bishop MJ, *coauthor*: Wollam **39(7):730**

Blanch PB & Banner MJ: A new respiratory monitor that enables accurate measurement of work of breathing: a validation study **39(9):897** *research article*

Blanch PB & Desautels DA: Chatburn's ventilator classification scheme—a poor substitute for the classic approach **39(7):762** *letter*

Blonshine S & Abbasi A: review of Exercise Testing and Exercise Prescription for Special Cases—Theoretical Basis and Clinical Application, 2nd edition [Skinner, ed] **39(5):585** *book review*

Boston LM, *coauthor*: Detwiler **39(3):204**

Branson RD, *coauthor*: Davis **39(6):611**

Branson RD: Decreasing the work of breathing—how much of a change is important? **39(3):187** *editorial*

Branson RD: Flow-triggering systems **39(2):138** *Kittredge's Corner* ASRL **39(6):671**

Branson RD: response to Monast **39(6):671**

Brougher P: CPGs 1994—where are we? where have we been? where are we going? **39(12):1146** *editorial*

Brougher P: TB guidelines deserve our attention, too **39(12): 1154** *editorial*

Buck C & Southorn PA: Who should perform endotracheal intubation? A summary of issues **39(1):17** *editorial*

Campbell RS: Managing the patient-ventilator system—system checks and circuit changes **39(3):227** *symposium paper*

Carlson J, *coauthor*: Zyla **39(1):30**

Caruso FJ, *coauthor*: Decker **39(10):1001**

Celli BR: Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases—legs, arms, and breathing retraining **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*

Chappell TR: review of Snoring and Obstructive Sleep Apnea, 2nd edition [Fairbanks DNF & Fujita S] **39(11):1057** *book review*

Chatburn RL & Anderson SM: Controlling carbon dioxide delivery during mechanical ventilation **39(11):1039** *research article*

Chatburn RL et al: Respiratory system behavior during mechanical inflation with constant inspiratory pressure and flow **39(10):979** *research article*

Chatburn RL: response to Blanch & Desautels **39(7):762**

Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX—"tell it like it was" **39(6):657** *Classic Reprint*

Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX—"the courage to fail" **39(10):989** *Classic Reprint*

Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX—what makes the sky blue? **39(3):237** *Classic Reprint*

Comroe JH Jr: RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX—who's who in world history **39(8):850** *Classic Reprint*

Courtney SE, *coauthor*: Weber **39(10):973**

Crausman RS & Irvin CG: review of Pulmonary Function—A Guide for Clinicians [Laszlo] **39(10):1003** *book review*

Crogan KJ, *coauthor*: Stubbs **39(10):968**

Custer JR, *coauthor*: Palmisano **39(7):725**

Custer JR, *coauthor*: Palmisano **39(9):917**

Davis K Jr et al: A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model **39(6):611** *research article*

De Kler R: review of English and Spanish: Medical Words and Phrases [Rose] **39(5):586** *book review*

Decker MJ & Caruso FJ: review of ABC of Sleep Disorders [Shapiro, ed] **39(10):1001** *book review*

Decker MJ et al: Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*

Dedman S & Heulitt MJ: review of Dailey's Notes on Blood, 2nd edition [Dailey] **39(2):147** *book review*

Del Bufalo C et al: Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation **39(1):21** *research article*
Desautels DA, *coauthor*: Blanch **39(7):762**
Detwiler DA et al: Evaluation of an educational program for asthmatic children ages 4-8 and their parents **39(3):204** *research article*
Douglas KA & Polamreddy R: Idiopathic vocal cord paralysis in a newborn infant **39(6):630** *case report*
Dunlevy CL & Parekh S: review of Medical Terminology Simplified—A Programmed Learning Approach by Body Systems [Gylys] **39(8):853** *book review*
Dunlevy CL, *contributor*: Diseases of the heart **39(2):145** *Historical Notes*
Dunne PJ: Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care **39(4):309** ***[correction on 39(5):587]*** *conference proceedings*
Durbin CG Jr, *coauthor*: Barnes **39(7):712**
Durbin CG Jr, *coauthor*: Vega **39(6):646**
Durbin CG Jr: Monitoring gas exchange—clinical effectiveness and cost considerations **39(2):123** *symposium paper*
Eagleton LE, *coauthor*: Shrake **39(7):715**
El Khatib MF, *coauthor*: Chatburn **39(10):979**
England KR, *coauthor*: Shrake **39(7):715**
Farias EM: Partial- vs nonrebreathing masks **39(2):154** *letter*
Fasano L, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **39(1):21**
Fenwick J, *coauthor*: Madsen **39(6):623**
Fischer RJ, *coauthor*: Tobia **39(3):195**
Fletcher EC: Controversial indications for long-term oxygen therapy **39(4):333** *conference proceedings*
Gehling S: Pulmonary pathology following intra-abdominal surgery **39(1):70** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Giacobbie D, *coauthor*: Amundson **39(9):917**
Gilmartin M: Transition from the intensive care unit to home—patient selection and discharge planning **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*
Giordano SP: Current and future role of respiratory care practitioners in home care **39(4):321** *conference proceedings*
Gleaton LE & Ognibene FP: Airway compromise in two patients with aplastic anemia and coagulation abnormalities **39(11):1051** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
González-Lawless CL: review of Pulmonary Diseases and Disorders, 2nd edition [Fishman, ed] **39(2):148** *book review*
Goodill J, *coauthor*: Padman **39(7):736**
Graybeal JM & Russell GB: Relative agreement between Raman and mass spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide **39(3):190** *research article*
Gunella G, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **39(1):21**
Habib DM, *coauthor*: Thomas **39(9):912**
Hardy KA: A review of airway clearance—new techniques, indications, and recommendations **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*
Harrigan MR: A large thin-walled cavity with an air-fluid level on chest radiograph **39(10):994** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Harwood R et al: A comparison of 3 methods of metered dose bronchodilator delivery to a mechanically ventilated adult lung model **39(9):886** *research article*
Harwood R: review of Critical Care [Civetta, Taylor, Kirby, eds] **39(3):251** *book review*
Heffner JE & Klein JS: Chest imaging in critically ill patients—analysis of clinical value **39(1):51** *symposium paper*
Henke D: Ventilator-circuit-change intervals—one center's observations **39(10):1004** *letter*
Hess D, *coauthor*: Kacmarek **39(9):881**
Hess D: Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation—delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness **39(2):105** *symposium paper*
Hess DH: Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia and ventilator circuits: time for a change? **39(12):1149** *editorial*
Heulitt MJ, *coauthor*: Dedman **39(2):147**
Hildebrandt J: response to Piedalue letter **39(6):669**
Hill NS: Negative pressure ventilation for facilitation of weaning from mechanical ventilation—back to the future? **39(1):19** *editorial*
Hill NS: Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*
Hill TV, *coauthor*: Valeri **39(8):793**
Hoffman LA: Novel strategies for delivering oxygen—reservoir cannula, demand flow, & transtracheal oxygen administration **39(4):363** *conference proceedings*
Hoffman LA: Timing of tracheotomy—what is the best approach? **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*
Holland T, *coauthor*: Jager **39(9):892**
Howard WR: Administration of air when oxygen was intended **39(6):669** *letter*
Hughes K, *coauthor*: O'Riordan **39(12):1162**
Ilowite JS, *coauthor*: Perry **39(11):1047**
Irvin CG, *coauthor*: Crausman **39(10):1003**
Irvin CG, *coauthor*: Wanger **39(1):67**
Irvin CG: review of Lung Function—Assessment and Application in Medicine, 5th edition [Cotes JE] **39(11):1057** *book review*
Jager K et al: Flow-triggering does not decrease the work of breathing and pressure-time product in COPD patients **39(9):892** *research article*
Jager K, *coauthor*: Madsen **39(6):623**
Jones A: An introduction to meta-analysis **39(1):34** *research article*
Judson MA & Sahn SA: Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
Kacmarek RM & Hess D: Routine measurement of work of breathing—is it necessary? **39(9):881** *editorial*
Kacmarek RM: Home mechanical ventilatory assistance for infants **39(5):550** *conference proceedings*
Karscz K, *coauthor*: Weber **39(10):973**
Kasper CL, *coauthor*: Wollam **39(7):730**
Kaye B: review of Comprehensive Perinatal and Pediatric Respiratory Care [Whitaker] **39(8):853** *book review*
Kaye B: review of The Diagnosis and Management of Paediatric Respiratory Disease [Dinwiddie] **39(8):854** *book review*
Keenan J & Salyer JW: Evaluation of a prototype expiratory-phase aerosol controller during simulated pediatric volume-controlled ventilation **39(6):617** *research article*
Kirmse M, *coauthor*: Schmitt **39(9):906**
Klein JS, *coauthor*: Heffner **39(1):51**
Kleinman LI, *coauthor*: O'Riordan **39(12):1162**

Kovac AL, *coauthor*: Mathewson **39(8):837**
Kovac AL: review of Anyone Can Intubate, 3rd ed [Whitten] **39(10):1002** *book review*
Lange P, et al: Hemoptysis and dyspnea in a young woman **39(3):242** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Langenback EG, *coauthor*: Perry **39(11):1047**
Laskowski D, *coauthor*: Lange **39(3):242**
Layon AJ, *coauthor*: Nelson **39(6):635**
LeBouef LL: One respiratory care department's contribution to the 'bottom line' **39(7):740** *special article*
Lee T-S & Wu Y: Bezold-Jarisch reflex—an indication for closed-system suctioning **39(6):627** *case report*
Leger P: Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation at home **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*
Levy PS, *coauthor*: Weber **39(10):973**
Madsen D et al: Expiratory hold vs clamping/transducing for intrinsic peep determination in the Siemens 900C **39(6):623** *research article*
Make B: Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*
Mang H, *coauthor*: Schmitt **39(9):906**
Marley RA: review of Monitoring in Respiratory Care [Kacmarek, Hess, & Stoller, eds] **39(2):149** *book review*
Martin DW: Commentary on RCP smoking behavior **39(2):152** *letter*
Mason JW et al: Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer **39(12):1157** *original research*
Mathewson HS & Kovac AL: Update on inhaled steroids **39(8):837** *Drug Capsule*
Mathewson HS: Drugs for pulmonary mycoses **39(6):652** *Drug Capsule*
Mathewson HS: review of Drugs and the Lung [Page & Metzger, eds] **39(6):667** *book review*
Mathewson HS: review of Pharmacology and Therapeutics in Respiratory Care [Witek & Schachter] **39(12):1257** *book review*
McArdle P: review of Pulmonary Care of the Surgical Patient [Hanowell & Junod, eds] **39(6):668** *book review*
McCarthy K, *coauthor*: Lange **39(3):242**
McPeck M: Aerosol research—how should we skin this cat? **39(12):1155** *editorial*
Meredith RL et al: Is our educational system adequately preparing respiratory care practitioners for therapist-driven protocols? **39(7):709** *editorial*
Millard MW & Lawrence G: review of Bronchial Asthma—Mechanisms and Therapeutics, 3rd edition [Weiss & Stein, eds] **39(2):148** *book review*
Miller D & Wilson J: PFT Corner #52—cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative evaluation of patients with lung cancer **39(7):757** *PFT Corner*
Miller WC, *coauthor*: Mason **39(12):1157**
Milligan S, *coauthor*: Weber **39(7):746** ASRA **39(7):706 & 39(7):709**
Mishoe SC, *coauthor*: Valeri **39(8):793**
Moler FW, *coauthor*: Palmisano **39(7):725**
Moler FW, *coauthor*: Palmisano **39(9):917**
Monast R: An addition to "flow-triggering systems" **39(6):671** *letter* ASRA **39(2):136**
Nadkarni VM, *coauthor*: Padman **39(7):736**
Nastasi M, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **39(1):21**
Nelson E, *coauthor*: Nelson **39(6):635**
Nelson V et al: Cerebral gas embolism **39(6):635** *review article*
O'Riordan TG et al: Predicting aerosol deposition during neonatal ventilation—feasibility of bench testing **39(12):1162** *original research*
Ognibene FP, *coauthor*: Gleaton **39(11):1051**
Padman R et al: Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in end-stage cystic fibrosis—a report of seven cases **39(7): 736** *case report*
Palmisano et al: RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices **39(9):917** *letter*
Palmisano JM et al: Simulated pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation—initial events and response times of a hospital arrest team **39(7):725** *research article*
Parekh S: *coauthor*: Dunlevy **39(8):853**
Perry RJ et al: Clinical comparison of two aerosol holding chambers: ACE vs Aerochamber **39(11):1047** *research article*
Pesce RR, *coauthor*: Smith **39(10):961**
Pfister SM: review of Pulmonary Disease in the Elderly [Mahler, ed] **39(3):252** *book review*
Phillips CJ, *coauthor*: Valeri **39(8):793**
Picca SM: Errors in August CPGs **39(11):1058** *letter*
Piedalue F: Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics **39(6):669** *letter*
Pierson DJ, *coauthor*: Stubbs **39(10):968**
Pierson DJ, *coauthor*: Wollam **39(7):730**
Pierson DJ: Controversies in home respiratory care—conference summary **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Pierson DJ: response to Piedalue letter **39(6):669**
Pilbeam SP, *coauthor*: Meredith **39(7):709**
Polamreddy R, *coauthor*: Douglas **39(6):630**
Porembka D, *coauthor*: Davis **39(6):611**
Quarta CC, *coauthor*: Del Bufalo **39(1):21**
Quenkle JQ, *coauthor*: Shrake **39(7):715**
Rau JL Jr: review of Therapeutics in Respiratory Disease [Barnes, Chung, Evans & Spiro] **39(12):1256** *book review*
Rau JL, *coauthor*: Harwood **39(9):886**
Rendell-Baker L: Commentary on RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX **39(2):154** *letter*
Reno T: review of Neonatal and Pediatric Respiratory Care [Koff, Eitzman, & Neu, eds] **39(8):854** *book review*
Richards RJ: Interpreting decision-analysis models of cost-effectiveness **39(10):1004** *editorial*
Russell GB, *coauthor*: Graybeal **39(3):190**
Sabo JS: review of Bar Code Technology in Health Care—A Tool for Enhancing Quality, Productivity, and Cost Management [Longe & Brenner] **39(2):147** *book review*
Sahn SA, *coauthor*: Judson **39(3):213**
Salyer JW, *coauthor*: Keenan **39(6):617**
Saporito LR, *coauthor*: Bach **39(5):515**
Scaggs JE, *coauthor*: Shrake **39(7):715**
Schiffman P: review of Nocturnal Asthma Mechanisms and Treatments [Martin, ed] **39(6):667** *book review*
Schmitt HJ et al: Unilateral lung disease treated with patient-trig-

gered independent-lung ventilation **39(9):906** *case report*
Shrake KL et al: Benefits associated with a respiratory care assessment-treatment program—results of a pilot study **39(7): 715** *research article*
Simmons M: response to Ziegler & Fried **39(3):254**
Smaldone GC, *coauthor*: O'Riordan **39(12):1162**
Small S, *coauthor*: Mason **39(12):1157**
Smith BL, *coauthor*: Decker **39(4):390**
Smith J, *coauthor*: Thomas **39(9):912**
Smith KJ & Pesce RR: Pulmonary artery catheterization in exacerbations of COPD requiring mechanical ventilation: a cost-effectiveness analysis **39(10):961** *research article*
Smith PG, *coauthor*: Chatburn **39(10):979**
Sorbello JG: An educator calls for a standardization of terms—taking the fat out of respiratory care's alphabet soup **39(7):772** *letter*
Southorn PA, *coauthor*: Buck **39(1):17**
Stoller JK, *coauthor*: Lange **39(3):242**
Stoller JK, *coauthor*: Meredith **39(7):709**
Stoller JK: response to Tietsort & Clifford about their misinterpretation of results from therapist-driven protocol study **39(3):255**
Stoller JK: Travel for the technology-dependent individual **39(4):347** *conference proceedings [**correction on 39(8):796**]*
Stoller JK: Why therapist-driven protocols? a balanced view **39(7):706** *editorial*
Strohl KP, *coauthor*: Decker **39(4):390**
Stubbs CR et al: Interruption of oxygen therapy during intrahospital transport of non-ICU patients—elimination of a common problem through caregiver education **39(10):968** *research article*
Suzor D: More on cigarette smoking and RCPs **39(2):153** *letter*
Taft AA, *coauthor*: Valeri **39(8):793**
Tecklenburg FW, *coauthor*: Thomas **39(9):912**
Thomas NJ et al: The use of exogenous surfactant in three pediatric patients following severe gastric aspiration **39(9):912** *case report*
Thomas-Goodfellow L, *coauthor*: Harwood **39(9):886**
Thomas-Goodfellow L: review of Learning Medical Terminology—A Worktext, 7th edition [Austrin & Austrin] **39(5): 584** *book review*
Tietsort J & Clifford D: Concern about possible misinterpretation of results from therapist-driven protocol study **39(3):255** *letter*
Tietsort J: Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited **39(10):1004** *letter*
Tobia RL & Fischer RJ: A comparison of the CPAP performance characteristics of the Puritan-Bennett 7200a and a prototype continuous pressure-regulating ventilator **39(3):195** *research article*
Tonelli MR: review of House Officer Guide to ICU Care—Fundamentals of Management of the Heart and Lungs, 2nd edition [Elefteriades, Geha, & Cohen] **39(10):1000** *book review*
Tweeddale M, *coauthor*: Jager **39(9):892**
Tweeddale M, *coauthor*: Madsen **39(6):623**
Valeri KL et al: The effect of time and warming on breathing circuit compliance **39(8):793** *research article*
Vega H & Durbin CG Jr: Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Verhulst SJ, *coauthor*: Detwiler **39(3):204**
Von Nessen S, *coauthor*: Padman **39(7):736**
Wanger J & Irvin CG: PFT Corner #51—can't or won't? **39(1): 67** *PFT Corner*
Waugh JB: review of Principles and Practice of Mechanical Ventilation [Tobin MJ, ed] **39(10):1001** *book review*
Webb SA, *coauthor*: Thomas **39(9):912**
Weber K & Milligan S: Therapist-driven protocols—the state of the art **39(7):746** *conference report* ASRA **39(7):706 & 39(7):709**
Weber K et al: Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits **39(10):973** *research article*
Weiss PJ, *coauthor*: Amundson **39(9):917**
Wilson J, *coauthor*: Miller **39(7):757** *PFT Corner*
Wollam PJ et al: Prediction and assessment of bronchodilator response in mechanically ventilated patients **39(7):730** *research article*
Wu Y, *coauthor*: Lee **39(6):627**
Ziegler L & Fried S: Questions on article authored by Simmons, Wynegar, & Hess **39(3):254** *letter*
Zyla EL & Carlson J: Respiratory care practitioners as secondary providers of endotracheal intubation—one hospital's experience **39(1):30** *research article*

Subject Index to Volume 39 (1994)

1- 80	JAN	265-408	APR	681-776	JUL	937-1016	OCT
81-168	FEB	409-592	MAY	777-856	AUG	1017-1128	NOV
169-264	MAR	593-680	JUN	857-936	SEP	1129-1264	DEC

Abdominal Displacement Ventilation

Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts [Hill] **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*

Abstracts: *See* **Open Forum**

Active Cycle of Breathing

A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Adherence, Patient

Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*

Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*

A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Administrative Management: *See* **Management, Administrative**

Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS)

Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics [Piedalue] **39(6):669** *letter* [response by Pierson & Hildebrandt]

Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS): *See* **Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies**

Aerosols & Their Administration

Aerosol research: how should we skin this cat? [McPeck] **39(12):1155** *editorial*

Clinical comparison of two aerosol holding chambers: ACE vs Aerochamber [Perry et al] **39(11):1047** *research article*

Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer [Mason et al] **39(12):1157** *original research*

Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Evaluation of a prototype expiratory-phase aerosol controller during simulated pediatric volume-controlled ventilation [Keenan & Salyer] **39(6):617** *research article*

Predicting aerosol deposition during neonatal ventilation: feasibility of bench testing [O'Riordan et al] **39(12):1162** *original research*

Airflow Obstruction, Measurement of

An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]

Airway Care & Management: ***Also see*** **Intubation** ***and*** **Extubation** ***and*** **Suction, Suctioning, & Suction Devices & Supplies**

Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*

Home mechanical ventilatory assistance for infants [Kacmarek] **39(5):550** *conference proceedings*

Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness [Hess] **39(2):105** *symposium paper*

Nosocomial cutaneous mucormycosis at the site of endotracheal tube taping [Amundson et al] **39(9):917** *letter*

Respiratory care practitioners as secondary providers of endotracheal intubation: one hospital's experience [Zyla & Carlson] **39(1):30** *research article*

A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Timing of tracheotomy: what is the best approach? [Hoffman] **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*

Who should perform endotracheal intubation? a summary of issues [Buck & Southorn] **39(1):17** *editorial*

Airway Obstruction: *See* **Sleep-Disordered Breathing**

Airway Pressure

Chatburn's ventilator classification scheme—a poor substitute for the classic approach [Blanch & Desautels] **39(7):762** *letter* [response by Chatburn]

An educator calls for a standardization of terms: taking the fat out of respiratory care's alphabet soup [Sorbello] **39(7):772** *letter*

Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics [Piedalue] **39(6):669** *letter* [response by Pierson &

Hildebrandt] ASRL **39(7):762**]

Airway Resistance

Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics [Piedalue] **39(6):669** *letter* [response by Pierson & Hildebrandt]

Airways, Artificial

A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model [Davis et al] **39(6):611** *research article*

Altitude Sickness

Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***

Anemia

Airway compromise in two patients with aplastic anemia and coagulation abnormalities [Gleaton & Ognibene] **39(11):1051** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Anesthesia

Commentary on RETROSPECTROSCOPE [Rendell-Baker] **39(2):154** *letter*

Anomalies

Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease [Vega & Durbin] **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

ARDS: *See* Adult Respiratory Distress Syndrome

Arterial Blood Gases/pH

Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Artificial Noses: *See* Heat & Moisture Exchangers

Aspiration

The use of exogenous surfactant in three pediatric patients following severe gastric aspiration [Thomas et al] **39(9):912** *case report*

Assessment

Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***

Benefits associated with a respiratory care assessment-treatment program: results of a pilot study [Shrake et al] **39(7):715** *research article*

Body plethysmography **39(12):1184** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*

Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***

Prediction and assessment of bronchodilator response in mechanically ventilated patients [Wollam et al] **39(7):730** *research article*

Static lung volumes **39(8):830** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(9):916]***

Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Asthma

An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]

Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*

Evaluation of an educational program for asthmatic children ages 4-8 and their parents [Detwiler et al] **39(3):204** *research article*

Update on inhaled steroids [Mathewson & Kovac] **39(8):793** *research article*

Atelectasis

Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease [Vega & Durbin] **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Autogenic Drainage

A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Awards, Publication

1994 ARCF literary awards **39(12):1268**

Barometric Pressure: *See* Pressure, Barometric

Book Reviews (alphabetically by titles)

ABC of Sleep Disorders (Shapiro, ed) [Decker & Caruso] **39(10):1001**

Anyone Can Intubate, 3rd edition (Whitten) [Kovac] **39(10):1002**

Bar Code Technology in Health Care: A Tool for Enhancing Quality, Productivity, and Cost Management (Longe & Brenner) [Sabo] **39(2):147**

Bronchial Asthma: Mechanisms and Therapeutics, 3rd edition (Weiss & Stein, eds) [Millard & Lawrence] **39(2):148**

Comprehensive Perinatal and Pediatric Respiratory Care (Whitaker) [Kaye] **39(8):853**

Critical Care (Civetta, Taylor, & Kirby, eds) [Harwood] **39(3): 251**

Dailey's Notes on Blood, 2nd edition (Dailey) [Dedman & Heulitt] **39(2):147**

The Diagnosis and Management of Paediatric Respiratory Disease (Dinwiddie) [Kaye] **39(8):854**

Drugs and the Lung (Page & Metzger, eds) [Mathewson] **39(6):667**

English and Spanish: Medical Words and Phrases (Rose) [De Kler] **39(5):586**

Exercise Testing and Exercise Prescription for Special Cases: Theoretical Basis and Clinical Application, 2nd edition (Skinner, ed) [Blonshine & Abbasi] **39(5):585**

House Officer Guide to ICU Care: Fundamentals of Management of the Heart and Lungs, 2nd edition (Elefteriades, Geha, & Cohen) [Tonelli] **39(10):1000**

Learning Medical Terminology: A Worktext, 7th edition (Austrin

& Austrin) [Thomas-Goodfellow] **39(5):584**
Lung Function: Assessment and Application in Medicine, 5th edition (Cotes) [Irvin] **39(11):1057**
Medical Terminology Simplified: A Programmed Learning Approach by Body Systems (Gylys) [Dunlevy & Parekh] **39(8):853**
Monitoring in Respiratory Care (Kacmarek, Hess, & Stoller, eds) [Marley] **39(2):149**
Neonatal and Pediatric Respiratory Care (Koff, Eitzman, & Neu, eds) [Reno] **39(8):854**
Nocturnal Asthma Mechanisms and Treatments (Martin, ed) [Schiffman] **39(6):667**
Pharmacology and Therapeutics in Respiratory Care (Witek & Schachter) [Mathewson] **39(12):1267**
Physiotherapy in Respiratory Care: A Problem-Solving Approach (Hough) [Benton] **39(5):584**
Principles and Practice of Mechanical Ventilation (Tobin, ed) [Waugh] **39(10):1001**
Pulmonary Care of the Surgical Patient (Hanowell & Junod, eds) [McArdle] **39(6):668**
Pulmonary Disease in the Elderly (Mahler, ed) [Pfister] **39(3):252**
Pulmonary Diseases and Disorders Companion Handbook (Fishman, ed) [Weber] **39(3):253**
Pulmonary Diseases and Disorders, 2nd edition (Fishman, ed) [González-Lawless] **39(2):148**
Pulmonary Function: A Guide for Clinicians (Laszlo) [Crausman & Irvin] **39(10):1003**
Snoring and Obstructive Sleep Apnea, 2nd edition (Fairbanks & Fujita) [Chappell] **39(11):1057**
Therapeutics in Respiratory Disease (Barnes, Chung, Evans & Spiro) [Rau] **39(12):1266**

Bronchial Hygiene Therapy
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Bronchodilators & Bronchodilatation
An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]
A comparison of 3 methods of metered dose bronchodilator delivery to a mechanically ventilated adult lung model [Harwood et al] **39(9):886** *original research*
Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness [Hess] **39(2):105** *symposium paper*
Prediction and assessment of bronchodilator response in mechanically ventilated patients [Wollam et al] **39(7):730** *research article*

Bronchospasm
Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness [Hess] **39(2):105** *symposium paper*

Calorimeters & Calorimetry
Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Capillary Blood Gas Sampling
Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Capnometry
Relative agreement between Raman and mass spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide [Graybeal & Russell] **39(3):190** *research article*

Carbon Dioxide
Controlling carbon dioxide delivery during mechanical ventilation [Chatburn & Anderson] **39(11):1039** *research article*
Relative agreement between Raman and mass spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide [Graybeal & Russell] **39(3):190** *research article*

Carcinoma
PFT Corner #52—cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative evaluation of patients with lung cancer [Miller & Wilson] **39(7):757** *PFT Corner*

Cardiac Arrest: *See* **Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies**

Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation: *See* **Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies**

Caregiver Education: *See* **Education, Allied Health & Caregiver**

Caregiver Protection
TB control guidelines deserve our attention, too [Brougher] **39(12):1154** *editorial*

Case Reports
Bezold-Jarisch reflex—an indication for closed-system suctioning: a case report [Lee & Wu] **39(6):627** *case report*
Idiopathic vocal cord paralysis in a newborn infant: a case report [Douglas & Polamreddy] **39(6):630** *case report*

Catheters & Catheterization
Interpreting decision-analysis models of cost-effectiveness [Richards] **39(10):959** *editorial*
Pulmonary artery catheterization in exacerbations of COPD requiring mechanical ventilation: a cost-effectiveness analysis [Smith & Pesce] **39(10):961** *research article*

Chest Physical Therapy: *See* **Bronchial Hygiene Therapy**

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD)
Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*
Controversial indications for long-term oxygen therapy [Fletcher] **39(4):333** *conference proceedings*
Flow-triggering does not decrease the work of breathing and pressure-time product in COPD patients [Jager et al] **39(9):892** *research article*
Pulmonary artery catheterization in exacerbations of COPD requiring mechanical ventilation: a cost-effectiveness analysis [Smith & Pesce] **39(10):961** *research article* **ASRA 39(10):959**
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference*

proceedings
Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***
Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation [Del Bufalo et al] **39(1):21** *research article*

"Classic Reprints" Feature
Commentary on RETROSPECTROSCOPE [Rendell-Baker] **39(2):154** *letter*
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: hydrogen, balloons, & pressures [Comroe] **39(1):63**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: "tell it like it was" [Comroe] **39(6):657**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: what makes the sky blue? [Comroe] **39(3):237**
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: "the courage to fail' [Comroe] **39(10):989**

Clinical Instruction: ***See*** **Education, Allied Health & Caregiver**

Clinical Practice Guidelines (prepared & published by the American Association for Respiratory Care): ***See*** **Guidelines, Recommendations, & Statements**

Cold, Common
A "statistically significant" response [Becker] **39(2):153** *letter*

Convention
OPEN FORUM abstracts **39(11):1059**
OPEN FORUM authors **39(11):1116**
Exhibitor list 1994 **39(11):1120**

Compliance, Breathing Circuit
The effect of time and warming on breathing circuit compliance [Valeri et al] **39(8):793** *research article*

Compliance, Patient: ***See*** **Adherence, Patient**

Complications & Side Effects
Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Timing of tracheotomy: what is the best approach? [Hoffman] **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*
Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric Patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Computed Tomography: ***See*** **Imaging**

Conference & Symposium Proceedings
Controversies in home care **39(4):294-400 & 39(5):440-583**
New Horizons IX: cost-effectiveness of respiratory care in the ICU **39(1):50-62, 39(2):104-137, & 39(3):213-236**

Continuing Education
CRCE answers **39(10):1008** *examination key*
CRCE through the Journal **39(8):841** *examination*

Continuous Positive Airway Pressure (CPAP)
Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner [Decker et al] **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*
A comparison of CPAP performance characteristics of the Puritan-Bennett 7200a and a prototype continuous pressure-regulating ventilator [Tobia & Fischer] **39(3):195** *research article*
Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*

Cost Issues
Chest imaging in critically ill patients: analysis of clinical value [Heffner & Klein] **39(1):51** *symposium paper*
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care [Dunne] **39(4):309** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(5):587]***
Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness [Hess] **39(2):105** *symposium paper*
Interpreting decision-analysis models of cost-effectiveness [Richards] **39(10):959** *editorial*
Monitoring gas exchange: clinical effectiveness and cost considerations [Durbin] **39(2):123** *symposium paper*
Novel strategies for delivering oxygen: reservoir cannula, demand flow, & transtracheal oxygen administration [Hoffman] **39(4):363** *conference proceedings*
One respiratory care department's contribution to the 'bottom line' [LeBouef] **39(7):740** *special article*
Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited [Tietsort] **39(10):1004** *letter*
Pulmonary artery catheterization in exacerbations of COPD requiring mechanical ventilation: a cost-effectiveness analysis [Smith & Pesce] **39(10):961** *research article*

Cough
PFT Corner #51—can't or won't? [Wanger & Irvin] **39(1):67** *PFT Corner*
Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics [Piedalue] **39(6):669** *letter* [response by Pierson & Hildebrandt]
A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Curriculum: *See* **Education, Allied Health & Caregiver**
Cystic Fibrosis
Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in end-stage cystic fibrosis: a report of seven cases [Padman et al] **39(7):736** *case report*
A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*
Decompression Sickness
Cerebral gas embolism: a review and update [Nelson et al] **39(6):635** *review article*
Diagnosis: *Also see* **Test Your Radiologic Skill,** *and* **PFT Corner,** *and* **Blood Gas Corner Features**
Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner [Decker et al] **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*
Cerebral gas embolism: a review and update [Nelson et al] **39(6):635** *review article*
Chest imaging in critically ill patients: analysis of clinical value [Heffner & Klein] **39(1):51** *symposium paper*
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Idiopathic vocal cord paralysis in a newborn infant: a case report [Douglas & Polamreddy] **39(6):630** *case report*
Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness [Hess] **39(2):105** *symposium paper*
Discharge Planning
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*
Disease Prevention: *See* **Infection & Infection Control**
Disinfection: *See* **Infection & Infection Control**
"Drug Capsule" Feature
Drugs for pulmonary mycoses [Mathewson] **39(6):652** *Drug Capsule*
Update on inhaled steroids [Mathewson & Kovac] **39(8):837** *Drug Capsule*
Drugs & Drug Therapy
Drugs for pulmonary mycoses [Mathewson] **39(6):652** *Drug Capsule*
Hemoptysis and dyspnea in a young woman [Lange et al] **39(3):242** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
Update on inhaled steroids [Mathewson & Kovac] **39(8):837** *Drug Capsule*
Education, Allied Health & Caregiver
Commentary on RCP smoking behavior [Martin] **39(2):152** *letter*
Interruption of oxygen therapy during intrahospital transport of non-ICU patients: elimination of a common problem through caregiver education [Stubbs et al] **39(10):968** *research article*
Is our educational system adequately preparing respiratory care practitioners for therapist-driven protocols? [Meredith et al] **39(7):709** *editorial* ASRA **39(7):709 & 39(7):746**
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Respiratory care practitioners as secondary providers of endotracheal intubation: one hospital's experience [Zyla & Carlson] **39(1):30** *research article*
Who should perform endotracheal intubation? a summary of issues [Buck & Southorn] **39(1):17** *editorial*
Education, Patient, Parent, and Lay Caregiver
Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*
Evaluation of an educational program for asthmatic children ages 4–8 and their parents [Detwiler et al] **39(3):204** *research article*
Home mechanical ventilatory assistance for infants [Kacmarek] **39(5):550** *conference proceedings*
Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*
Embolism
Cerebral gas embolism: a review and update [Nelson et al] **39(6):635** *review article*
Energy Expenditure: *Also see* **Work of Breathing**
Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Equipment & Supplies
Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
The effect of time and warming on breathing circuit compliance [Valeri et al] **39(8):793** *research article*
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia and ventilator circuits: time for a change? [Hess] **39(12):1149** *editorial*
Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits [Weber et al] **39(10):973** *research article*
Managing the patient-ventilator system: system checks and circuit changes [Campbell] **39(3):227** *symposium paper*
Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Novel strategies for delivering oxygen: reservoir cannula, demand flow, & transtracheal oxygen administration [Hoffman] **39(4):363** *conference proceedings*
Partial- vs nonrebreathing masks [Farias] **39(2):154** *letter*
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*

Reader finds errors relating to circuit change intervals in CPGs published in August [Picca] **39(11):1058** *letter*

Relative agreement between Raman and mass spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide [Graybeal & Russell] **39(3):190** *research article*

Static lung volumes **39(8):830** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(9):916]***

Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Ventilator-circuit-change intervals: one center's observations [Henke] **39(8):824** *letter*

Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Evaluation of Equipment & Supplies

An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]

Aerosol research: how should we skin this cat? [McPeck] **39(12):1155** *editorial*

Clinical comparison of two aerosol holding chambers: ACE vs Aerochamber [Perry et al] **39(11):1047** *research article*

Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer [Mason et al] **39(12):1157** *original research*

A comparison of CPAP performance characteristics of the Puritan-Bennett 7200a and a prototype continuous pressure-regulating ventilator [Tobia & Fischer] **39(3):195** *research article*

Controlling carbon dioxide delivery during mechanical ventilation [Chatburn & Anderson] **39(11):1039** *research article*

Decreasing the work of breathing: how much of a change is important? [Branson] **39(3):187** *editorial*

The effect of time and warming on breathing circuit compliance [Valeri et al] **39(8):793** *research article*

Evaluation of a prototype expiratory-phase aerosol controller during simulated pediatric volume-controlled ventilation [Keenan & Salyer] **39(6):617** *research article*

A new respiratory monitor that enables accurate measurement of work of breathing: a validation study [Blanch & Banner] **39(9):897** *research article*

Routine measurement of work of breathing: is it necessary? [Kacmarek & Hess] **39(9):881** *editorial*

Work of breathing: how to define and when to measure? [Adams] **39(9):883** *editorial*

Evaluation of Methods & Techniques

Aerosol research: how should we skin this cat? [McPeck] **39(12):1155** *editorial*

Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer [Mason et al] **39(12):1157** *original research*

Controlling carbon dioxide delivery during mechanical ventilation [Chatburn & Anderson] **39(11):1039** *research article*

Evaluation of an educational program for asthmatic children ages 4-8 and their parents [Detwiler et al] **39(3):204** *research article*

Expiratory hold vs clamping/transducing for intrinsic PEEP determination in the Siemens 900C [Madsen et al] **39(6):623** *research article*

Predicting aerosol deposition during neonatal ventilation: feasibility of bench testing [O'Riordan et al] **39(12):1162** *original research*

Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation [Del Bufalo et al] **39(1):21** *research article*

Exercise Testing & Training

Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases: legs, arms, and breathing retraining [Celli] **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*

PFT Corner #52—cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative evaluation of patients with lung cancer [Miller & Wilson] **39(7):757** *PFT Corner*

Extubation of the Airway: ***See*** **Airway Care & Management**

FDA (Food & Drug Administration)

MedWatch: the FDA medical products reporting program **39(2):99-100**

Forced Exhalation Technique

A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Gas Exchange

Monitoring gas exchange: clinical effectiveness and cost considerations [Durbin] **39(2):123** *symposium paper*

Guidelines, Recommendations, & Statements

Body plethysmography **39(12):1184** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

CPGs 1994: where are we? where have we been? where are we going? [Brougher] **39(12):1146** *editorial*

Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia [CDC] **39(12):1191** *guideline*

Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia and ventilator circuits: time for a change? [Hess] **39(12):1149** *editorial*

Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***

Reader finds errors relating to circuit change intervals in CPGs published in August [Picca] **39(11):1058** *letter*

Static lung volumes **39(8):830** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(9):916]***

Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

TB control guidelines deserve our attention, too [Brougher] **39(12):1154** *editorial*

Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Hazards: *Also see* **specific CPG titles**
Administration of air when oxygen was intended [Howard] **39(6):669** *letter*
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Heart Disease
Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease [Vega & Durbin] **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Heat & Moisture Exchangers
Ventilator-circuit-change intervals: one center's observations [Henke] **39(8):824** *letter*
Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Hemoptysis
Hemoptysis and dyspnea in a young woman [Lange et al] **39(3):242** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
High Altitude Physiology
Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***
High Frequency Chest-Wall Compression
A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*
High Frequency Oscillatory Ventilation
Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits [Weber et al] **39(10):973** *research article*
"Historical Notes" Feature
Diseases of the Heart (excerpted from Dr Chase's Third, Last and Complete Receipt Book and Household Physician, by AW Chase MD, published by FB Dickerson Co, Detroit, 1903) [Dunlevy, contributor] **39(2):145**
History: *See* **Classic Reprints** *and* **Historical Notes Features**
Home Care
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Current and future role of respiratory care practitioners in home care [Giordano] **39(4):321** *conference proceedings*
Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care [Dunne] **39(4):309** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(5):587]***
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation at home [Leger] **39(5):501** *conference proceedings*
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*
Humidity, Humidifiers, & Humidification
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia [CDC] **39(12):1191** *guideline*
Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
A "statistically significant" response [Becker] **39(2):153** *letter*
Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Hyaline Membrane Disease
Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Hypercapnia: *See* **Hazards**
Hypocapnia: *See* **Hazards**
Hypoxemia & Hypoxia
Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease [Vega & Durbin] **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*
Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***
Imaging: *Also see* **"Test Your Radiologic Skill" Feature**
Chest imaging in critically ill patients: analysis of clinical value [Heffner & Klein] **39(1):51** *symposium paper*
Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer [Mason et al] **39(12):1157** *research article*
Predicting aerosol deposition during neonatal ventilation: feasibility of bench testing [O'Riordan et al] **39(12):1162** *original research*
Infection & Infection Control: *Also see* **Pneumonia, Nosocomial**
Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Body plethysmography **39(12):1184** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia [CDC] **39(12):1191** *guideline*
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia and ventilator circuits: time for a change? [Hess] **39(12):1149** *editorial*
Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Nosocomial cutaneous mucormycosis at the site of endotracheal tube taping [Amundson et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*
Static lung volumes **39(8):830** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(9):916]***
Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Inspiratory-Expiratory Ratio (I:E)
Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits [Weber et al] **39(10):973** *research article*
Intensive Care Unit
Monitoring gas exchange: clinical effectiveness and cost considera-

tions [Durbin] **39(2):123** *symposium paper*
New Horizons IX: cost-effectiveness of respiratory care in the ICU **39(2):104** *symposium introduction*
Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases: legs, arms, and breathing retraining [Celli] **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*

Intermittent Positive Pressure Ventilation
Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*

Intrinsic PEEP: ***See*** **Positive End-Expiratory Pressure (PEEP)**

Intubation of the Airway
A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model [Davis et al] **39(6):611** *research article*
Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
Respiratory care practitioners as secondary providers of endotracheal intubation: one hospital's experience [Zyla & Carlson] **39(1):30** *research article*
Timing of tracheotomy: what is the best approach? [Hoffman] **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*

Iron Lung
Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation [Del Bufalo et al] **39(1):21** *research article*

"Kittredge's Corner" Feature (technical aspects of respiratory care equipment)
An addition to "flow-triggering systems" [Monast] **39(6):671** *letter* [response by Branson] ASRA **39(2):138**
Flow-triggering systems [Branson] **39(2):138** *Kittredge's Corner* ASRL **39(6):671**

Kyphoscoliosis
Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation [Del Bufalo et al] **39(1):21** *research article*

Lung Disease, Unilateral
Unilateral lung disease treated with patient-triggered independent-lung ventilation [Schmitt et al] **39(9):906** *case report*

Lung Mechanics
Respiratory system behavior during mechanical inflation with constant inspiratory pressure and flow [Chatburn et al] **39(10):979** *research article*

Lung Transplantation: ***See*** **Transplantation of Organs**

Management, Administrative
Is our educational system adequately preparing respiratory care practitioners for therapist-driven protocols? [Meredith et al] **39(7):709** *editorial* ASRA **39(7):709 & 39(7):746**
One respiratory care department's contribution to the 'bottom line' [LeBouef] **39(7):740** *special article*
Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited [Tietsort] **39(10):1004** *letter*
Respiratory care practitioners as secondary providers of endotracheal intubation: one hospital's experience [Zyla & Carlson] **39(1):30** *research article*
Therapist-driven protocols—a different view? [Tietsort & Clifford] **39(3):255** *letter* [response by Stoller]
Therapist-driven protocols: the state of the art [Weber & Milligan] **39(7):746** *conference report* ASRA **39(7):706 & 39(7):709**
Who should perform endotracheal intubation? a summary of issues [Buck & Southorn] **39(1):17** *editorial*
Why therapist-driven protocols? a balanced view [Stoller] **39(7):706** *editorial*

MDIs
A comparison of 3 methods of metered dose bronchodilator delivery to a mechanically ventilated adult lung model [Harwood et al] **39(9):886** *original research*

Measurement & Measurement Techniques
An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]
Relative agreement between Raman and mass spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide [Graybeal & Russell] **39(3):190** *research article*
Routine measurement of work of breathing: is it necessary? [Kacmarek & Hess] **39(9):881** *editorial*
Work of breathing: how to define and when to measure? [Adams] **39(9):883** *editorial*

Mechanical Ventilation
Chatburn's ventilator classification scheme—a poor substitute for the classic approach [Blanch & Desautels] **39(7):762** *letter* [response by Chatburn]
Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*
A comparison of CPAP performance characteristics of the Puritan-Bennett 7200a and a prototype continuous pressure-regulating ventilator [Tobia & Fischer] **39(3):195** *research article*
A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model [Davis et al] **39(6):611** *research article*
A comparison of 3 methods of metered dose bronchodilator delivery to a mechanically ventilated adult lung model [Harwood et al] **39(9):886** *original research*
Controlling carbon dioxide delivery during mechanical ventilation [Chatburn & Anderson] **39(11):1039** *research article*
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Decreasing the work of breathing: how much of a change is important? [Branson] **39(3):187** *editorial*
An educator calls for a standardization of terms: taking the fat out of respiratory care's alphabet soup [Sorbello] **39(7):772** *letter*
Evaluation of a prototype expiratory-phase aerosol controller during simulated pediatric volume-controlled ventilation [Keenan

& Salyer] **39(6):617** *research article*
Expiratory hold vs clamping/transducing for intrinsic PEEP determination in the Siemens 900C [Madsen et al] **39(6):623** *research article*
Flow-triggering does not decrease the work of breathing and pressure-time product in COPD patients [Jager et al] **39(9):892** *research article*
Home mechanical ventilatory assistance for infants [Kacmarek] **39(5):550** *conference proceedings*
Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*
Inhaled bronchodilators during mechanical ventilation: delivery techniques, evaluation of response, and cost-effectiveness [Hess] **39(2):105** *symposium paper*
Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits [Weber et al] **39(10):973**
Managing the patient-ventilator system: system checks and circuit changes [Campbell] **39(3):227** *symposium paper*
Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
Negative pressure ventilation for facilitation of weaning from mechanical ventilation—back to the future? [Hill] **39(1):19** *editorial*
Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation at home [Leger] **39(5):501** *conference proceedings*
Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics [Piedalue] **39(6):669** *letter* [response by Pierson & Hildebrandt]
Prediction and assessment of bronchodilator response in mechanically ventilated patients [Wollam et al] **39(7):730** *research article*
Pulmonary artery catheterization in exacerbations of COPD requiring mechanical ventilation: a cost-effectiveness analysis [Smith& Pesce] **39(10):961** *research article* **ASRA 39(10):959**
Respiratory system behavior during mechanical inflation with constant inspiratory pressure and flow [Chatburn et al] **39(10):979** *research article*
Timing of tracheotomy: what is the best approach? [Hoffman] **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*
Unilateral lung disease treated with patient-triggered independent-lung ventilation [Schmitt et al] **39(9):906** *case report*
Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Mechanical Ventilators

An addition to "flow-triggering systems" [Monast] **39(6):671** *letter* [response by Branson] ASRA **39(2):138**
Chatburn's ventilator classification scheme—a poor substitute for the classic approach [Blanch & Desautels] **39(7):762** *letter* [response by Chatburn]
A comparison of CPAP performance characteristics of the Puritan-Bennett 7200a and a prototype continuous pressure-regulating ventilator [Tobia & Fischer] **39(3):195** *research article*
Decreasing the work of breathing: how much of a change is important? [Branson] **39(3):187** *editorial*
The effect of time and warming on breathing circuit compliance [Valeri et al] **39(8):793** *research article*
Flow-triggering systems [Branson] **39(2):138** *Kittredge's Corner* ASRL **39(6):671**
Managing the patient-ventilator system: system checks and circuit changes [Campbell] **39(3):227** *symposium paper*
Predicting aerosol deposition during neonatal ventilation: feasibility of bench testing [O'Riordan et al] **39(12):1162** *original research*
Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation [Del Bufalo et al] **39(1):21** *research article*

Medical Direction: *See* specific CPG titles

Medicare

Current and future role of respiratory care practitioners in home care [Giordano] **39(4):321** *conference proceedings*
Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care [Dunne] **39(4):309** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(5):587]***

Medications: *See* Drugs & Drug Therapy

Meta-Analysis

An introduction to meta-analysis [Jones] **39(1):34** *review article*

Metered Dose Inhalers (MDIs): *Also see* Nebulizers, Inhalers, & Vaporizers

Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Method & Technique Evaluations: *See* Evaluation of Methods & Techniques

Misallocation of RC Services

Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited [Tietsort] **39(10):1004** *letter*

Models, Animal

Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits [Weber et al] **39(10):973** *research article*

Models, Mathematical

Interpreting decision-analysis models of cost-effectiveness [Richards] **39(10):959** *editorial*
Pulmonary artery catheterization in exacerbations of COPD requiring mechanical ventilation: a cost-effectiveness analysis [Smith & Pesce] **39(10):961** *research article*
Respiratory system behavior during mechanical inflation with constant inspiratory pressure and flow [Chatburn et al] **39(10):979** *research article*

Monitoring: ***Also see*** **Specific CPG titles**
Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Metabolic measurement using indirect calorimetry during mechanical ventilation **39(12):1170** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*
Monitoring gas exchange: clinical effectiveness and cost considerations [Durbin] **39(2):123** *symposium paper*
Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled mechanical ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
A new respiratory monitor that enables accurate measurement of work of breathing: a validation study [Blanch & Banner] **39(9):897** *research article*
Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts [Hill] **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*
Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Mucormycosis
Nosocomial cutaneous mucormycosis at the site of endotracheal tube taping [Amundson et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Muscles, Respiratory
Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases: legs, arms, and breathing retraining [Celli] **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*
Nebulizers, Inhalers, & Vaporizers
Aerosol research: how should we skin this cat? [McPeck] **39(12):1155** *editorial*
Comparison of aerosol delivery via Circulaire system vs conventional small volume nebulizer [Mason et al] **39(12):1157** *original research*
Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia [CDC] **39(12):1191** *guidelines*
Negative Pressure Ventilation
Negative pressure ventilation for facilitation of weaning from mechanical ventilation—back to the future? [Hill] **39(1):19** *editorial*
Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts [Hill] **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*
Neonatal Respiratory Care: ***See*** **Respiratory Care, Neonatal**
Neuromuscular Diseases & Their Problems
Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases: legs, arms, and breathing retraining [Celli] **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*
Nicotine: ***See*** **Smoking of Tobacco**
Nomograms
Controlling carbon dioxide delivery during mechanical ventilation [Chatburn & Anderson] **39(11):1039** *research article*
Noninvasive Ventilation
Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*
Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation at home [Leger] **39(5):501** *conference proceedings*
Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in end-stage cystic fibrosis: a report of seven cases [Padman et al] **39(7):736** *case report*
Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts [Hill] **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*
Occupational Exposure: ***See*** **Caregiver Protection**
Open Forum
Open Forum abstracts **39(11):1059**
Open Forum authors **39(11):1116**
Orders for Therapy: ***See*** **Protocols, Therapist-Driven**
Oxygen Administration & Therapy
Administration of air when oxygen was intended [Howard] **39(6):669** *letter*
Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner [Decker et al] **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*
Controversial indications for long-term oxygen therapy [Fletcher] **39(4):333** *conference proceedings*
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Interruption of oxygen therapy during intrahospital transport of non-ICU patients: elimination of a common problem through caregiver education [Stubbs et al] **39(10):968** *research article*
Novel strategies for delivering oxygen: reservoir cannula, demand flow, & transtracheal oxygen administration [Hoffman] **39(4):363** *conference proceedings*
Partial- vs nonrebreathing masks [Farias] **39(2):154** *letter*
Simulated pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: initial events and response times of a hospital arrest team [Palmisano et al] **39(7):725** *research article*
Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***
Peak Flow Meter: ***Also see*** **Pulmonary Function Testing**
An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]
Pediatric Respiratory Care: ***See*** **Respiratory Care, Pediatric**
PEEP: ***See*** **Positive End-Expiratory Pressure**
Percussion: ***See*** **Bronchial Hygiene Therapy**
"PFT Corner" Feature (brief case reports involving pulmonary function tests, with questions, answers, & discussion)
PFT Corner #51—can't or won't? [Wanger & Irvin] **39(1):67**

PFT Corner
PFT Corner #52—cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative evaluation of patients with lung cancer [Miller & Wilson] **39(7):757** *PFT Corner*

Pharmacology: ***See*** **Drugs & Drug Therapy**

Pneumobelts
Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts [Hill] **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*

Pneumonia, Nosocomial
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia [CDC] **39(12):1191** *guideline*
Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia and ventilator circuits: time for a change? [Hess] **39(12):1149** *editorial*

Pneumothorax
Commentary on RETROSPECTROCOPE [Rendell-Baker] **39(2):154** *letter*
Piedalue wants more answers about airway pressure and pulmonary mechanics [Piedalue] **39(6):669** *letter* [response by Pierson & Hildebrandt]

Polysomnography
Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner [Decker et al] **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*

Positive End-Expiratory Pressure (PEEP)
Expiratory hold vs clamping/transducing for intrinsic PEEP determination in the Siemens 900C [Madsen et al] **39(6):623** *research article*

Positive Expiratory Pressure (PEP)
A review of airway clearance: new techniques, indications, and recommendations [Hardy] **39(5):440** *conference proceedings*

Postural Drainage: ***See*** **Bronchial Hygiene Therapy**

Pregnancy
Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease [Vega & Durbin] **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Pressure, Barometric
Cerebral gas embolism: a review and update [Nelson et al] **39(6):635** *review article*
Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***

Product Problem Reporting: ***See*** **FDA**

Professionalism
Commentary on RCP smoking behavior [Martin] **39(2):152** *letter*
More on cigarette smoking and RCPs [Suzor] **39(2):153** *letter*

Protocols, Therapist-Driven
Benefits associated with a respiratory care assessment-treatment program: results of a pilot study [Shrake et al] **39(7):715** *research article*
Is our educational system adequately preparing respiratory care practitioners for therapist-driven protocols? [Meredith et al] **39(7):709** *editorial*
Therapist-driven protocols—a different view? [Tietsort & Clifford] **39(3):255** *letter* [response by Stoller]
Therapist-driven protocols: the state of the art [Weber & Milligan] **39(7):746** *conference report*
Why therapist-driven protocols? a balanced view [Stoller] **39(7):706** *editorial*

Pulmonary Artery Catheters: ***See*** **Catheters & Catheterization**

Pulmonary Function & Pulmonary Function Testing: ***Also see*** **"PFT Corner" Feature** ***and*** **Specific Headings (eg, Lung Mechanics)**
An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]
Clinical comparison of two aerosol holding chambers: ACE vs Aerochamber [Perry et al] **39(11):1047** *research article*
PFT Corner #52—cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative evaluation of patients with lung cancer [Miller & Wilson] **39(7):757** *PFT Corner*
Static lung volumes **39(8):830** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(9):916]***

Quality Assurance
Interruption of oxygen therapy during intrahospital transport of non-ICU patients: elimination of a common problem through caregiver education [Stubbs et al] **39(10):968** *research article*
Simulated pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: initial events and response times of a hospital arrest team [Palmisano et al] **39(7):725** *research article*

Radiography, Diagnostic: ***See*** **Imaging**

Reconditioning
Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases: legs, arms, and breathing retraining [Celli] **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*

Rehabilitation
Physical reconditioning of patients with respiratory diseases: legs, arms, and breathing retraining [Celli] **39(5):481** *conference proceedings*

Reimbursement Issues
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Current and future role of respiratory care practitioners in home care [Giordano] **39(4):321** *conference proceedings*
Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care [Dunne] **39(4):309** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(5):587]***
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*

Research
An introduction to meta-analysis [Jones] **39(1):34** *review article*
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Research on resuscitation by RCPs is long overdue [Barnes & Durbin] **39(7):712** *editorial*
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: "tell it like it was" [Comroe] **39(6):657** *Classic Reprint*
RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: what makes the sky blue? [Comroe] **39(3):237** *Classic Reprint*

Therapist-driven protocols—a different view? [Tietsort & Clifford] **39(3):255** *letter* [response by Stoller]
Why therapist-driven protocols? a balanced view [Stoller] **39(7):706** *editorial*

Resources, Allocation of
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Current and future role of respiratory care practitioners in home care [Giordano] **39(4):321** *conference proceedings*
Demographics and financial impact of home respiratory care [Dunne] **39(4):309** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(5):587]***

Respiratory Care, Neonatal
Application of continuous positive airway pressure to neonates via nasal prongs or nasopharyngeal tube **39(8):817** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Idiopathic vocal cord paralysis in a newborn infant: a case report [Douglas & Polamreddy] **39(6):630** *case report*
Neonatal time-triggered, pressure-limited, time-cycled Mechanical Ventilation **39(8):808** *Clinical Practice Guideline* ***[correction on 39(11):1050]***
Predicting aerosol deposition during neonatal ventilation: feasibility of bench testing [O'Riordan et al] **39(12):1162** *original research*
Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Respiratory Care, Pediatric
Capillary blood gas sampling for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1180** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
Evaluation of a prototype expiratory-phase aerosol controller during simulated pediatric volume-controlled ventilation [Keenan & Salyer] **39(6):617** *research article*
Home mechanical ventilatory assistance for infants [Kacmarek] **39(5):550** *conference proceedings*
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Simulated pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: initial events and response times of a hospital arrest team [Palmisano et al] **39(7):725** *research article*
Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
The use of exogenous surfactant in three pediatric patients following severe gastric aspiration [Thomas et al] **39(9):912** *case report*

Respiratory Care Departments/Services: ***Also see*** **Protocols, Therapist-Driven**
One respiratory care department's contribution to the 'bottom line' [LeBouef] **39(7):740** *special article*

Respiratory Care Practice & Procedures: ***See*** **Guidelines, Recommendations, & Statements**

Respiratory Care Practitioners & Role of
Benefits associated with a respiratory care assessment-treatment program: results of a pilot study [Shrake et al] **39(7):715** *research article*
Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner [Decker et al] **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*
Commentary on RCP smoking behavior [Martin] **39(2):152** *letter*
Controversies in home respiratory care: conference summary [Pierson] **39(4):294** *conference proceedings*
Current and future role of respiratory care practitioners in home care [Giordano] **39(4):321** *conference proceedings*
Is our educational system adequately preparing respiratory care practitioners for therapist-driven protocols? [Meredith et al] **39(7):709** *editorial* ASRA **39(7):709 & 39(7):746**
More on cigarette smoking and RCPs [Suzor] **39(2):153** *letter*
Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited [Tietsort] **39(10):1004** *letter*
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Research on resuscitation by RCPs is long overdue [Barnes & Durbin] **39(7):712** *editorial*
Respiratory care practitioners as secondary providers of endotracheal intubation: one hospital's experience [Zyla & Carlson] **39(1):30** *research article*
Therapist-driven protocols: the state of the art [Weber & Milligan] **39(7):746** *conference report* ASRA **39(7):706 & 39(7):709**
Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*
Who should perform endotracheal intubation? a summary of issues [Buck & Southorn] **39(1):17** *editorial*

Respiratory Care Services
Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited [Tietsort] **39(10):1004** *letter*

Respiratory Distress Syndrome
Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*
The use of exogenous surfactant in three pediatric patients following severe gastric aspiration [Thomas et al] **39(9):912** *case report*

Respiratory Mechanics: ***See*** **Lung Mechanics**

Resuscitation & Related Equipment & Supplies
RCPs, CPR, and research on mouth-to-mask devices [Palmisano et al] **39(9):917** *letter*
Research on resuscitation by RCPs is long overdue [Barnes & Durbin] **39(7):712** *editorial*
Simulated pediatric cardiopulmonary resuscitation: initial events and response times of a hospital arrest team [Palmisano et al] **39(7):725** *research article*

"RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX"
Commentary on RETROSPECTROSCOPE [Rendell-Baker] **39(2):154** *letter*

RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: hydrogen, balloons, & pressures [Comroe] **39(1):63** *Classic Reprint*

RETROSPECTROSCOPE REDUX: what makes the sky blue? [Comroe] **39(3):237** *Classic Reprint*

Rocking Beds

Use of negative pressure ventilation, rocking beds, and Pneumobelts [Hill] **39(5):532** *conference proceedings*

Role: *See* Respiratory Care Practitioners & Role of

Scuba Diving

Cerebral gas embolism: a review and update [Nelson et al] **39(6):635** *review article*

Self-Management

Collaborative self-management strategies for patients with respiratory disease [Make] **39(5):566** *conference proceedings*

Skilled Nursing Facilities

Potential misallocation of respiratory care services revisited [Tietsort] **39(10):1004** *letter*

Sleep-Disordered Breathing

Center-based vs patient-based diagnosis and therapy of sleep-related respiratory disorders and the role of the respiratory care practitioner [Decker et al] **39(4):390** *conference proceedings*

Controversial indications for long-term oxygen therapy [Fletcher] **39(4):333** *conference proceedings*

Smoking of Tobacco

Commentary on RCP smoking behavior [Martin] **39(2):152** *letter*

More on cigarette smoking and RCPs [Suzor] **39(2):153** *letter*

Software Evaluations

A new respiratory monitor that enables accurate measurement of work of breathing: a validation study [Blanch & Banner] **39(9):897** *research article*

Spectroscopy

Relative agreement between Raman and mass spectrometry for measuring end-tidal carbon dioxide [Graybeal & Russell] **39(3):190** *research article*

Spirometry: *Also see* Pulmonary Function Testing

An accurate assessment of peak flow? [Ziegler & Fried] **39(3):254** *letter* [response by Simmons]

Statistics

An introduction to meta-analysis [Jones] **39(1):34** *review article*

Steroids

Update on inhaled steroids [Mathewson & Kovac] **39(8):837** *Drug Capsule*

Suction, Suctioning, & Suction Devices & Supplies

Bezold-Jarisch reflex—an indication for closed-system suctioning: a case report [Lee & Wu] **39(6):627** *case report*

Mobilization of secretions in ICU patients [Judson & Sahn] **39(3):213** *symposium paper*

Surfactant & Surfactant Therapy

Lung-volume-dependent effects of varying inspiratory time during high-frequency oscillation of surfactant-deficient rabbits [Weber et al] **39(10):973**

Surfactant replacement therapy **39(8):824** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

The use of exogenous surfactant in three pediatric patients following severe gastric aspiration [Thomas et al] **39(9):912** *case report*

Surgery

Pulmonary pathology following intra-abdominal surgery [Gehling] **39(1):70** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Timing of tracheotomy: what is the best approach? [Hoffman] **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*

Symposium Proceedings: *See* Conference & Symposium Proceedings

Terminology

Chatburn's ventilator classification scheme—a poor substitute for the classic approach [Blanch & Desautels] **39(7):762** *letter* [response by Chatburn]

An educator calls for a standardization of terms: taking the fat out of respiratory care's alphabet soup [Sorbello] **39(7):772** *letter*

"Test Your Radiologic Skill" Feature (brief case reports including radiographs, with questions, answers, & discussion)

Airway compromise in two patients with aplastic anemia and coagulation abnormalities [Gleaton & Ognibene] **39(11):1051** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Hemoptysis and dyspnea in a young woman [Lange et al] **39(3):242** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Hypoxemia in a postpartum patient with complex congenital heart disease [Vega & Durbin] **39(6):646** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

A large thin-walled cavity with an air-fluid level on chest radiograph [Harrigan] **39(10):994** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Pulmonary pathology following intra-abdominal surgery [Gehling] **39(1):70** *Test Your Radiologic Skill*

Therapist-Driven Protocols: *See* Protocols, Therapist-Driven

Tomography, Computed: *See* Imaging

Tracheostomy: *See* Airway Care & Management

Tracheotomy: *Also see* Airway Care & Management

Timing of tracheotomy: what is the best approach? [Hoffman] **39(4):378** *conference proceedings*

Transcutaneous Blood Gas Monitoring

Transcutaneous blood gas monitoring for neonatal & pediatric patients **39(12):1176** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Transplantation of Organs

Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in end-stage cystic fibrosis: a report of seven cases [Padman et al] **39(7):736** *case report*

Transport

Interruption of oxygen therapy during intrahospital transport of non-ICU patients: elimination of a common problem through caregiver education [Stubbs et al] **39(10):968** *research article*

Travel

Travel for the technology-dependent individual [Stoller] **39(4):347** *conference proceedings* ***[correction on 39(8):796]***

Tuberculosis: *Also see* Infection & Infection Control

TB control guidelines deserve our attention, too [Brougher] **39(12):1154** *editorial*

Tubes, Endotracheal: ***Also see*** **Airway Care & Management**

A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model [Davis et al] **39(6):611** *research article*

Nosocomial cutaneous mucormycosis at the site of endotracheal tube taping [Amundson et al] **39(9):917** *letter*

Tubes, Tracheostomy: ***Also see*** **Airway Care & Management**

A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model [Davis et al] **39(6):611** *research article*

Upper-Airway Disorders

Delivery of aerosols to the upper airway **39(8):803** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Ventilator Circuits: ***Also see*** **Equipment & Supplies**

Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia [CDC] **39(12):1191** *guideline*

Guideline for prevention of nosocomial pneumonia and ventilator circuits: time for a change? [Hess] **39(12):1149** *editorial*

Managing the patient-ventilator system: system checks and circuit changes [Campbell] **39(3):227** *symposium paper*

Ventilator circuit changes **39(8):797** *Clinical Practice Guideline*

Vocal Cord Dysfunction

Idiopathic vocal cord paralysis in a newborn infant: a case report [Douglas & Polamreddy] **39(6):630** *case report*

Weaning

Indications and criteria for decannulation and transition from invasive to noninvasive long-term ventilatory support [Bach & Saporito] **39(5):515** *conference proceedings*

Negative pressure ventilation for facilitation of weaning from mechanical ventilation—back to the future? [Hill] **39(1):19** *editorial*

Routine measurement of work of breathing: is it necessary? [Kacmarek & Hess] **39(9):881** *editorial*

Transition from the intensive care unit to home: patient selection and discharge planning [Gilmartin] **39(5):456** *conference proceedings*

Use of extrathoracic negative pressure ventilation in weaning COPD and kyphoscoliotic patients from mechanical ventilation [Del Bufalo et al] **39(1):21** *research article*

Work of breathing: how to define and when to measure? [Adams] **39(9):883** *editorial*

Work of Breathing

A comparison of CPAP performance characteristics of the Puritan-Bennett 7200a and a prototype continuous pressure-regulating ventilator [Tobia & Fischer] **39(3):195** *research article*

A comparison of the imposed work of breathing with endotracheal and tracheostomy tubes in a lung model [Davis et al] **39(6):611** *research article*

Decreasing the work of breathing: how much of a change is important? [Branson] **39(3):187** *editorial*

Flow-triggering does not decrease the work of breathing and pressure-time product in COPD patients [Jager et al] **39(9):892** *research article*

A new respiratory monitor that enables accurate measurement of work of breathing: a validation study [Blanch & Banner] **39(9):897** *research article*

Routine measurement of work of breathing: is it necessary? [Kacmarek & Hess] **39(9):881** *editorial*

Work of breathing: how to define and when to measure? [Adams] **39(9):883** *editorial*

Books, Films, Tapes, & Software

Listing and Reviews of Books and Other Media
Note to publishers: Send review copies of books, films, tapes, and software to RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

Therapeutics in Respiratory Disease, by Peter J Barnes MA DM DSc, Kian Fan Chung MD, Timothy W Evans MD PhD, and Stephen G Spiro MD, with a contribution by Robert F Miller MB BS. Hardcover, 174 pages with index, 30 illustrations. London: Churchill Livingstone, 1994. $59.95.

Therapeutics in Respiratory Disease is an interesting and informative text by Dr Peter Barnes and colleagues, which, in the words of the authors, "describes the drug treatments currently available for the management of lung diseases, and also gives some consideration to new treatments under development." The rationale for such a text is well founded. New drugs have been introduced to treat lung diseases, uses of old drugs have changed, and understanding of the disease processes themselves is increasing, which ultimately affects the treatment. The authors cite asthma as an example—where an appreciation of the inflammatory nature of the disease has led to the use of inhaled corticosteroids as first-line therapy. The text is not a book about pulmonary diseases or pharmacology alone but rather a melding of the two topics into a presentation on the use of various drugs and drug groups in the treatment of lung diseases. In this respect, the book complements and advances those two topics—presented separately in many curricula—as a single integrated subject.

The authors offer the hope that the text will be useful for respiratory physicians (a specialty beyond the introductory medical level), clinical pharmacologists, and researchers involved in lung diseases. To that list should be added respiratory care practitioners. Although the book is advanced for respiratory therapy students, an effort to comprehend the material would be rewarded with a better, more integrated understanding of drug therapy and lung diseases. In particular, the authors concisely discuss drug therapy of lung diseases other than chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and tuberculosis (eg, pulmonary vascular disease and lung cancer). The book would be a valuable reference for educators and serious practitioners who wish to advance their knowledge. Because the text combines the two subjects of pulmonary disease and pharmacology into an application of drug therapy in managing lung disease, some background knowledge of these two subjects is helpful. From a practical point of view, it may be difficult to use the text in the curriculum of a respiratory care program in which topics typically are introduced in a compartmentalized fashion.

When the American reader considers this book, it is important to note that all of the authors are practicing in the United Kingdom (U.K.), and are presenting respiratory medicine outside of the United States. This affects drug names as well as spelling of medical terms. For example, instead of the more familiar names of epinephrine, isoproterenol, and albuterol, one reads adrenaline, isoprenaline, and salbutamol. However, this can broaden the horizon of the American reader, a beneficial side effect. For the reader unfamiliar with British spellings, be prepared to see 'nebulised' instead of 'nebulized,' 'oedema' for 'edema,' and 'hypoxaemia' rather than 'hypoxemia.' Drugs are also mentioned that are not currently available in the United States, including the long-acting beta-$_2$ agonist formoterol, some of the inhaled corticosteroids such as betamethasone maleate and fluticasone propionate, as well as antituberculosis drugs, thiacetazone and prothionamide. Differences are also found in terminology used for oxygen delivery equipment. In Chapter 3, "Respiratory Failure," the terms "fixed performance devices" and "variable performance devices" are used to denote the American categories of high-flow and low-flow oxygen delivery devices, respectively. An example of a fixed performance device is given by the venturi mask, and the variable performance device with the nasal cannula and the simple oxygen mask. The examples and description of performance should allow the American practitioner to quickly translate the difference in terminology without undue confusion.

Although the book is written by more than one author, it avoids problems that often occur with multiple writers. This is facilitated by the fact that all of the authors work at the same hospital in London (Royal Brompton National Heart and Lung Hospital). Specifically, the authors use a consistent organizational style, with a chapter contents outline at the beginning of every chapter, and figures, tables, and boxes prepared with a uniform appearance. This contributes greatly to a clean, clear format and maintains the clarity of organization needed with contributions from multiple authors. The book consists of 9 chapters, with the first chapter providing an eclectic but highly informative overview of pharmacologic principles and concepts, with examples and application to drugs used in the treatment of lung disease. In particular, the in-depth presentation of drug-receptor interactions (pharmacodynamics) is well done and extremely useful for respiratory care. Subsequent chapters are each devoted to a disease state. Chapter 2 deals with obstructive airway diseases (asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease); Chapters 3 through 10 discuss respiratory failure, respiratory infections, infections in AIDS, tuberculosis, lung cancer, pulmonary vascular disease, cough and breathlessness, and drug-induced pulmonary disease, respectively. In particular, illustrations are well done and of uniform style, and they complement the textual presentation.

The term therapeutics, in the title of the book, is actually broadened to include modes of support as well as drugs. In Chapter 3, it is interesting to see oxygen recognized as a drug and modes of delivery reviewed. Oxygen therapy is in fact a broader topic than drug therapy because medical gas therapy not only includes the agent itself but the mode of delivery, which can be an additional form of therapeutic support. For example, continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) is presented in the discussion of oxygen therapy. This form of support adds pressure to the oxygen, and one could argue that this is a mode of support and not just a form of drug therapy. Similarly, in Chapter 8, "Pulmonary Vascular Disease," the authors discuss modes of ventilatory support such as pressure-control inverse-ratio ventilation, volume-controlled inverse-ratio ventilation, and extracorporeal gas exchange for treating adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), in addition to pharmacologic inter-

vention. Nonetheless, the primary emphasis throughout the text is on drug therapies of lung diseases, fulfilling the stated goal of the authors in the Preface.

The accuracy and quality of the book appear to be superior. However, some deficiencies were noted. In Chapter 2, "Obstructive Airway Disease," the term 'chronic obstructive airways disease,' or COAD, is used; whereas Chapter 3, "Respiratory Failure," introduces 'chronic obstructive pulmonary disease,' or COPD. In Chapter 2, COAD is actually identified as emphysema and specifically does not include chronic bronchitis. The relation or difference between COPD and COAD is not made clear by the authors. This may be a weakness of multiple authorship that was not totally avoided. Other deficiencies may reflect the lack of an identifiable respiratory care profession with specialized education in the U.K. An example is seen in a diagram for continuous positive airway pressure, or CPAP, in Chapter 3 (Figure 3.2). A flowmeter is used with a "flow generator," which humidifies the gas and entrains additional gas, to provide a total flow of 70-80 L/min. Unless some other type of flow generator is intended but not identified, this is not correct. Air entrainment does not occur in a pressurized system, as every therapist well knows. Similarly, two pressure graphs in a figure in Chapter 8 (Figure 8.2) are identified as "inverse ratio ventilation and airway pressure-release ventilation." Neither pressure curve describes APRV but rather two variably increasing inspiratory pressure levels with an inspiratory hold, giving greater inspiratory than expiratory times. Other errors are almost certainly typographical: Arterial oxygen tension is noted as P_{aCO_2}, both in the text of Chapter 3 and in a table (Box 3.1).

Finally, some statements appear overly authoritative and, given the ever-changing environment of medical science, verge on the dogmatic. For example in Chapter 2, on Page 14, the statement is made "Chronic bronchitis implies mucus hypersecretion and is not associated with airflow obstruction."

These last comments do not imply that the book is of inferior quality or not of value. I would recommend the text for all respiratory care practitioners, to broaden our knowledge of drug therapy for lung diseases, especially those other than asthma and COPD. Respiratory care students could well be introduced to this text before completing formal coursework, although cost and curricular time are undeniable constraints. The text would be very useful for graduate study at a master's degree level.

Joseph L Rau Jr PhD RRT
Professor and Chair
Cardiopulmonary Care Sciences
Georgia State University
Atlanta, Georgia

Pharmacology and Therapeutics in Respiratory Care, by Theodore J Witek Jr DrPH and E Neil Schachter MD. Hardcover 465 pages, illustrated Philadelphia: WB Saunders Co, 1994. $39.95.

This is a collaborative work involving 19 consulting editors, among them Dr Irwin Ziment, who wrote the first comprehensive text on respiratory pharmacology (published in 1978), and who has supplied a foreword to this book. As he states, this text is now the most authoritative compendium of its type, an assertion with which I would fully agree. The contents are divided into three parts, the first on basic pharmacology and therapeutics, the second on the classes of respiratory drugs, and the third on clinical applications and applied research.

Part I begins with the basic definitions of pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics, and pharmacotherapy. The ensuing chapters are specialized, dealing with aerosol delivery, bronchial physiology, mucokinetics, and airway immunology. Part II comprises about half the volume, describing in detail the properties and uses of adrenergic agents, antimuscarinic drugs, methylxanthines, corticosteroids, mucolytics, antitussives, antihistamines, and antimicrobial agents employed in respiratory medicine. At the close of the section a chapter on new, emerging, and experimental therapies is provided. Part III contains three chapters on rather diverse subjects. The first (Chapter 14) considers the main pathophysiologic changes encountered in bronchopulmonary disease and the clinical tests employed to evaluate responses to pharmacotherapy. The second (Chapter 15) discusses airway challenge tests. The third chapter of Part III and last chapter of the book, "Critical Care Pharmacology" (Chapter 16), is a 20-page review of cardiocirculatory failure and a summary of the cardiovascular drugs used in life-threatening conditions. In such a brief discussion, there can be no more than limited reference to the pharmacodynamics, toxicities, and contraindications of drugs affecting the heart and circulation. An adequate bibliography is provided, however.

A few useful appendices are included that relate to prescription writing and dose calculation. These may be of especial benefit to the respiratory care practitioner. Of particular note is the accuracy of the structural formulas of the drugs; the only error noted is the spelling of *bipyridines* (Page 434).

The text is quite readable, and is liberally supplemented with tables and charts defining therapeutic regimens. The work is too large and detailed to be practicable for pharmacology courses in respiratory care programs. However, instructors in such courses will be completely informed through careful study of each chapter. As a reference source for physicians, nurses, and therapists involved in respiratory and critical care, the book is unsurpassed.

Hugh S Mathewson MD
Professor Emeritus of Anesthesiology
Professor of Respiratory Care Education
University of Kansas Medical Center
Kansas City, Kansas

AARC's 1995 Professor's Rounds in Respiratory Care

Live Satellite Videoconferences That Provide Professional Education To RCPs In Your Facility.

And You Can Earn Up to Seven Continuing Education Credits.

Part I • The New JCAHO Hospital Standards: Their Effect on Respiratory Care

March 28, 12:30 p.m. to 2 p.m. Eastern Time—Nancy Telford, RRT with Moderator Sam P. Giordano, MBA, RRT

The new *1995 Accreditation Manual for Hospitals* is now organized around important functions that impact patient outcomes. With this redesign, the standards previously contained in the Respiratory Care Services Chapter are integrated into the functional chapters. Through this overview, viewers will learn about standards related to competence programs, responsibilities of department leaders and medical directors, and expectations on performance improvement. This presentation will also review the interactive survey process and the role of department staff.

Part II • Prevention and Management of Ventilator-Induced Lung Injury

April 25, 12:30 p.m. to 2 p.m. Eastern Time—David J. Pierson, MD with Moderator Richard D. Branson, RRT

There is increasing evidence that the way we manage mechanical ventilation affects the incidence and severity of parenchymal lung injury as well as traditional forms of barotrauma such as pneumothorax and bronchopleural fistula. This presentation will review the data from both animal experiments and clinical experience, and will describe our current concepts of the pathophysiology of ventilator-induced lung injury. It will also cover practical matters such as how to identify patients at increased risk of barotrauma, measures to decrease the likelihood of this complication, and the approach to management of bronchopleural fistula in the ventilated patient.

Part III • The Multidisciplinary Team Approach and Respiratory Care

June 20, 12:30 p.m. to 2 p.m. Eastern Time— Kevin L. Shrake, MA, RRT, CHE with Sam P. Giordano, MBA, RRT

This program will focus on what respiratory care practitioners must do to demonstrate value and create opportunity in the changing environment of health care. Strategies will be outlined on how to develop a professional skills inventory that enhances value and solidifies job security. Restructuring concepts will be presented that focus on developing the multiskilled practitioner capable of functioning on a variety of teams throughout the continuum of health care. Advice will also be provided for managers who want to position themselves as a member of a new breed of "clinical executives" who will guide the future of integrated health care delivery systems in the United States.

Part IV • Emergency Respiratory Care: The Respiratory Care Practitioner's Role

July 19, 12:30 p.m. to 2 p.m. Eastern Time—Charles G. Durbin, Jr., MD, FCCM with Richard D. Branson, RRT

As caregiver roles continue to blur, many new tasks will fall to the most prepared individual in the emergency care setting, regardless of profession. Emergency defibrillation, establishment of intravenous access, and IV and endotracheal drug administration are several areas in which RCPs can become competent. This session will review some of the new approaches to emergency care, "tricks of the trade" in airway maintenance, and changes in the ACLS philosophy and treatment protocols. Methods to increase RCP participation in the hospital emergency response team and the obstacles that they must overcome will be presented.

Part V • Noninvasive Mechanical Ventilation: Its Role in Acute and Chronic Ventilatory Failure

August 2, 12:30 p.m. to 2: p.m. Eastern Time—Nicholas S. Hill, MD with Richard D. Branson, RRT

Although techniques of noninvasive mechanical ventilation (assisting alveolar ventilation without an artificial endotracheal airway) have been with us for decades, recent developments have greatly increased their applicability. This presentation will briefly review the history of noninvasive ventilation, describe modalities of noninvasive ventilation currently available, and discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the various types. Results of studies on acute and chronic respiratory failure will be reviewed and acceptable indications for use of noninvasive ventilation will be described. Considerations for selecting appropriate patients and techniques of initiation and monitoring of noninvasive ventilation will also be discussed.

Part VI • Organizing a Respiratory Care Department without Walls

September 19, 12:30 p.m. to 2 p.m. Eastern Time—John R. Walton, MBA, MHA, RRT, CHE with Sam P. Giordano, MBA, RRT

With hospitals reengineering in advance of federal health reform, the successful respiratory care service must be poised to follow the flow of the patient from the acute hospital through alternate sites. Providing respiratory care in skilled nursing facilities, ambulatory clinics, and the home will require a new breed of respiratory care practitioner willing and able to advance beyond the acute care hospital walls. This "Professor's Rounds" will discuss how to establish respiratory services in the post-acute setting using examples of a successful respiratory care service established in a subacute, skilled nursing facility.

Part VII • Shortening Length of Stay on Ventilators and in Hospitals

November 14, 12:30 p.m. to 2 p.m. Eastern Time—Neil R. MacIntyre, MD with Richard D. Branson, RRT

This program will focus on the reasons patients remain ventilator dependent and the disease specific factors of ventilatory muscle overload, neurological dysfunction, and gas exchange difficulties as well as a discussion of maximizing therapy for the underlying cardiorespiratory disease as a component in shortening the patient's length of stay. The program will also discuss ventilation management issues and complications such as pneumothorax, imposed work from ventilator settings and equipment, aspiration pneumonia, nutrition, and fluid balance that can all contribute to unnecessary duration of mechanical ventilatory support.

Register Early—by January 27—and Receive a 10% Discount

For Registration Information, Contact VHA Satellite Network, AARC Videoconferences, Attn: Registration SATNET 4, P.O. Box 140909, Irving, TX 75014-0909, or call (214) 830-0061

AARC Membership...
Your Ticket To Success In Respiratory Care

Membership benefits of the American Association for Respiratory Care

Much of the support you give to the AARC goes toward advancement of the profession. For instance, did you know that through the efforts of the AARC:

Over two-thirds of the states now require that respiratory care practitioners become legally credentialed by the state. These laws, which protect patients and practitioners alike, were passed because of hard work by the AARC and its members.

We assisted the federal government in gathering information on the costs of hospital versus home respiratory care. Our involvement in projects like this strengthens our image in Washington as patient advocates.

Respiratory Care Journal

The foremost science journal in the respiratory care profession, publishing original research, case reports, book critiques, letters, and monthly features on chest radiographs, pulmonary function tests, and blood gas analysis.

AARC Times Magazine

The premier news and feature magazine of the profession with management tips, educational articles, human interest features, how-to articles, and reports on current government trends.

AARC Report

A monthly newsletter with fast-breaking news about the Association and other professional activities.

Government Representation

A full-time director of government affairs works for you in Washington, DC, and helps the Association leaders plan strategies for introducing legislation and influencing regulatory activities on reimbursement issues, research projects, consumer protection, smoking laws and more.

State Government Affairs

The AARC's director of state government affairs works with the AARC's affiliates to bring licensure on-line in all 50 states and to help strengthen current acts. The AARC supports its chartered affiliates financially in these endeavors through grant and loan programs. In addition, emphasis is placed on assisting with other issues on the state level. These include health reform bills, laboratory issues, long-term care, and Medicaid concerns.

Continuing Education

The continuing Respiratory Care Education (CRCE) system approves and accredits educational programs and provides you with a transcript of all your continuing education activities to use as proof of attendance at educational meetings.

Educational Aids

Individual Independent Study Packages are self- study modules on 30 different clinical topics. Topics on clinical practice, as well as a series on smoking cessation, are featured.

Insurance

No-cost and low-cost insurance programs are part of AARC membership. You receive $10,000 of accidental death and dismemberment insurance free, and you receive discounts on professional liability insurance.

Chapter Affiliation

Joining the AARC gives you access to your state society for respiratory care. In this way you get to know other professionals in your area.

Promotional Support

Promotional items for distribution at health fairs are made available at discounted prices.

Respiratory Care Week

Each year, the Association sponsors a national recognition week for its practitioners. During this week, hospitals recognize the work of respiratory care practitioners throughout the year, and, in addition, many RC departments sponsor special activities for the public to help raise the profile of the profession.

Specialty Sections

For a nominal fee, you may join a specialty section of the AARC. You can choose sections on management, education, adult acute respiratory care, cardiopulmonary science, perinatal-pediatrics, continuing care/ rehabilitation, transport, or home care.

ECRI

Discounts are extended to members wishing to order ECRI's publication, Technology for Respiratory Therapy. AARC members pay $45 for an annual subscription, one-half off the usual subscription price.

Membership Certificate

With your membership you receive a handsome certificate — a testimony to your professional commitment to respiratory care.

Meetings

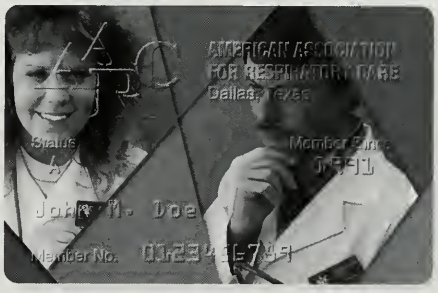
AARC meetings bring you up-to-date on the state-of-the-art in respiratory care. AARC members receive a discount to all of these meetings sponsored by the AARC — including the Annual Convention.

Research Reports

The AARC prepares and publishes reports on a variety of research activities.

Health Promotion

An active health promotion committee provides you with resources on smoking cessation and wellness.



Standards

The AARC, as a standard-setting organization, makes available copies of the position statements and standards it writes.

Clinical Practice Guidelines

Recognizing that our health care system will require even more accountability and validity in the future, the AARC has embarked on a multi-year project to write clinical practice guidelines for all respiratory care modalities.

Product Discounts

The AARC regularly reviews products available for the respiratory care professional and negotiates discounted rates for the member.

American Association for Respiratory Care
11030 Ables Lane, Dallas, TX 75229-4593
(214) 243-2272

Fax (214) 484-2720 or (214) 484- 6010

Notices

Notices of competitions, scholarships, fellowships, examination dates, new educational programs, and the like will be listed here free of charge. Items for the Notices section must reach the Journal 60 days before the desired month of publication (January 1 for the March issue, February 1 for the April issue, etc). Include all pertinent information and mail notices to RESPIRATORY CARE Notices Dept, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

The American Respiratory Care Foundation Announces Literary Awards for 1994

Dr Allen DeVilbiss Award

Best paper published from November 1993 through October 1994 that addresses new technology or a new application of current technology in respiratory care ($2,000 cash plus travel expenses to the AARC Annual Meeting to receive the award)

A New Respiratory Monitor That Enables Accurate Measurement of Work of Breathing: A Validation Study—Paul B Blanch BA RRT and Michael J Banner PhD [Respir Care 1994;39(9):897-905]

1994 Allen & Hanburys Award

Best Original Paper Accepted for Publication from November 1993 through October 1994 ($2,000)

Respiratory System Behavior during Mechanical Inflation with Constant Inspiratory Pressure and Flow—Robert L Chatburn RRT, Mohamad F El-Khatib MS, and Paul G Smith DO [Respir Care 1994;39(10):979-988]

2 Papers Based on any OPEN FORUM Presentation ($1,000)

(1) Prediction and Assessment of Bronchodilator Response in Mechanically Ventilated Patients—Patricia J Wollam RRT, Carol L Kasper RRT, Michael J Bishop MD, and David J Pierson MD [Respir Care 1994;39(7):730-735]

(2) Flow-Triggering Does Not Decrease the Work of Breathing and Pressure-Time Product in COPD Patients—Kelly Jager RRT, Martin Tweeddale MB PhD, and Tammy Holland RRT [Respir Care 1994;39(9):892-896]

Best Papers Submitted by 1994 OPEN FORUM Participants Who Have Never Published As First Author ($500)

(1) Pulmonary Response to an Inhaled Bronchodilator in Infants with Suspected Airway Reactivity—William J Holt RRT RPFT

(2) Benefits Associated with a Respiratory Care Assessment-Treatment Program: Results of a Pilot Study—Kevin L Shrake MA RRT, John E Scaggs BS RRT, Kevin R England BA, Joseph Q Henkle MD, and Lanie E Eagleton MD

Radiometer Awards for Best Features

PFT Corner #52—Cardiopulmonary Exercise Testing in the Preoperative Evaluation of Patients with Lung Cancer by DeeAnn Miller RRT and Jeff Wilson MD [Respir Care 1994;39(7):757-761] *($333)*

Test Your Radiologic Skill—Hemoptysis and Dyspnea in a Young Woman by Paul Lange MD, Kevin McCarthy RCPT, James K Stoller MD, and Daniel Laskowski RPFT [Respir Care 1994;39(3):242-249] *($333)*

Test Your Radiologic Skill—Radiographic Findings in a Blunt Trauma Patient by Grace Nadell BS and Frederick W Clevenger MD [Respir Care 1993;38(12):1423-1427] *($333)*

1995 Call for Abstracts

RESPIRATORY CARE • OPEN FORUM

The American Association for Respiratory Care and its science journal, RESPIRATORY CARE, invite submission of brief abstracts related to any aspect of cardiorespiratory care. The abstracts will be reviewed, and selected authors will be invited to present papers at the OPEN FORUM during the AARC Annual Meeting in Orlando, Florida, December 2-5, 1995. Accepted abstracts will be published in the November 1995 issue of RESPIRATORY CARE. Membership in the AARC is not necessary for participation.

SPECIFICATIONS—READ CAREFULLY!

An abstract may report (1) **an original study,** (2) **the evaluation of a method or device,** or (3) **a case or case series.** Topics may be aspects of adult acute care, continuing care/rehabilitation, perinatology/pediatrics, cardiopulmonary technology, health-care delivery. The abstract may have been presented previously at a local or regional—but not national—meeting and should not have been published previously in a national journal. The abstract will be the only evidence by which the reviewers can decide whether the author should be invited to present a paper at the OPEN FORUM. Therefore, *the abstract must provide all important data, findings, and conclusions.* Give specific information. Do not write such general statements as "Results will be presented" or "Significance will be discussed."

Essential Content Elements

An original study abstract *must* include (1) Introduction: statement of research problem, question, or hypothesis; (2) Method: description of research design and conduct in sufficient detail to permit judgment of validity; (3) Results: statement of research findings with quantitative data and statistical analysis; (4) Conclusions: interpretation of the meaning of the results. **A method/device evaluation** abstract *must* include (1) Introduction: identification of the method or device and its intended function; (2) Method: description of the evaluation in sufficient detail to permit judgment of its objectivity and validity; (3) Results: findings of the evaluation; (4) Experience: summary of the author's practical experience or a lack of experience; (5) Conclusions: interpretation of the evaluation and experience. Cost comparisons should be included where possible and appropriate. **A case report** abstract *must* report a case that is uncommon or of exceptional teaching/learning value and must include (1) patient data and case summary and (2) significance of case. Content should reflect results of literature review. The author(s) should have been actively involved in the case and a case-managing physician must be a co-author or must approve the report.

Abstract Format and Typing Instructions

Accepted abstracts will be photographed. First line of abstract should be the title in all capital letters. Title should explain content. Follow title with names of all authors (including credentials), institutions(s), and location. Underline presenter's name. Type or electronically print the abstract *single spaced in the space provided on the abstract blank.* Insert only one letter space between sentences. Text submission on diskette is encouraged but must be accompanied by a hard copy. Identifiers will be masked (blinded) for review. Make the abstract all one paragraph. Data may be submitted in table form *and simple figures may be included provided they fit within the space allotted.* No figures, illustrations, or tables are to be attached to the abstract form. Provide all author information requested at the bottom of abstract form. A clear photocopy of the abstract may be used. Standard abbreviations may be employed without explanation. A new or infrequently used abbreviation should be preceded by the spelled-out term the first time it is used. Any recurring phrase or expression my be abbreviated if it is first explained. Check the abstract for (1) errors in spelling, grammar, facts, and figures; (2) clarity of language; and (3) conformance to these specifications. An abstract not prepared as requested may not be reviewed. Questions about abstract preparation may be telephoned to the editorial staff of RESPIRATORY CARE at (214) 243-2272.

Deadline Allowing Revision

Authors may choose to submit abstracts early. Abstracts received by March 15 will be reviewed and the authors notified by April 22. Rejected abstracts will be accompanied by a written critique that should in many cases enable authors to revise their abstracts and resubmit them by the final deadline (May 27).

Final Deadline

The mandatory Final Deadline is May 27 (postmark). Authors will be notified of acceptance or rejection *by letter only*—to be mailed by August 15.

Mailing Instructions

Mail (Do not fax!) 2 clear copies of the completed abstract form and a stamped, self-addressed postcard (for notice of receipt) to:

RESPIRATORY CARE OPEN FORUM
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas, TX 75229-4593

1995 Respiratory Care Open Forum
Abstract Form

18.8 cm or 7.4"

13.9 cm or 5.5"

1. Title must be in all upper case (capital) letters, authors' full names and text in upper and lower case.
2. Follow title with all authors' names including credentials (underline presenter's name), institution, and location.
3. Do not justify (ie, do leave 'ragged' right margin).
4. **Do not use type size less than 10 points.** (See reduction samples below.)
5. All text, tables, and figures must fit into the rectangle shown.
6. Submit 2 clean copies. This form may be photocopied if multiple abstracts are to be submitted.

Mail original & 1 photocopy (along with postage-paid postcard) to

Respiratory Care Open Forum
11030 Ables Lane
Dallas TX 75229-4593

Early deadline is March 15, 1995 (abstract received)

Final deadline is May 27, 1995 (abstract postmarked)

Presenter's Name & Credentials

Presenter's Mailing Address

Presenter's Voice Phone & Fax

Corresponding Author's Name & Credentials

Corresponding Author's Mailing Address

Corresponding Author's Voice Phone & Fax

This is 14-point type, with necessary reduction.

This is 12-point type, with necessary reduction.

This is 10-point type, with necessary reduction.

This is 9-point type, with necessary reduction (too small!)

Not-for-profit organizations are offered a free advertisement of up to eight lines to appear, on a space-available basis, in Calendar of Events in RESPIRATORY CARE. Ads for other meetings are priced at $5.50 per line and require an insertion order. Deadline is the 20th of the month two months preceding the month in which you wish the ad to run. Submit copy and insertion orders to Calendar of Events, RESPIRATORY CARE, 11030 Ables Lane, Dallas TX 75229-4593.

Calendar of Events

AARC & AFFILIATES

December 9 in Las Vegas, Nevada. The AARC and its Board of Medical Advisors present a postgraduate course for medical directors and other physicians the day before the Annual Meeting. The program is approved for 6 Category 1 credit hours of the Physician's Recognition Award of the American Medical Association. Lecture topics include ethical dilemmas in the ICU, TB as an occupational hazard, cost-effective management of critical illness, and all aspects of providing respiratory care by protocol. Contact the AARC at (214) 243-2272 or fax (214) 484-2720 to request that a complete course description and registration form be sent to your medical director or other interested physician.

December 10-13 in Las Vegas, Nevada. The AARC presents its 40th Annual Convention and Exhibition, "A New Vision," at the Las Vegas Convention Center. For information, contact the AARC at (214) 243-2272, fax (214) 484-2720.

February 14-17, 1995 in Reno, Nevada. The NSRC and the American Lung Association of Nevada present the 14th Annual High Sierra Critical Care Conference at the Peppermill Hotel/Casino. The 4-day conference covers critical care topics in adult, pediatric, and neonatal medicine. Contact Colleen Banghart, American Lung Association of Nevada, PO Box 7056, Reno NV 89510.

February 16–17, 1995 in Atlanta, Georgia. The Perinatal/Pediatric Committee of the GSRC announces a perinatal/pediatric review course at Piedmont Hospital. Contact David Ellwanger, Respiratory Care Services, Piedmont Hospital, 1968 Peachtree Rd., Atlanta, GA 30309, (404) 605-3657.

March 12-15, 1995 in Denver, Colorado. The AARC and the National Jewish Center for Immunology and Respiratory Medicine announce the call for abstracts for the 5th International Conference on Pulmonary Rehabil-itation and Home Ventilation at the Hyatt Regency Hotel. The abstract deadline for poster/oral presentations on original research/clinical observations is Nov 30, 1994. Pre- and post-conference postgraduate workshop topics include pulmonary rehabilitation, home ventilator care, respiratory sleep disorders, nicotine dependency treatment, and transtracheal oxygen. The program is endorsed by the American College of Chest Physicians; program chairman is Barry Make MD. Contact the National Jewish Office of Professional Education at (303) 398-1000.

OTHER MEETINGS

February 5-8, 1995 in Breckenridge, Colorado. The American College of Chest Physicians sponsors "Cardiopulmonary Wellness and Rehabilitation" at The Village at Breckenridge Resort. Contact Arlene Karavich, American College of Chest Physicians, 3300 Dundee Rd, Northbrook IL 60062-2348. (708) 498-1400.

February 27–March 3, 1995 in Keystone, Colorado. The Extracorporeal Life Support Organization announces the 11th Annual Children's National Medical Center ECMO Symposium. Featured topics include lung transplants for the ECMO population, postoperative ECLS for the cardiac patient, clinical and research issues of liquid ventilation, and nitric oxide. Contact Cynthia Poindexter at (202) 884-5018.

April 1-7, 1995 in Miami, Florida. The Ventilation Assisted Children's Center (VACC) of the Division of Pediatric Pulmonology in Miami Children's Hospital hosts its annual VACC Camp for ventilation assisted children and their families. The program includes swimming, field trips, structured games, and campsite entertainment. The campsite, the Leisure Access Center at metro Dade county's AD Barnes Park, is a handicapped-accessible urban park located 2 miles from the hospital. Medical staff and equipment are available 24 hours-a-day. Contact Cathy Klein, VACC Program Coordinator, Division of Pediatric Pulmonology, Miami Children's Hospital, Suite 203, 3200 SW 60 Court, Miami FL 33155-4076. (305) 662-VACC.

May 5–7, 1995 in Atlanta, Georgia. The Egleston Children's Hospital ECMO Program sponsors the 5th Annual Southeastern ECMO Conference at the Westin Peachtree Plaza. The conference is designed specifically for the ECMO technical specialist. Contact Michelle Heard, RN, at (404) 315-2593.

AARC
American Association for Respiratory Care
40th Annual Convention and Exhibition
December 10-13, 1994 • Las Vegas, Nevada

Authors in This Issue

Anderson, Larry J 1191
Arden, Nancy H 1191
Barnhart, Sherry L 1176, 1180
Betit, Peter 1176, 1180
Blonshine, Sue 1184
Bower, Lynne K 1176, 1180
Branson, Richard D 1170
Breiman, Robert F 1191
Brougher, Pat 1146, 1154
Brown, Robert A 1184
Burke, William "Chuck" 1170
Butler, Jay C 1191
Campbell, Robert S 1170
Covington, Jack 1170
Decker, Michael J 1184
Hendon, Barbara 1176, 1180
Hess, Dean 1149
Hughes, Kenneth 1162
Kleinman, Leonard I 1162
Masi-Lynch, Joanne 1176, 1180
Mason, John W 1157
Mathewson, Hugh S 1267
McNeil, Michael M 1191
McPeck, Michael 1155
Miller, Warren C 1157
O'Riordan, Thomas G 1162
Rau, Joseph L Jr 1266
Ruppel, Gregg L 1184
Shrake, Kevin 1184
Smaldone, Gerald C 1162
Small, Sherry 1157
Tablan, Ofelia 1191
Wanger, Jack 1184
Wilson, Barbara G 1176, 1180

Advertisers in This Issue

Allen & Hanburys ..... Cover 2, 1129, 1130
Boehringer Ingelheim 1144A
CNS Inc 1144
Dräger Critical Care ..... Cover 3
Fisher & Paykel 1135
HealthScan Products Inc 1132
Impact Instrumentation 1137
Ohio State University 1138
Puritan-Bennett 1139
Sherwood Medical ..... Cover 4
Vitalograph 1140
WB Saunders 1143

For faster service, FAX your reader service card to (609) 786-4415

- **81 AARC** Membership Information
- **82 Respiratory Care** Subscription Information
- **118 Allen & Hanburys** Serevent
- **112 CNS Inc** Portable Apnea Recorder
- **101 Dräger Critical Care** Ventilation
- **131 Fisher & Paykel Healthcare** Humidifiers
- **123 HealthScan Products Inc** OptiHaler
- **115 Impact Instrumentation** Portable Ventilator
- **108 Ohio State University** Recruitment
- **128 Puritan-Bennett** Ventilator
- **134 Sherwood Medical** Pulmonary Function/Ventilation Monitor
- **34 Vitalograph** Corporate Advertisement
- **130 Vitalograph** Spirometry System
- **131 Vitalograph** Volumetric Printer
- **132 Vitalograph** Compact II Spirometer
- **133 Vitalograph** Alpha Spirometer
- **134 Vitalograph** Escort Spirometer
- **135 Vitalograph** Data Storage Spirometer
- **136 Vitalograph** Aerosol Inhalation Monitor
- **137 Vitalograph** Peak Flow Meter
- **107 WB Saunders Company** Book

RESPIRATORY CARE

December Reader Service **Expires March 31, 1995**

Name _____ Ph#_____

Institution _____

Street _____

City/State/Zip _____

Please Circle No More Than 15 Items

80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94
95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109
110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124
125	126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139
140	141	142	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154
155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169
170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184
185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199

I Type of Instr/Practice
1 ❑ Hosp ≥ 500 or more beds
2 ❑ Hosp 300 to 499 beds
3. ❑ Hosp 200 to 299 beds
4 ❑ Hosp 100 to 199 beds
5 ❑ Hosp <100 or less bed
6 ❑ Skilled Nursing Facility
7 ❑ Home Care Practice
8. ❑ School
II. Department
A. ❑ Respiratory Therapy
B. ❑ Cardiopulmonary
C. ❑ Anesthesia Service
D ❑ Emergency Dept
III Specialty
1 ❑ Clinical Practice
2 ❑ Pennatal Pediatrics
3. ❑ Critical Care
4 ❑ Clinical Research
5. ❑ Pulmonary Function Lab
6 ❑ Home Care/Rehab
7. ❑ Education
8 ❑ Management
IV Position
A ❑ Dept Head
B ❑ Chief Therapist
C ❑ Supervisor
D ❑ Staff Technician
E ❑ Staff Therapist
F ❑ Educator
G ❑ Medical Director
H ❑ Anesthesiologist
I. ❑ Pulmonologist
J ❑ Other MD
K ❑ Nurse
V Are you a member of the AAR
1 ❑ Yes 2. ❑ No

RESPIRATORY CARE

December Reader Service **Expires March 31, 1995**

Name _____ Ph#_____

Institution _____

Street _____

City/State/Zip _____

Please Circle No More Than 15 Items

80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94
95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109
110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124
125	126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139
140	141	142	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154
155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169
170	171	172	173	174	175	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184
185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199

I Type of Instr/Practice
1 ❑ Hosp ≥ 500 or more beds
2 ❑ Hosp 300 to 499 beds
3 ❑ Hosp 200 to 299 beds
4 ❑ Hosp 100 to 199 beds
5 ❑ Hosp <100 or less bed
6. ❑ Skilled Nursing Facility
7. ❑ Home Care Practice
8 ❑ School
II. Department
A ❑ Respiratory Therapy
B ❑ Cardiopulmonary
C ❑ Anesthesia Service
D ❑ Emergency Dept
III. Specialty
1 ❑ Clinical Practice
2 ❑ Pennatal Pediatrics
3. ❑ Critical Care
4 ❑ Clinical Research
5. ❑ Pulmonary Function Lab
6 ❑ Home Care/Rehab
7. ❑ Education
8. ❑ Management
IV Position
A ❑ Dept Head
B ❑ Chief Therapist
C ❑ Supervisor
D ❑ Staff Technician
E ❑ Staff Therapist
F ❑ Educator
G ❑ Medical Director
H ❑ Anesthesiologist
I. ❑ Pulmonologist
J ❑ Other MD
K ❑ Nurse
V. Are you a member of the AAR
1 ❑ Yes 2. ❑ No

AARC Information Requests or Change of Address

Please complete the card below

AARC Membership No. _____

Old Address

Name _____

Street _____

City/State/Zip _____

New Address

Street _____

City/State/Zip _____

Check the boxes below for information from the AARC

- ❑ Change of address
- ❑ AARC Membership Info
- ❑ AARC Catalog
- ❑ AARC Position Statement

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 604 RIVERTON, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

AARC PUBLICATIONS
PO BOX 1856
RIVERTON NJ 08077-9456

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 604 RIVERTON, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

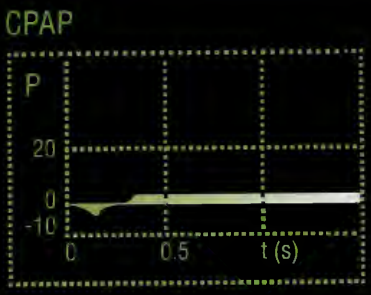
AARC PUBLICATIONS
PO BOX 1856
RIVERTON NJ 08077-9456

Return Address

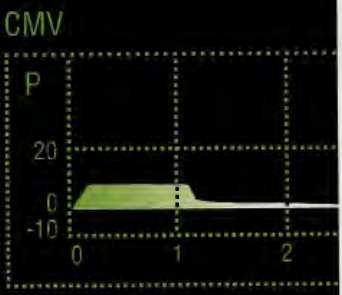
Place
Stamp
Here

AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR
RESPIRATORY CARE
11030 ABLES LN
DALLAS TX 75229-4593

Use these cards to request information from the AARC or advertisers in this issue.



Occlusion-pressure



Intrinsic PEEP

Flowtrigger

Always A Step Ahead!

Evita makes work of breathing even easier!

Now **Dräger** provides you with two more powerful tools to optimize weaning of your patients.

Introducing **Flowtrigger** without increase of expiratory resistance, combined with **P01 measurement** to determine the patients ventilatory drive.

To extend monitoring capabilities Evita now includes the ability to measure **Intrinsic Peep** with the display of **Trapped Volume.**

With **Dräger** you can stay one step ahead in providing safe, patient friendly ventilation. For the difference your patients can feel, choose...

Dräger: Technology for Life

Dräger

Technology for life

4101 Pleasant Valley Road Suite 100 Chantilly, VA 22021
Tel (703) 817-0100 Fax (703) 817-0101

Circle 101 on reader service card

RESPIRADYNE® II PLUS

PULMONARY FUNCTION/VENTILATION MONITOR

Graphic Printouts...Multi-Patient Memory...and Easy to Use

Results-Oriented Features At Cost Effective Prices

■ New Graphic Forced Vital Capacity (FVC) document printout of Flow vs Volume and Volume vs Time ■ New 10 patient memory with 8 pre-bronchodilator and 8 post-bronchodilator tests per patient and automatic calculation of % change ■ New customizing software package ■ New Slow Vital Capacity (SVC) monitoring ■ Automatic determination of "best test" ■ Knudson, ITS and ECCS reference nomograms ■ Easy to operate

Performs A Complete Range Of Test Measurements

Forced Exhalation Parameters

■ Forced Vital Capacity (FVC) ■ Forced Expiratory Volume in One Second (FEV_1) ■ FEV_1/FVC Ratio ■ FVC Time ■ Peak Flow ■ Forced Expiratory Flow Between 25% and 75% of Vital Capacity ($FEF_{25-75\%}$) ■ Percent Extrapolated Volume ($Vol._{EXTRA\%}$)

Weaning/Extubation Parameters

■ Respiratory Rate (RR) ■ Tidal Volume (TV) ■ Minute Volume (MV) ■ Slow Vital Capacity (SVC) ■ Maximum Voluntary Ventilation (MVV) ■ Negative Inspiratory Force (NIF)

For further information, call: 1-800-325-7472 (outside Missouri) 1-800-392-7318 (in Missouri)

Sherwood MEDICAL
ST LOUIS MO 63103 U.S.A.

Circle 157 on reader service card